

JVC

Instructions
Manual de Instrucciones
Manuel d'Instructions

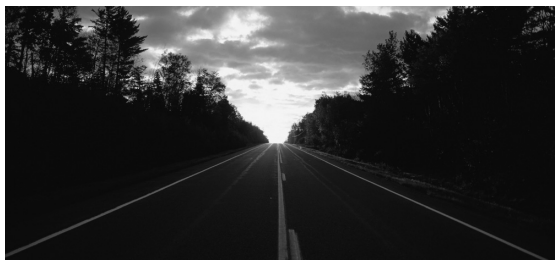
DVD/CD RECEIVER
RECEPTOR CON DVD/CD
RECEPTEUR DVD/CD

English

Español

Français

KD-DV4200



To cancel the display demonstration, see page 5.

Para cancelar la demostración en pantalla, consulte la página 5.

Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 5.



For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

Para la instalación y las conexiones, refiérase al manual separado.

Pour l'installation et les raccords, se référer au manuel séparé.



For customer Use:

Enter below the Model No. and Serial No. which are located on the top or bottom of the cabinet.

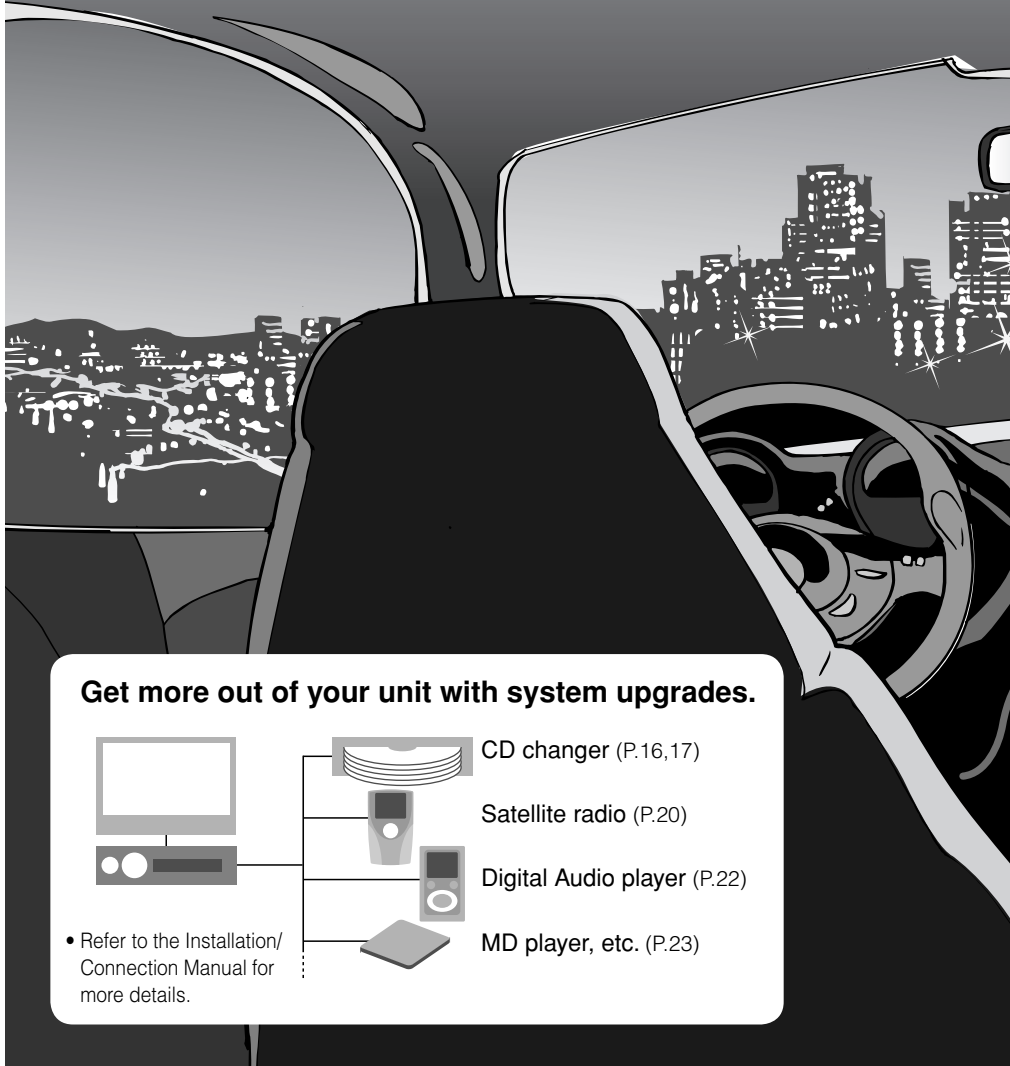
Retain this information for future reference.

Model No. _____ Serial No. _____

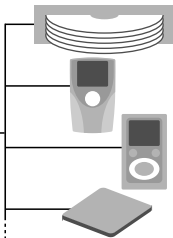
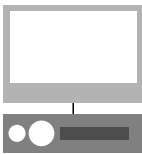
GET0368-001A

Enjoy more !

Thank you for purchasing this JVC product.
Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.



Get more out of your unit with system upgrades.



CD changer (P.16,17)

Satellite radio (P.20)

Digital Audio player (P.22)

MD player, etc. (P.23)

- Refer to the Installation/Connection Manual for more details.

Contents

Preparations

- 4 ● Please read carefully
- 5 ● Preparations
- 6 ● Discs that can be played
- 8 ● Basic operations
 - Main unit/Display window/Remote controller

How to use

- 12 ● Listening to the radio
 - Suppressing static noise
 - Automatically presetting FM stations
 - Manually presetting stations
- 14 ● Playing a disc
 - DVD Video/Video CD
 - CD/MP3/WMA disc (also with JVC CD changer)
 - Disc playback
- 20 ● Listening to satellite radio
 - SIRIUS/XM
- 22 ● Playing iPod® or D. player
- 23 ● Playing other devices
- 24 ● For your convenience
 - Registering station names
 - Enlarging image
 - Repeat play
 - Random play
- 26 ● Personal settings
 - Basic settings
 - DVD Setups
- 31 ● Adjusting sound

Reference

- 32 ● Troubleshooting
- 37 ● Technical information
- 38 ● Specifications



Please read carefully

Important information

Information (for U.S.A.)

This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

CAUTION: Changes or modifications not approved by JVC could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

Important for laser products

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. CAUTION: Do not open the top cover.
There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.

Copyright protection technology

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

Warning

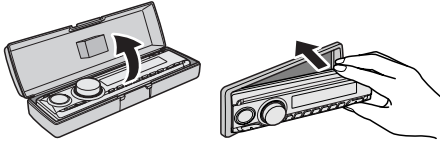
To prevent accidents and damage

- Do not install unit in any place where:
 - It may obstruct the use of gearshift operations, etc.
 - It may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags
 - It may obstruct visibility
- Do not operate unit or insert discs immediately in extremely hot or cold temperatures
 - Wait until in-car temperature reaches a normal level
- Observe the following rules while driving:
 - Do not operate unit (stop vehicle when performing complicated operations)
 - Do not look at monitor (no playback picture will be displayed if parking brake is not engaged)
 - Do not raise volume to too high a level (this would block out outside sounds)

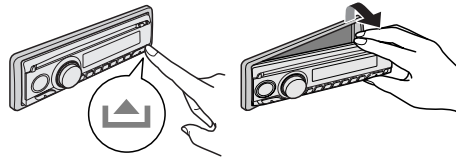
Preparations

Attaching control panel

■ Attaching control panel



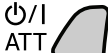
■ Removing control panel




Canceling demo display/setting clock

You can cancel the demo function (demonstration displayed after 20 seconds of inactivity), and set the clock.

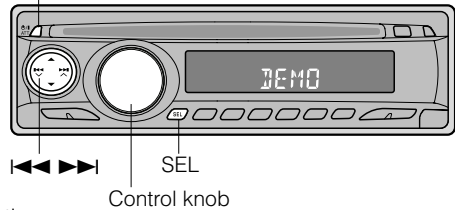
Preparation: Start the vehicle's engine. (Power cannot be turned on if "OFF" or "ACC OFF")

- 1 Turn power on


Power on/off

- 2 Display PSM menu


● Menu will close if no operations are performed for 15 seconds.



- 3 Select "DEMO",


select "DEMO ON/OFF"

● Select "DEMO OFF" to cancel demo.

- 4 Select "CLOCK H",



set the hour

(time is in 12-hour format)

- 5 Select "CLOCK M",


set the minute

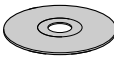
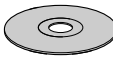
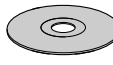
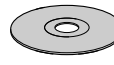
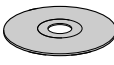
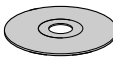
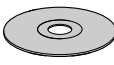
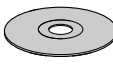
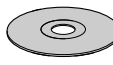
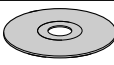
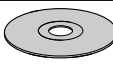
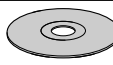
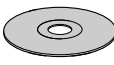
- 6 Finish procedure


● Press DISP to check current time → 
 (displayed for 5 seconds if unit is turned off)

Discs that can be played

Discs that can be played [12cm(4-3/4")/8cm(3-3/16")]

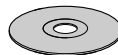
Do not attempt to play discs other than those listed below. (Inserting other discs will result in static noise and can damage speakers)

Type of disc	Types of media				
DVD Video	 DVD Video	 DVD-R*/-RW	 +R/+RW	 DualDisc (DVD side only)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In DVD-Video format (Region code 1) only ● NTSC
Video CD	 Video CD	 CD-R/-RW			<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● NTSC
CD	 Audio CD	 CD Text	 CD-R/-RW		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In CD-DA format only
MP3/WMA (Discs with MP3/WMA files)	 DVD-R/-RW	 DVD-ROM	 +R/+RW		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In UDF bridge format only
	 CD-R/-RW				<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● In ISO 9660 level 1, ISO 9660 level 2, Romeo, Joliet formats

● It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video mode only) discs. However, the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.

* DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).

Discs that cannot be played



- DVD Audio, DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM (data), DualDisc (non-DVD side)
- DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW recorded in DVD-VR format
- SVCD (Super Video CD)
- CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD

Caution for DualDisc playback

- The Non-DVD side of a "DualDisc" does not comply with the "Compact Disc Digital Audio" standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Discs of the following conditions



Warped



Stickers attached




Peeling label

Dirty or scratched discs

About MP3/WMA Discs

- The following files cannot be played.
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - WMA files recorded in MBR (Multiple Bit Rate) format.
 - Files which have data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.
- A total of 3 500 files and 250 folders (up to 999 files to a folder) can be recognised.
- Names of files, artists (performers), and Tag data (V2.4 or earlier) can be displayed. (Only one-byte characters can be displayed correctly)
- To use folder search, folder names must begin with a 2-digit number (01, 02, 03...). (P17)
- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25; 64 for MP3/WMA Tag data.
- Files recorded in VBR (Variable Bit Rate) can be played. (The elapsed time displayed may not be accurate)

About Other Discs

- Lower volume before commencing disc playback. (Discs have a higher output level than other sources and high volume may damage speakers)
- Some discs require operations that differ from those explained in this manual.
- If  is displayed on monitor, desired operation cannot be played on this unit or at this particular time.
- DVD Video region codes
This unit can only play back DVDs whose region codes include the number "1."

Examples:



- Where CD-DA (music CD) and MP3/WMA files are mixed on the same disc, only CD-DA files can be played back.
- Although multi-session discs can be played, unclosed sessions will be skipped during playback. (Only for CD-R/CD-RW)

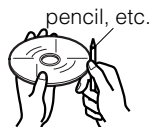
● To keep discs clean

Wipe in a straight line from center of disc to edge. DO NOT use liquid cleaners, thinners, or benzene.




● To play new discs

Remove any rough areas from the inner and outer edges of the disc. (Disc will be ejected if it has rough edges)



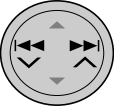
● Disc theft prevention functions

You can make the disc unable to be ejected. Press the  (eject) button while holding down the SRC button. (To release this function, repeat the same operation)

Basic operations

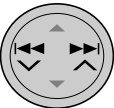
Main unit

◀▶◀▶ keys ...



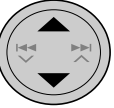
Select
 (Radio)
 • frequency-Auto
 (Disc)
 • chapter/track
 (Satellite radio)
 • channel
 (iPod/D. player)
 • track

◀▶◀▶ (Hold)




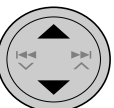
Search
 (Radio)
 • frequency-Manual
 (Disc)
 • forward/reverse search

▲ ▼ keys ...



Select
 (Radio)
 • preset station
 (Disc)
 • folder
 (Satellite radio)
 • category
 (CD changer)
 • folder

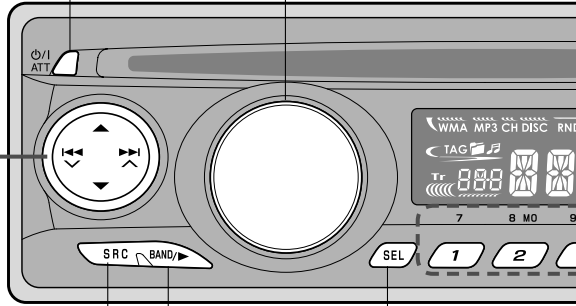
After pressing  ...



Jump
 (Disc)
 • 10, 20, 30... chapters/tracks

**Power On/Off (Hold)/
 Attenuate On/Off**

Adjust volume



- Adjusting sound (P.31)
- Personal settings (P.26)

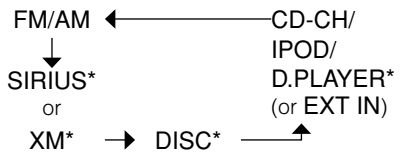
Change radio band

(FM1/FM2/FM3/AM)
 (SIRIUS1/SIRIUS2/SIRIUS3)
 (XM1/XM2/XM3)

Play disc

(Playback will usually commence upon insertion of disc)

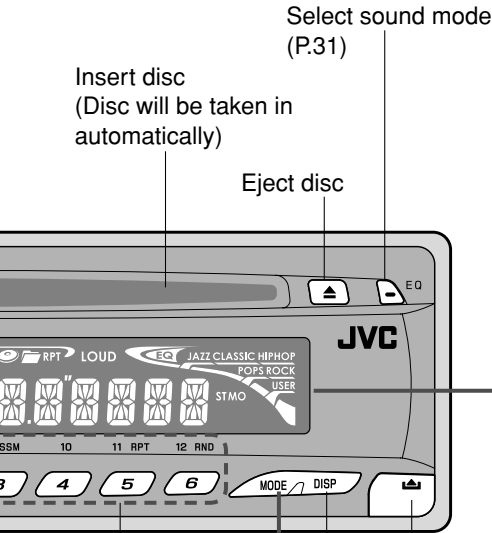
Select source



* Only selectable if connected or inserted.

• Controls may function differently depending on source, etc. Refer to each relevant page for details.

Display window



Call up

1-6/7-12 (Hold)

(Radio)

- preset station

(Disc)

- chapter/title/
folder/track/disc

Remove panel

Change display
(Time, playback
information, etc)

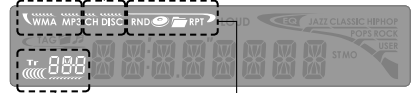
MODE function

Press **MODE**, then one of these buttons within 5 seconds.

- 8 MD : Suppress static noise on FM broadcast (P.13)
- 2 : Suppress static noise on FM broadcast (P.13)
- 9 SSM : Automatically preset FM stations (P.13)
- 3 : Automatically preset FM stations (P.13)
- 11 RPT : Repeat play (P.25)
- 5 : Repeat play (P.25)
- 12 RND : Random play (P.25)
- 6 : Random play (P.25)

MP3/WMA file type

Disc playback device
CH: CD changer
DISC: Main unit



Preset No./Track No./
Folder No./Disc No./
Chapter No./
Channel No.

Repeat/random play
Disc
Folder

Disc information

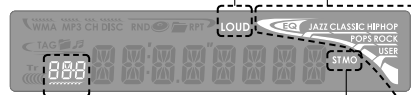
TAG: Tag
Folder
Track
Time, menu,
playback information



Source display

Sound mode

LOUD (Loudness)



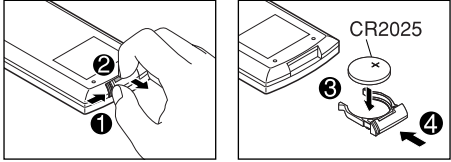
Volume level
indicator

Audio reception
ST: stereo
MO: monaural

Basic operations

Remote controller

Inserting battery



● **Warning** : To prevent the battery from being damaged or catching fire...

- Store out of reach of children
- Do not recharge, short, or dismantle
- Do not dispose of in fire
- Do not carry around with other metallic materials

**Power On/Off (Hold)/
Attenuate On/Off**

Select source
(P.8)

Change radio band
(P.8)

Cannot be used on this unit

Adjust volume

2nd VOL: Cannot be used on this unit

Other functions

While pressing **SHIFT** ...

ZOOM : Enlarge image
 (P.24)

/TITLE : Select folder/title
OSD → Enter numbers

Entering numbers

While pressing **SHIFT** ...

+10 **-10**

: Select in units of ten

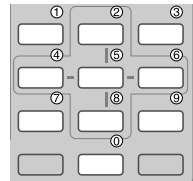
+100 **-100**

: Select in units of one hundred

• For example...

[8] → **SHIFT** + ^⑧

[23] → **SHIFT** + ⁺¹⁰ + **MENU** ^③
(twice)

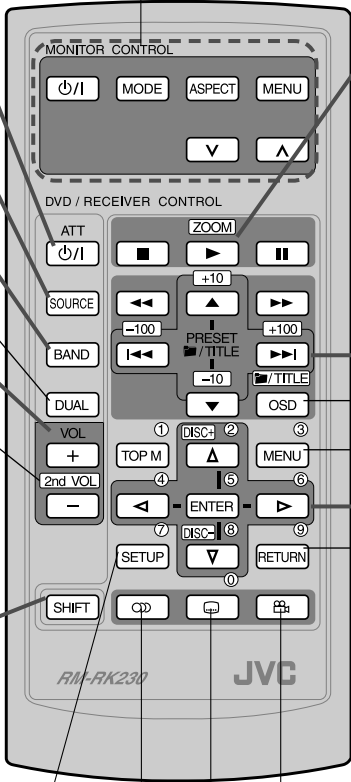


• Controls may function differently depending on source, etc. Refer to each relevant page for details.

The remote controller is useful for on-screen operations



Can be used for controlling JVC monitors—KV-MR9010, KV-MH6510, and KV-M706



Change playback status

: Stop	: Play	: Pause
	: 10-second review (during playback)	
: Reverse search (x2→...x60)	: Forward search (x2→...x60)	
: Reverse slow (1/32→...1/2) while paused	: Forward slow (1/32→...1/2) while paused	

Select song/image

	Title/ folder/ preset station/ category
	Chapter/ track/ station/ channel

OSD: P.18

MENU, TOP M: P.14,15,16,17

RETURN : P.15,17

Select/set on monitor (Except for disc menus)

	Select
	- ENTER -
	Set

For CD changer

	: Select disc

: Change angle

: Change subtitles

: Change audio

SETUP: Personal settings (P.28)

Listening to the radio

1 **SRC**
Select radio
 (Previously selected band is displayed)

2 **BAND**
Select band
 → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

3 **Select station**
 I◀◀▶▶I: Search automatically,
 Search manually (Hold)
 → Station can be selected by pressing the button repeatedly while "M" is flashing on display

▲▼: Select preset station
 1-6: Call up preset station

ST: lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

● **Change display**
 ▶ Time → Station name*
 ← Frequency

● **MODE function (P.13)**

With remote controller

- **Select station**
 I◀◀ ▶▶I: Search automatically,
 Search manually (Hold)
 → Station can be selected by pressing the button repeatedly while "M" is flashing on display
- ▲ ▼: Select preset station
- SHIFT + Number (1 - 6): Call up preset station

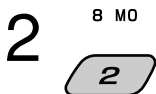
Information

* "NO NAME" will appear if no station name has been registered. (P.24)

< MO > Suppressing static noise

FM

You can change from stereo to monaural reception when FM broadcast reception is poor to suppress static noise.



MONO OFF



MONO

- MO indicator lights up.

< SSM > Automatically presetting FM stations

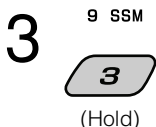
FM

You can automatically preset FM stations with strong signals to each of the buttons [1] to [6].

(SSM : Strong-station Sequential Memory)



- 6 stations can be preset to each band.




- Automatic presetting starts, and station preset to [1] is displayed when complete.

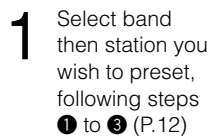
- When automatically presetting stations, all stations preset beforehand will be erased.

Manually presetting stations

FM/AM

You can preset your favorite stations to buttons [1] to [6].

e.g. Presetting FM 92.5 MHz to button 



- 6 stations can be preset to each band.



P4
Preset number

- When complete, the preset number is displayed briefly.

- Satellite radio channels can be preset using the same procedure.

Playing a disc

DVD Video

Preparation: Select appropriate input on monitor.

Insert disc
Eject disc

1 ● Play, 10-second review (during playback)

2 ● Select "DISC" (Playback starts automatically)

● Change display (Time, playback information)

● MODE function (P.25)

SRC
 SRC
 1 2 3 4 5 6
 MODE DISP

● Select chapter/title
 ◀◀▶▶: Select chapter, reverse/forward search (Hold)
 MODE → ▲▼: Jump 10 chapters (10, 20, 30...)
 1 - 6: Select chapter number—Chapter 1 - 6/7 - 12 (Hold)
 Select title (while stopped)—Title 1 - 6/7 - 12 (Hold)

With remote controller



● Changing playback status

- : Stop
- ▶ : Play, 10-second review during playback
- ⏸ : Pause, frame-by-frame playback while paused
- ◀◀ : Reverse search, reverse slow *1 while paused
- ▶▶ : Forward search, forward slow *1 while paused
- 🔊 : Change audio language *2
- 🗣️ : Change subtitles *2
- 📐 : Change angle *2

● Select chapter/title

- ▲ ▼ : Select title
- ◀▶ : Select chapter, reverse/forward search (Hold)
- 📄/TITLE
SHIFT + OSD → SHIFT + Number: Select title No.
- SHIFT + Number: Select chapter No.

● Operate DVD menu

- MENU : Display DVD menu
- TOP M : Display DVD menu
- SHIFT + Number: Select menu item

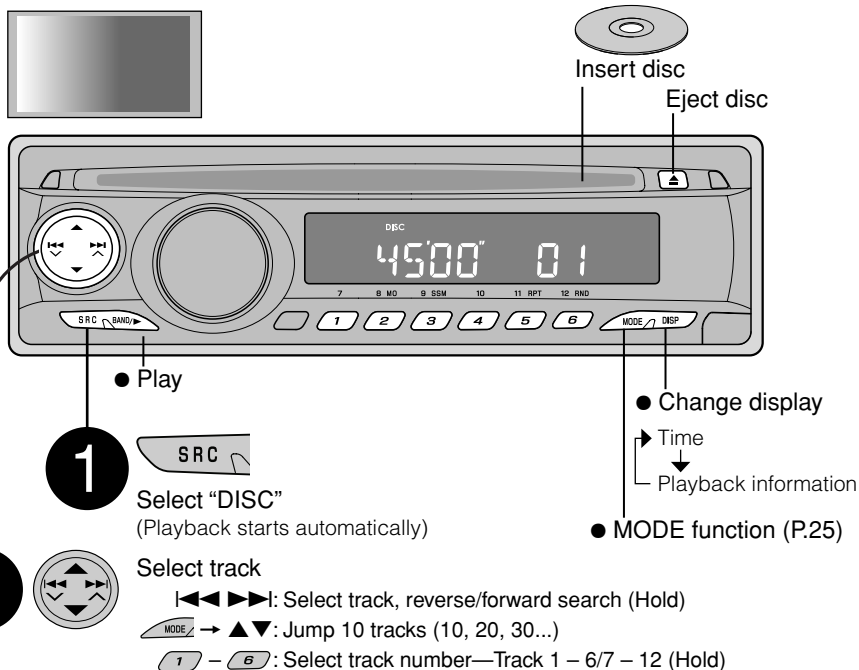
● Operate on-screen bar (P.18)

*1 No sound will be played during slow playback

*2 In some cases, this can be changed from DVD menu only

Video CD

Preparation: Select appropriate input on monitor.



With remote controller



● Changing playback status

- : Stop
- ▶ : Play
- ⏸ : Pause, frame-by-frame playback while paused
- ◀◀ : Reverse search
- ▶▶ : Forward search, forward slow *1 while paused
- Ⓜ : Change audio channel

*1 No sound will be played during slow playback

● Select track

- ◀▶▶▶ : Select track, reverse/forward search (Hold)
- SHIFT + Number: Select track number

● Operate disc menu

- SHIFT + Number: Select/set
- RETURN : Return to the previous item
- → SHIFT + Number: Cancel PBC playback and select a track
- MENU : Return to PBC playback
- TOP M : Return to PBC playback

● Operate on-screen bar (P.18)

● The way some discs are played back may vary depending on the disc.

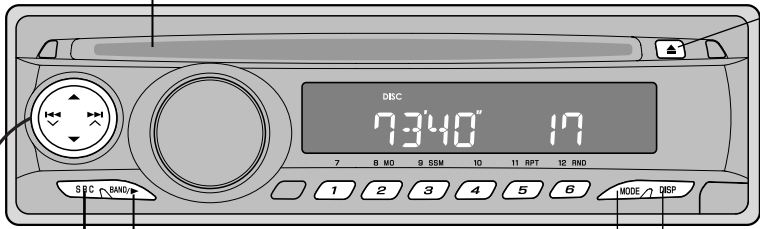
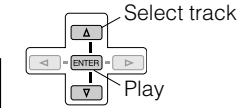
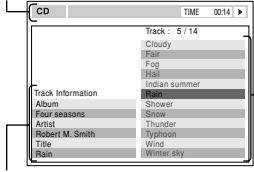
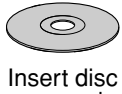
Playing a disc

CD

● When connected to monitor

Playback information (P.19)

(With remote controller)



● Eject disc
*1 Only displayed for CD Text ("NO NAME" will appear for conventional CD)

1
2

● Play
Select "DISC" or "CD-CH"
(Playback starts automatically)

● Select song
⏪ ⏩ | : Select track, reverse/forward search (Hold)
MODE / **▲ ▼** : Jump 10 tracks (10, 20, 30...)
1 - **6** : Select track number—Track 1 – 6 / 7 – 12 (Hold),
Select disc number (when "CD-CH" selected)—Disc 1 – 6 / 7 – 12 (Hold)

● MODE function (P.25)
● Change display
Time
Disc/artist name*1
Track name*1
Elapsed playing time

With remote controller (except for CD changer)

● Changing playback status

- ⏹ : Stop
- ▶ : Play
- ⏸ : Pause
- ◀ : Reverse search
- ▶ : Forward search

● Select song

- ⏪ | ⏩ : Select track, reverse/forward search (Hold)
- SHIFT + Number: Select track number

● Operate on-screen bar (P.18)

● Playback from list (while stopped)

① MENU

②

Track: 1 / 12				Page: 1 / 1
Track1	Track11			
Track2	Track12			
Track3				
Track4				
Track5				
Track6				
Track7				
Track8				
Track9				
Track10				

(Track list)

To close list, MENU

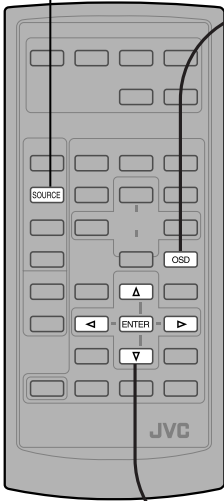
(For CD changer) **⏪** **⏩** : Select track, reverse/forward search (Hold) DISC- **▲** **▼** : Select disc

Disc playback

When unit is connected to a monitor, discs can be operated from the on-screen bar. Information displayed and functions available may vary depending on disc. (Remote controller only)

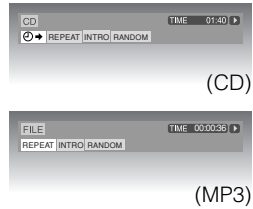
Preparation: Select "DISC" as source

SOURCE



1

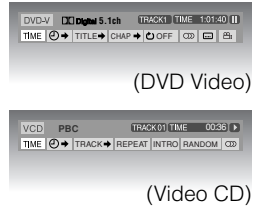
Display on-screen bar



• The original screen is returned to after 5 seconds.

■ When playing DVD Video or Video CD

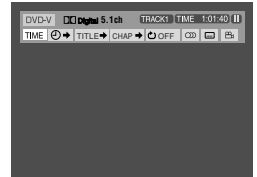
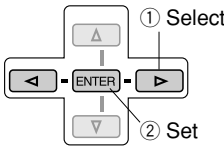
(Twice)



2

Select item

■ Removing on-screen bar



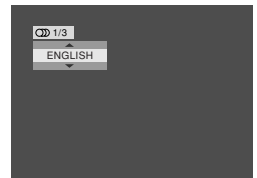
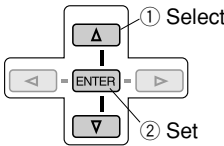
e.g. DVD Video

3

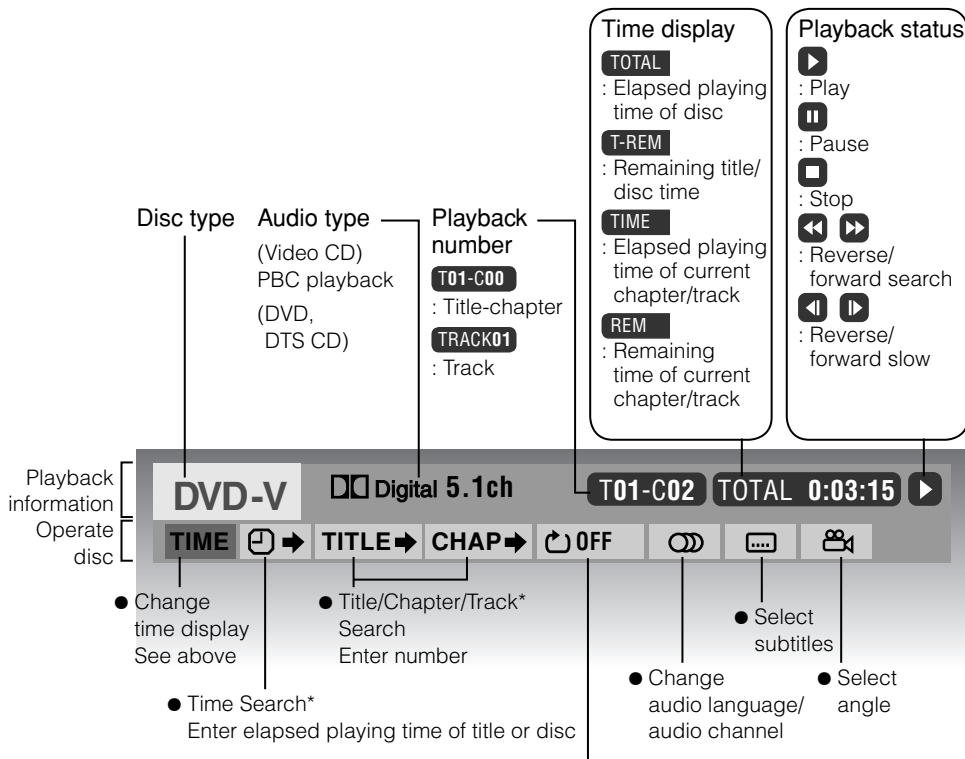
Select contents



If pop-up menu appears



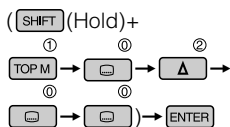
- Entering time → (P.19)
- Entering numbers → (P.9)



Entering time

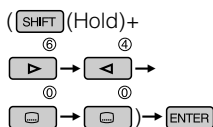
(DVD Video)

Example : 1:02:00



(CD/Video CD)

Example : 64:00

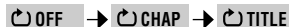


● To erase misentry

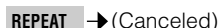


● Repeat play

(DVD Video)



(Video CD without PBC)



(CD)

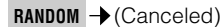


(MP3/WMA)



● Random play

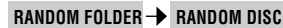
(Video CD without PBC)



(CD)

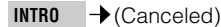


(MP3/WMA)

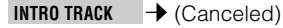


● Intro play

(Video CD without PBC)



(CD)



(MP3/WMA)

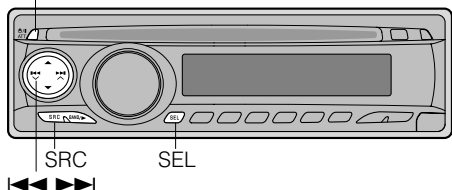


* Cannot be performed during PBC playback of Video CD.

Listening to satellite radio

You can enjoy a number of channels by connecting the unit to SIRIUS or XM satellite radio. After connecting to satellite radio, verify ID and complete subscription.

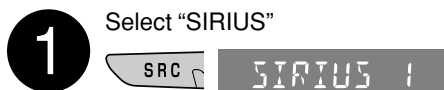
Power on/off



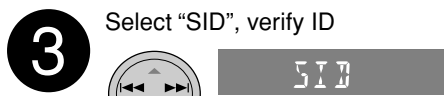
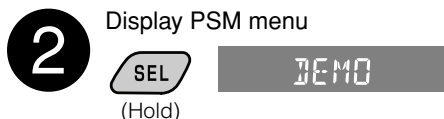
Preparation: Connect to satellite radio (SIRIUS or XM).

- Refer to Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume).

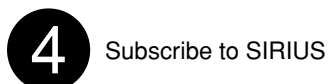
Preparing SIRIUS



- UPDATING
- Channel updating begins. (No sound is played for a few minutes)
 - When updating is complete, CH184 is displayed.

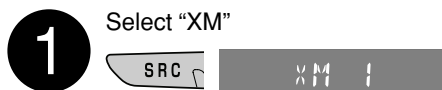


- Your ID is displayed.

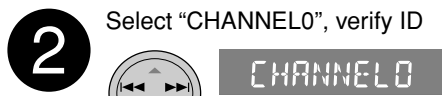


Internet (<http://activate.siriusradio.com/>)
 Or telephone (1-888-539-SIRIUS<7474>)
 →After subscription, "SUB UPDT PRESS ANY KEY" is displayed.

Preparing XM



- UPDATING
- Channel updating begins. (No sound is played for a few minutes)
 - When updating is complete, Channel 1 is displayed.



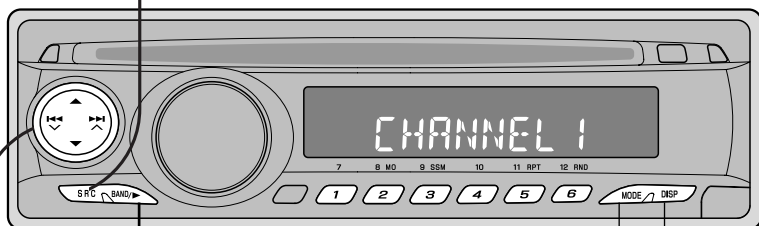
- Your ID is displayed.










Internet (<http://xmradio.com/activation/>)
 Or telephone (1-800-XM-RADIO<967-2346>)
 →After subscription, a channel is displayed.

SIRIUS/XM




1  Select satellite radio—"SIRIUS" or "XM"



*1 SIRIUS only






2  Select band
 (SIRIUS):  SIRIUS1  SIRIUS2  SIRIUS3
 (XM):  XM1  XM2  XM3

● 6 channels can be preset for each band. (P.13)

3  Select channel
 ▲ ▼ : Select category*2
 (On XM, select channel within 15 seconds)
 I◀◀ ▶▶I : Select channel
 (holding down will change channels continuously)
 -  : Call up preset channel

- MODE function (P.13)
- Change display
 - Time
 - ↓
 - Category name
 - ↓
 - Channel name
 - ↓
 - Artist name
 - ↓
 - Composer name*1
 - ↓
 - Song/Program/Title name

With remote controller

- Select channel
 -   : Select channel
 (holding down will change channels continuously)
 -   : Select category
 -  + Number : Call up preset channel

Information

- You can only select "SIRIUS" or "XM" as source when satellite radio is connected.
- Invalid and unsubscribed channels are skipped when changing category or channel.

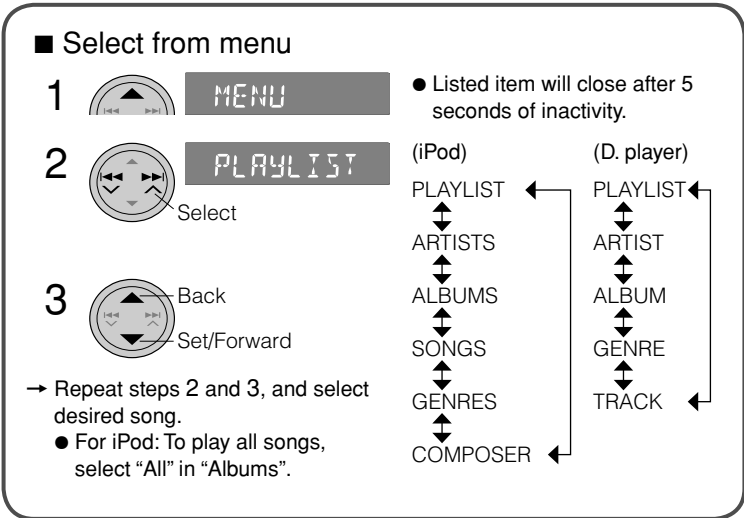
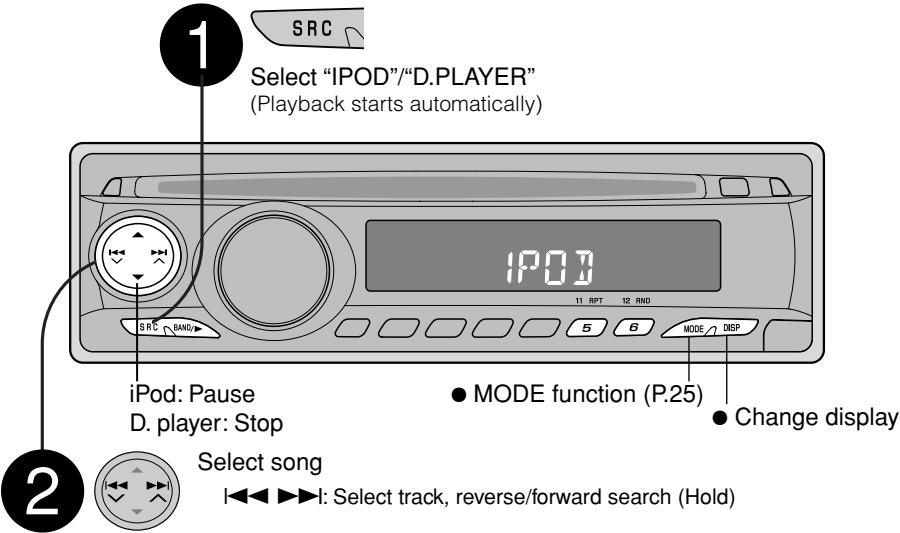
*2 For XM: If you do not select categories, you can select all channels of all categories (including non-categorized channels).

Playing iPod® or D. player

You can operate digital audio players such as Apple iPod or JVC D. player using the unit's controls.

Preparation: Connect iPod or D. player with special adapter.

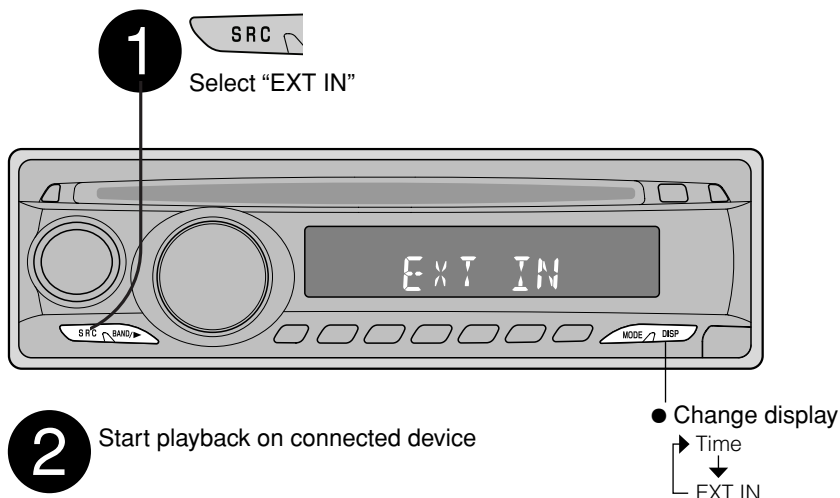
- Refer to Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) and adapter's instruction manuals.



Playing other devices

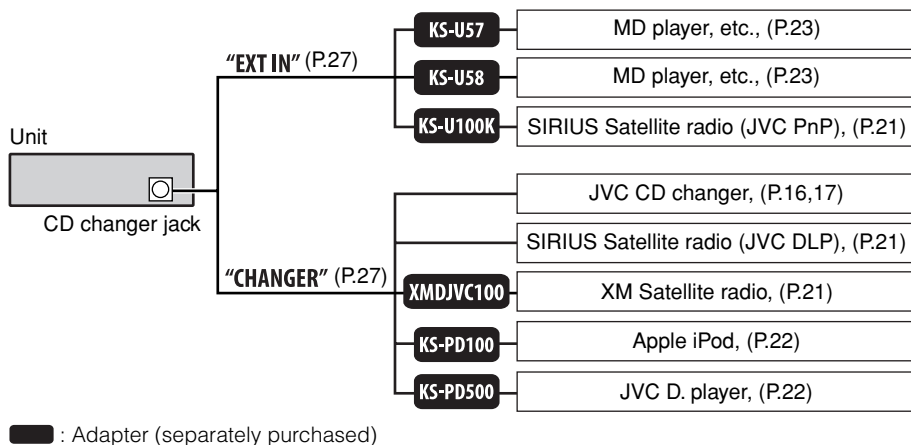
You can enjoy the sounds of external devices such as MD players through the speakers.

Preparation: Connect MD player or other external device with special adapter. In “Basic Settings” (P.27), set “EXT IN” to “EXT IN”.

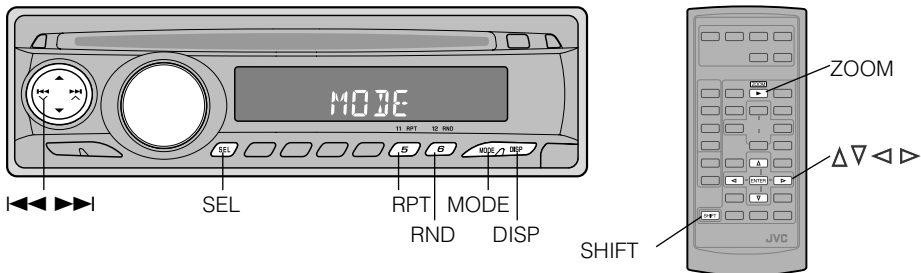


Concept diagram for external device connection

● For connection, see Installation/Connection manual (separate volume).



For your convenience



Registering station names

You can register up to 30 different stations (FM/AM) with names of up to 8 characters.

1 Display station to be named

2 + (Hold) (Hold)

- If "NAMEFULL" appears, the maximum number of station names have already been preset.

3

4 Previous Next

5

• Available characters

A	B	C	D	E	F	G
H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U
V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8
9	-	/	<	>	space	

- To erase the entire name, ⇒ in step 2 (Hold)

Enlarging image

You can enlarge the image to any of six different sizes during playback. (Remote controller only)

1 +

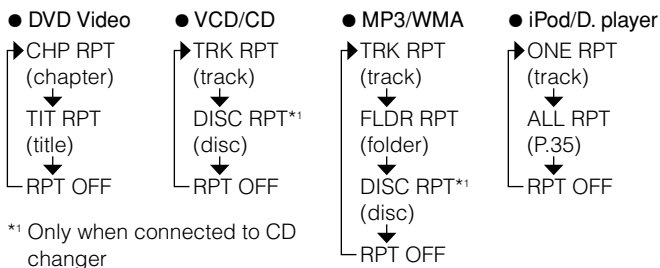
2 (Move position of enlargement)

- To restore, select "ZOOM OFF" in step 1.

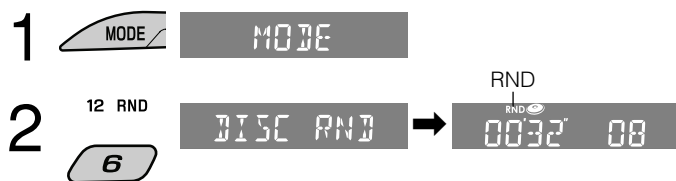
You can set tracks, folders, or discs to be repeated. (Except for during PBC playback on Video CD)



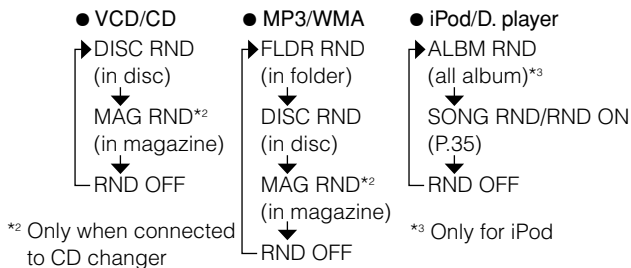
< RPT >
Repeat play



You can set tracks, folders, or discs to be played at random. (Except for during PBC playback on Video CD)



< RND >
Random play

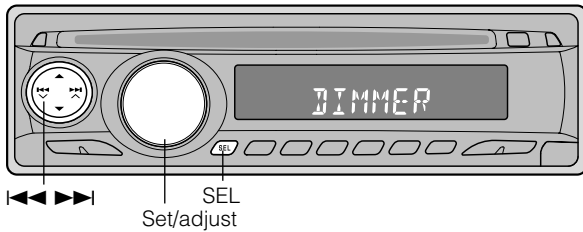


- “INTRO TRACK” (just plays intro to each track) and “INTRO FOLDER” (just plays the first track in each folder) may be useful when searching for tracks or folders. (P.19)

Personal settings

Basic settings

You can adjust the time and change setting for the LCD display, etc. (Preferred Setting Mode: PSM)



- 1** Display PSM menu
 SEL
 (Hold) DEMO
- 2** Select item
DIMMER
- 3** Set/adjust
ON
- 4** Finish
 SEL

Information

- PSM menu will close automatically after 15 seconds of inactivity.
- If the power to the unit is cut due to car battery replacement etc, the settings will be restored to their original state.

Option
DEMO Display demonstration
CLOCK H/M Hour/Minute adjustment
CLK ADJ Clock adjustment (Only displayed when connected to SIRIUS/XM satellite radio)
T-ZONE Time zone (Only displayed when "CLK ADJ" is set to "AUTO")
DST Daylight savings time (Only displayed when "CLK ADJ" is set to "AUTO")
SID SIRIUS ID (Only displayed when connected to SIRIUS satellite radio)
DIMMER Dimmer

Settings	Option	Settings
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>DEMO ON</u> : Demo will be activated automatically after 20 seconds of inactivity. ● <u>DEMO OFF</u> : Cancels. 	SCROLL Scroll	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>ONCE</u> : Scrolls track information once. ● <u>AUTO</u> : Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). ● <u>OFF</u> : Cancels. <p>* Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.</p>
(P.5)	EXT IN External input (Only when source is FM/AM, or DISC)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>CHANGER</u> : To use JVC CD changer, or JVC compatible satellite (SIRIUS/XM) radio, iPod, D. player. ● <u>EXT IN</u> : To use another external component (except for the above devices).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>AUTO</u> : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the satellite radio channel data. ● <u>OFF</u> : Cancels. 	TAG DISP Tag display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>TAG ON</u> : Shows the Tag while playing MP3/WMA tracks. ● <u>TAG OFF</u> : Cancels.
Select your residential area from the following. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>EASTERN</u> ● <u>ATLANTIC</u> ● <u>NEWFOUND</u> ● <u>ALASKA</u> ● <u>PACIFIC</u> ● <u>MOUNTAIN</u> ● <u>CENTRAL</u> 	AMP GAIN Amplifier gain control	You can change the maximum volume level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>LOW PWR</u> : VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select if the maximum power of speakers is less than 45 W.) ● <u>HIGH PWR</u> : VOL 00 – VOL 50
Activate if your area is subject to DST. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>ON</u> : Activates daylight savings time. ● <u>OFF</u> : Cancels. 	IF BAND Intermediate frequency filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>AUTO</u> : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises. (Stereo effect may be lost.) ● <u>WIDE</u> : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and stereo effect will remain.
The 12-digit SIRIUS identification number scrolls on the display 5 seconds after "SID" is selected.	AREA Tuner channel interval	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>AREA US</u> : When using the unit in North/Central/South America. AM/FM intervals are set to 10 kHz/200 kHz. ● <u>AREA SA</u> : When using the unit in South American countries where FM interval is 100 kHz. AM interval is set to 10 kHz. ● <u>AREA EU</u> : When using the unit in any other areas. AM/FM intervals are set to 9 kHz/50 kHz (100 kHz—for auto search).
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● <u>ON</u> : Activates dimmer. ● <u>OFF</u> : Cancels. 		

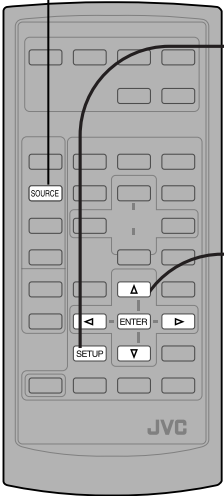
● Underlining indicates default setting.

Personal settings

DVD setups

You can change the audio or subtitles language of DVD before playing.
(Remote controller only)

Preparation: Select “DISC” as source, and stop playback



1 Open DVD setup screen
[SETUP]

2 Select menu
[Left] [ENTER] [Right] [Down]

3 Select item
[Up] [ENTER] [Down] (Confirm)

4 Set
[Up] [ENTER] [Down] (Confirm)


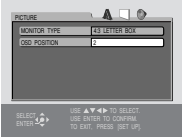
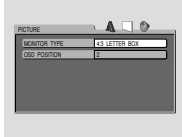
Close setup screen
[SETUP]

Chosen menu
picture
language
audio

LANGUAGE	
MENU LANGUAGE	ENGLISH
AUDIO LANGUAGE	ENGLISH
SUBTITLE	OFF
ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	ENGLISH

AUDIO	
DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	STREAM / PCM
DOWN MIX	STEREO
D. RANGE COMPRESSION	ON

AUDIO	
DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	STREAM / PCM
DOWN MIX	STEREO
D. RANGE COMPRESSION	ON

Menu	Item	Settings
LANGUAGE menu	MENU LANGUAGE	Select language of DVD menu (P.30 "Language codes").
	AUDIO LANGUAGE	Select language of playback audio (P.30 "Language codes").
	SUBTITLE	Select language of playback subtitles (P.30 "Language codes").
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select language of setup screen.
PICTURE menu	MONITOR TYPE	<p>You can select 16:9 widescreen playback to fit your monitor.</p> <p>● 16 : 9 ● 4:3 LETTER BOX ● 4:3 PAN SCAN</p> 
	OSD POSITION	<p>Select to display guidance at the bottom of the setup screen. (Also when you wish to change the position of the on-screen bar)</p> <p>● 1  ● 2 </p> <p>Guidance displayed Guidance not displayed (Position of on-screen bar also moves down)</p>
AUDIO menu	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	<p>Select according to device connected to DIGITAL OUT terminal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● PCM ONLY : Recording devices such as MD recorders ● DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM : Dolby Digital decoder, or compatible amplifier ● STREAM/PCM : DTS decoder, Dolby Digital decoder, MPEG Audio decoder, or compatible amplifier
	DOWN MIX	<p>Select according to device connected to LINE OUT terminal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● DOLBY SURROUND : Dolby Surround decoder or compatible amplifier ● STEREO : Except for above devices
	D. RANGE COMPRESSION	<p>You can enjoy powerful audio even at low volume levels. (Only during Dolby Digital playback)</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● AUTO : Function in use when at least three channels of multi-channel audio are available ● ON : Function always in use

Personal settings

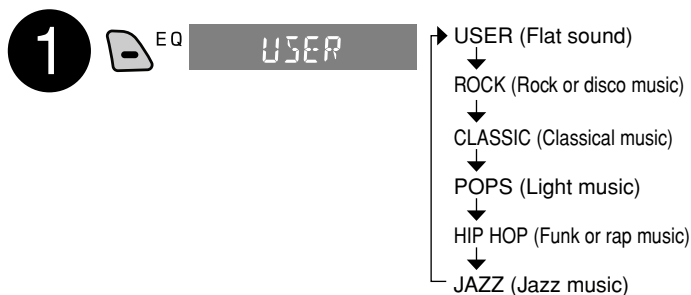
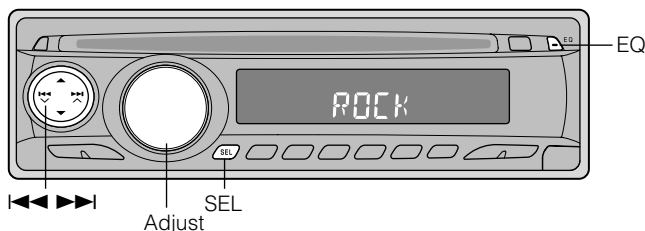
DVD setups

Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	GL	Galician	MK	Macedonian	SO	Somali
AB	Abkhazian	GN	Guarani	ML	Malayalam	SQ	Albanian
AF	Afrikaans	GU	Gujarati	MN	Mongolian	SR	Serbian
AM	Ameharic	HA	Hausa	MO	Moldavian	SS	Siswati
AR	Arabic	HI	Hindi	MR	Marathi	ST	Sesotho
AS	Assamese	HR	Croatian	MS	Malay (MAY)	SU	Sundanese
AY	Aymara	HU	Hungarian	MT	Maltese	SW	Swahili
AZ	Azerbaijani	HY	Armenian	MY	Burmese	TA	Tamil
BA	Bashkir	IA	Interlingua	NA	Nauru	TE	Telugu
BE	Byelorussian	IE	Interlingue	NE	Nepali	TG	Tajik
BG	Bulgarian	IK	Inupiak	NO	Norwegian	TH	Thai
BH	Bihari	IN	Indonesian	OC	Occitan	TI	Tigrinya
BI	Bislama	IS	Icelandic	OM	(Afan) Oromo	TK	Turkmen
BN	Bengali, Bangla	IW	Hebrew	OR	Oriya	TL	Tagalog
BO	Tibetan	JI	Yiddish	PA	Panjabi	TN	Setswana
BR	Breton	JW	Javanese	PL	Polish	TO	Tonga
CA	Catalan	KA	Georgian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TR	Turkish
CO	Corsican	KK	Kazakh	PT	Portuguese	TS	Tsonga
CS	Czech	KL	Greenlandic	QU	Quechua	TT	Tatar
CY	Welsh	KM	Cambodian	RM	Rhaeto- Romance	TW	Twi
DZ	Bhutani	KN	Kannada	RN	Kirundi	UK	Ukrainian
EL	Greek	KO	Korean (KOR)	RO	Rumanian	UR	Urdu
EO	Esperanto	KS	Kashmiri	RW	Kinyarwanda	UZ	Uzbek
ET	Estonian	KU	Kurdish	SA	Sanskrit	VI	Vietnamese
EU	Basque	KY	Kirghiz	SD	Sindhi	VO	Volapuk
FA	Persian	LA	Latin	SG	Sangho	WO	Wolof
FI	Finnish	LN	Lingala	SH	Serbo- Croatian	XH	Xhosa
FJ	Fiji	LO	Laothian	SI	Singhalese	YO	Yoruba
FO	Faroese	LT	Lithuanian	SK	Slovak	ZU	Zulu
FY	Frisian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SL	Slovenian		
GA	Irish	MG	Malagasy	SM	Samoan		
GD	Scots Gaelic	MI	Maori	SN	Shona		

Adjusting sound

You can choose from six patterns of sound settings (C-EQ: custom equalizer) to suit the genre of music that you are listening to. You can also make your own adjustments and store them to memory.



BAS (bass)	TRE (treble)	LOUD (loudness)
00	00	OFF
+03	+01	ON
+01	-02	OFF
+04	+01	OFF
+02	00	ON
+02	+03	OFF

■ To make your own adjustments



- The personal adjustments will be stored to memory.
- When you adjust the bass, treble, or loudness, the adjustment you have made is stored for the currently selected sound mode (C-EQ) including "USER".
- If you are using a two-speaker system, set fader level to "00".
- If the source is FM, VOL.A will be fixed ("FIX"), and cannot be adjusted.

BAS (bass) Adjust the bass.	-06 ↔ +06
TRE (treble) Adjust the treble.	-06 ↔ +06
FAD (fader) Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 ↔ F06
BAL (balance) Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 ↔ R06
LOUD (loudness) Produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.	LOUD ON/ LOUD OFF
VOL.A (volume adjust) Adjust and store auto adjustment volume level for each source.	-05 ↔ +05
VOL (volume) Adjust the volume.	00 ↔ 30 (50*)

* Depending on the amplifier gain control setting. (P.27 "AMP GAIN")

Troubleshooting

Something that appears to be a problem may not always be serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Problem	Causes/Remedies
General	Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Volume level is set to the minimum level. →Adjust it to the optimum level. ● Connections are incorrect. →Check the cords and connections.
	This unit does not work at all.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The built-in microcomputer may have functioned incorrectly due to noise, etc. →Reset unit.
FM/AM	FM stations cannot be preset automatically.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Signals are too weak. →Store stations manually.
	Static noise while listening to the radio.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Antenna is not connected firmly. →Connect antenna firmly.
Disc playback	"REGION CODE ERROR !" appears on monitor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Region code of the DVD is not "1". →Inset DVD whose region code includes "1".
	"DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on monitor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Parking brake is not engaged. →Stop driving and engage parking brake.
	Disc cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Disc is inserted upside down. →Insert disc correctly.
	Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Disc is not finalized. →Insert finalized disc.
	Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> →Finalize disc with the component which you used for recording.
	Disc cannot be recognized.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The DVD/CD player may have functioned incorrectly. →Eject the disc forcibly.
	"NO DISC" appears on the display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Disc is inserted incorrectly. →Insert disc correctly.
	Sound and picture are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● You are driving on rough roads. →Stop playback while driving on rough roads. ● Disc is scratched. →Change the disc.
	No playback picture (DVD, VCD) appears on monitor.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Parking brake wire is not connected properly. →Refer to Installation/Connection Manual.
	No picture appears on monitor at all.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Video cord is not connected correctly. →Connect video cord correctly. ● Incorrect input has been selected on monitor. →Select correct input on monitor.
The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the screen.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● "4:3 PAN SCAN" is selected when viewing on conventional monitor (aspect ratio 4:3). →Select "4:3 LETTER BOX." (P.29) 	

	Problem	Causes/Remedies
MP3/WMA playback	Disc cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No MP3/WMA tracks are recorded on disc. →Change the disc.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● MP3/WMA tracks do not have extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> in their file names. →Add extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to their file names.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● MP3/WMA tracks are not recorded in a compliant format. →Change disc. Record MP3/WMA tracks using a compliant application (P.6).
	Noise is generated.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The track played back is not an MP3/WMA file (even though it has extension code <.mp3> or <.wma>). →Skip to another track or change disc. (Do not add extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3 or WMA tracks.).
	Longer readout time is required.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Readout time varies due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration. →Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	Tracks cannot be played back as you have intended them to play.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Playback order is determined when files are recorded.
CD changer	Elapsed playing time is not correct.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● This is normal and occurs due to the way the tracks are recorded.
	Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● This unit can only display capital letters: A – Z, numbers, and some symbols.
	"NO DISC" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No disc is in magazine. →Insert disc into magazine.
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Disc is inserted upside down. →Insert disc correctly.
	"NO MAG" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No magazine is loaded in CD changer. →Insert magazine.
	"RESET 8" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● This unit is not connected to CD changer correctly. →Connect this unit and CD changer correctly and press reset button on CD changer.
	"RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Press reset button on CD changer.
The CD changer does not work at all.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The built-in microcomputer may function incorrectly due to noise, etc. →Reset unit (P.36). 	

Troubleshooting

	Problem	Causes/Remedies
Satellite radio	"CALL 1-888-539-SIRIUS TO SUBSCRIBE" scrolls on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Subscription has not been completed. →Complete subscription.
	Either "NO SIGNAL" scrolls or "NO SIGNL" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Signals are too weak. →Move to an area with stronger signals.
	Either "NO ANTENNA" scrolls or "ANTENNA" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Antenna is not connected firmly. →Connect antenna firmly.
	"NO CH" appears on display for 5 seconds, then returns to the previous display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No broadcast on selected channel. →Select another channel or continue listening to the previous channel.
	Either "NO (information)*" scrolls or "---" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No text information for selected channel.
	No sound can be heard.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● "UPDATING" flashes on display. →The unit is updating channel information which takes a few minutes to complete.
	SIRIUS radio does not work at all.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The built-in microcomputer may have functioned incorrectly due to noise, etc. →Reconnect the SIRIUS radio after a few seconds.
	No sound can be heard. "UPDATING" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The unit is updating channel information which takes a few minutes to complete.
	"---" appears on display for 2 seconds, then returns to the previous channel.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Selected channel is no longer available or is unauthorized.
	"OFF AIR" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Selected channel is not broadcasting at this time.
	"LOADING" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The unit is loading the channel information and audio. Text information is temporarily unavailable.
	"RESET 8" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Reconnect this unit and the satellite radio correctly and press reset button on unit.
Satellite radio does not work at all.		

	Problem	Causes/Remedies
iPod	iPod is not turned on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Connections are incorrect. →Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	Buttons do not work as intended.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The functions of the buttons have been changed. →Press MODE before performing the operation.
	Sound is distorted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The equalizer is activated on iPod. →Deactivate the equalizer on iPod.
	Playback stops.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The headphones are disconnected during playback. →Restart playback.
	No sound is played when connecting the iPod nano.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The headphones are connected to the iPod nano. →Disconnect the headphones from iPod nano.
	“NO MAG” “NO IPOD” appears on the display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Connections are incorrect. →Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	“NO FILES” appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No tracks are stored in the iPod. →Import tracks to iPod.
	“RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Communication failure occurs between adapter and iPod/ unit. →Disconnect adapter from both unit and iPod. Then, connect it again.
	“RESET 8” appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Communication failure occurs between adapter and unit. →Check the connection between adapter and unit.
iPod’s controls do not work after disconnecting from adapter.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Communication failure occurs between adapter and iPod. →Reset iPod. 	

About Repeat play/Random play on iPod/D. player

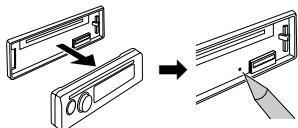
- ALL RPT: Functions as “Repeat All” for iPod.
Functions as “Repeat Mode → All” for D. player.
- SONG RND/RND ON: Functions as “Shuffle Songs” for iPod.
Functions as “Random Play → On” for D. player.

Troubleshooting

	Problem	Causes/Remedies
D. player	D. player does not turn on, or does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Firmware version needs to be updated. → Update firmware version of D. player.
	D. player does not turn on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Battery of D. player has run out. → Charge the battery of D. player.
	Buttons do not work as intended.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The functions of the buttons have been changed. → Press MODE before performing the operation.
	Sound is distorted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Equalizer is activated on D. player. → Deactivate equalizer on D. player.
	No sound is played. ("Not Connected" appears on display of D. player.)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Connections are incorrect, or communication failure occurs between adapter and D. player. → Disconnect adapter from D. player. Then, connect it again.
	"ERROR 01" appears on display.	
	"NO DP" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Connections are incorrect. → Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	"NO TRACK" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● No tracks are stored in D. player. → Import tracks to D. player.
	"RESET 1" - "RESET 7" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Communication failure occurs between adapter and D. player/unit. → Disconnect adapter both from unit and D. player. Then, connect it again.
	"RESET 8" appears on display.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Communication failure occurs between adapter and unit. → Check the connection between adapter and unit.
D. player's controls do not work after disconnecting from adapter.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Communication failure occurs between adapter and D. player. → Reset D. player. 	

None of the buttons work properly!

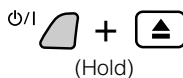
→ Remove panel and reset unit.



- Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

My disc will not eject!

→ Forcibly eject the disc.



Technical information

Connected devices

Satellite radio operations

- You can also connect JVC SIRIUS radio PnP (Plug and Play), using JVC SIRIUS radio adapter, KS-U100K (not supplied) to CD changer terminal. By turning on/off the power of the unit, you can turn on/off JVC PnP. However, you cannot control it from this unit.
- To learn more about SIRIUS Satellite radio or to sign up, visit «<http://www.sirius.com>».
- For the latest channel listings and programming information, or to sign up for XM Satellite radio, visit «<http://www.xmradio.com>».

iPod or D. player operations

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- The maximum number of characters for the text information is 40 characters. If the text information is more than 8 characters, it scrolls on display.

- If iPod or D. player fails to work correctly, refer to the JVC website below.
JVC web site:
For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>
For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

CD changer operations

- All discs inserted in the magazine will be played repeatedly.
- A JVC MP3-compatible CD changer is recommended. KD-MK series products cannot be used. MP3-incompatible CD changer can be also connected (excluding CH-X99 and CH-X100), but cannot play MP3 discs.
- DVD, VCD, or WMA discs inserted in CD changer cannot be played back.
- Disc text information can be displayed when using a CD text compatible CD changer.


Rear terminal output signals

- Output signals are different depending on the "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" setting on the setup menu (P.29).
- For playback of multi-channel audio such as Dolby Digital or DTS, connect an amplifier or decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" correctly. (P.29)
- Output from Speaker out/LINE OUT will be 2-channel signals. Multi-channel encoded signals will be downmixed. (P.29 "DOWN MIX")

DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT Playback Disc		Output Signals		
		STREAM/PCM	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	PCM ONLY
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM			
	with DTS	DTS bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
	with Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with MPEG Audio	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD		44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS		DTS bitstream	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
MP3/WMA		32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION

Power Output:	17 W RMS × 4 Channels at 4 Ω and 1% THD+N		
Signal to Noise Ratio:	80 dBA (reference: 1 W into 4 Ω)		
Load Impedance:	4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)		
Tone Control Range:	Bass:	±10 dB at 100Hz	
	Treble:	±10 dB at 10kHz	
Audio Output Level:	Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical):	Signal wave length: 660 nm Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm	
	Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)	
	Output Impedance:	1 kΩ	
Color System:	NTSC		
Video Output (composite):	1 Vp-p/75 Ω		
Other Terminals:	CD changer		

TUNER SECTION

Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 107.9 MHz (with channel interval set to 100 kHz or 200 kHz) 87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz (with channel interval set to 50 kHz)
	AM:	530 kHz to 1 710 kHz (with channel interval set to 10 kHz) 531 kHz to 1 602 kHz (with channel interval set to 9 kHz)
[FM Tuner]	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
	50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
	Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
	Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
	Stereo Separation:	35 dB
[AM Tuner]	Sensitivity:	20 μV
	Selectivity:	35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION

Signal Detection System:		Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)	
Number of Channels:		2 channels (stereo)	
Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz	
	DVD, fs=96 kHz:	16 Hz to 44 000 Hz	
	VCD, CD, MP3, WMA:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz	
Dynamic Range:		96 dB	
Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		98 dB	
Wow and Flutter:		Less than measurable limit	
MP3 (MPEG Audio Layer 3):	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps	
	Sampling frequency	MPEG-1	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz
		MPEG-2	24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz
WMA (Windows Media® Audio):	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 192 kbps	
	Sampling frequency	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz	

GENERAL

Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)	
Grounding System:	Negative ground		
Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C (32°F to 104°F)		
Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm (7-3/16" × 2-1/16" × 6-1/4")	
	Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm (7-7/16" × 2-5/16" × 7/16")	
Mass (approx.):	1.7 kg (3.7 lbs) (excluding accessories)		

*Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

If a kit is necessary for your car, consult your telephone directory for the nearest car audio speciality shop.

Trademarks and copyrights

- "DVD Logo" is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- "DTS" and "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" are registered trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- "SIRIUS" and the SIRIUS dog logo are registered trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc.
- XM and its corresponding logos are registered trademarks of XM Satellite Radio Inc.
- "SAT Radio," the SAT Radio logo and all related marks are trademarks of SIRIUS Satellite Radio Inc., and XM Satellite Radio, Inc.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit (P.36)

Still having trouble??


USA ONLY

Call 1-800-252-5722

<http://www.jvc.com>

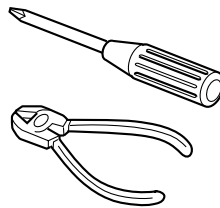
We can help you!

JVC

 EN, SP, FR

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1205MNMBSJEIN



English

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent accidents and damage:

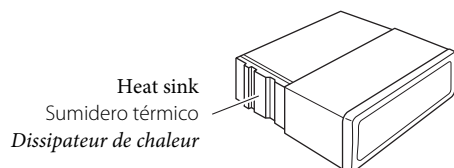
- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where;**
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT operate the unit while driving.**
- **If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving. If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 45 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 45 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 27 of the Instructions).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



Español

Esta unidad está diseñada para funcionar con **12 V de CC, con sistemas eléctricos de masa NEGATIVA**. Si su vehículo no posee este sistema, será necesario un inversor de tensión, que puede ser adquirido en los concesionarios de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.

ADVERTENCIAS

Para evitar daños y accidentes:

- **NO instale la unidad en los siguientes sitios;**
 - puede obstaculizar las maniobras del volante de dirección y de la palanca de cambios.
 - puede obstaculizar la operación de los dispositivos de seguridad, como por ejemplo, bolsas de aire.
 - Donde pueda obstruir la visibilidad.
- **NO opere la unidad mientras maneja.**
- **Si es necesario operar la unidad mientras maneja, asegúrese de no apartar la vista de la carretera.**
- **El conductor no debe mirar el monitor mientras conduce. Si no está aplicado el freno de estacionamiento, aparecerá en el monitor "EL CONDUCTOR NO DEBE MIRAR EL MONITOR MIENTRAS CONDUCE.", y no se mostrará la imagen de reproducción.**
 - Esta advertencia aparece únicamente cuando el cable del freno de estacionamiento se encuentra conectado al sistema del freno de estacionamiento incorporado al automóvil.

Para evitar cortocircuitos, recomendamos que desconecte el terminal negativo de la batería y que efectúe todas las conexiones eléctricas antes de instalar la unidad.

- **Asegúrese de volver a conectar a masa esta unidad al chasis del automóvil después de la instalación.**

Notas:

- Reemplace el fusible por uno con la corriente especificada. Si el fusible se quemase frecuentemente consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles.
- Se recomienda conectar los altavoces con una potencia máxima de más de 45 W (tanto atrás como adelante, con una impedancia de **4 Ω a 8 Ω**). Si la potencia máxima es de menos de 45 W, cambie "AMP GAIN" para evitar daños en los altavoces (consulte la página 27 del Manual de Instrucciones).
- Para evitar cortocircuitos, cubra los cables NO UTILIZADOS con cinta aislante.
- El sumidero térmico estará muy caliente después del uso. Asegúrese de no tocarlo al desmontar esta unidad.

Français

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.

AVERTISSEMENTS

Pour éviter tout accident et tout dommage:

- **N'INSTALLEZ aucun élément dans les endroits suivants;**
 - Il peut gêner l'utilisation du volant ou du levier de vitesse.
 - Il peut gêner le fonctionnement de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les coussins de sécurité.
 - où il peut gêner la visibilité.
- **NE manipulez pas l'appareil quand vous conduisez.**
- **Si vous devez commander l'appareil pendant que vous conduisez, assurez-vous de bien regarder devant vous.**
- **Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit.**
 - Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas mis, "LE CONDUCTEUR NE DOIT PAS REGARDER LE MONITEUR EN CONDUISANT." apparaît sur le moniteur et l'image de lecture n'apparaît pas.
 - Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

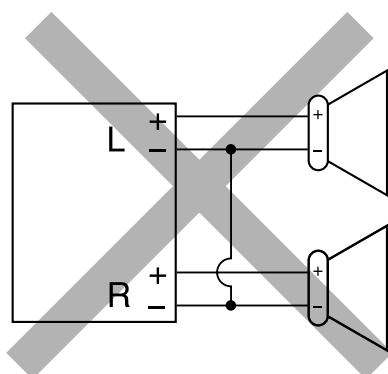
- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques:

- Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.
- Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 45 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre **4 Ω et 8 Ω**). Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 45 W, changez "AMP GAIN" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 27 du Manual d'Instructions).
- Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.
- Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.

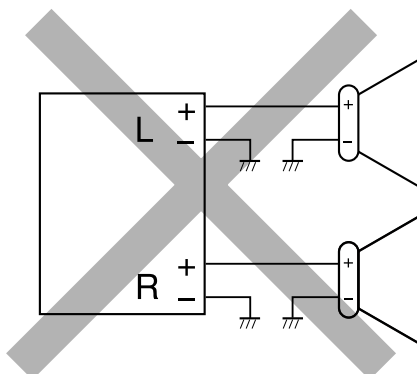
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



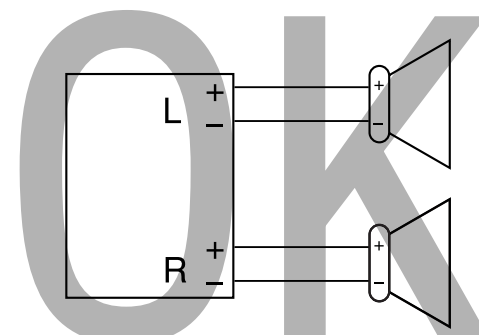
PRECAUCIONES sobre las conexiones de la fuente de alimentación y de los altavoces:

- **NO conecte los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación a la batería de automóvil, pues podrían producirse graves daños en la unidad.**
- ANTES de conectar a los altavoces los conductores de altavoz del cable de alimentación, verifique el conexionado de altavoz de su automóvil.



PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.

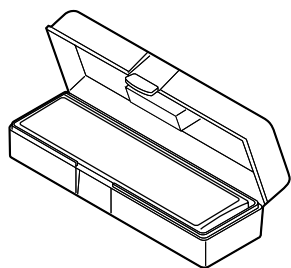


Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

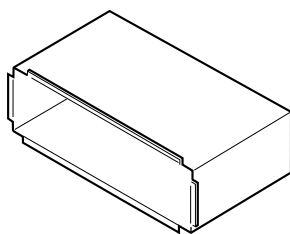
(A) / (B)

Hard case/Control panel
Estuche duro/Panel de control
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande



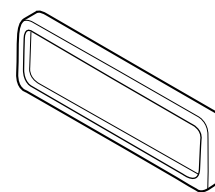
(C)

Sleeve
Cubierta
Manchon



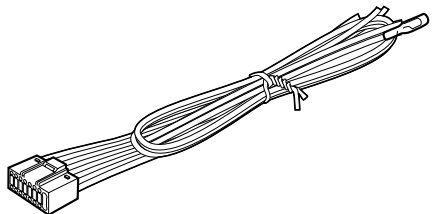
(D)

Trim plate
Placa de guarnición
Plaque d'assemblage



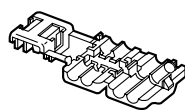
(E)

Power cord
Cordón de alimentación
Cordon d'alimentation



(F)

Crimp connector
Sujeción
Cosse à sertir



(G)

Washer (ø5)
Arandela (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)



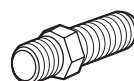
(H)

Lock nut (M5)
Tuerca de seguridad (M5)
Ecrou d'arrêt (M5)



(I)

Mounting bolt—M5 × 20 mm (M5 × 13/16")
Perno de montaje—
M5 × 20 mm (M5 × 13/16 pulgada)
Boulon de montage—
M5 × 20 mm (M5 × 13/16 pouces)



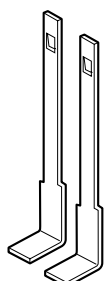
(J)

Rubber cushion
Cojín de goma
Amortisseur en caoutchouc



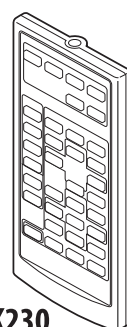
(K)

Handles
Manijas
Poignées



(L)

Remote controller
Control remoto
Télécommande



RM-RK230

(M)

Battery
Pila
Pile



CR2025

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):**
2-channel signal is emitted.
When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 29 of the Instructions.)
- **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):**
Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*¹, DTS*², MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 37 of the Instructions.)
To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" correctly. (See page 29 of the Instructions.)

*¹ Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
*² "DTS" and "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

Acerca de los sonidos reproducidos a través de los terminales traseros

- **A través de los terminales analógicos (Salida de altavoz/LINE OUT):**
Se emite la señal de 2 canales.
Cuando se reproduce un disco codificado multicanal, se mezclan las señales multicanal. (AUDIO—MEZCLA: consulte la página 29 del Manual de Instrucciones.)
- **A través de DIGITAL OUT (óptico):**
Las señales digitales (PCM Lineal, Dolby Digital*¹, DTS*², MPEG Audio) se emiten a través de este terminal. (Para más detalles, consulte la página 37 del Manual de Instrucciones.)
Para reproducir sonidos multicanal como por ejemplo, Dolby digital y DTS, conecte un amplificador o decodificador compatible con estas fuentes multicanal a este terminal, y ajuste correctamente "SALIDA DE AUDIO DIGITAL". (Consulte la página 29 del Manual de Instrucciones.)

*¹ Fabricado bajo licencia de Dolby Laboratories. Dolby y el símbolo de la doble D son marcas comerciales de Dolby Laboratories.
*² "DTS" y "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" son marcas comerciales de Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

À propos des sons reproduits par les prises arrière

- **Par les prises analogiques (Sortie des enceintes/LINE OUT):**
Un signal à 2 canaux est sorti.
Lors de la lecture d'un disque codé multicanal, les signaux multicanal sont sous mixés. (AUDIO—MIXAGE DEMULTIPLICATION: voir page 29 du Manual d'Instructions.)
- **Par la sortie DIGITAL OUT (optique):**
Les signaux numériques (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*¹, DTS*², MPEG Audio) sont sortis par cette prise. (Pour plus de détails, voir page 37 du Manual d'Instructions.)
Pour reproduire les sons multicanal, Dolby Digital ou DTS par exemple, connectez à cette prise un amplificateur ou un décodeur compatible avec ces sources multicanal, et réglez "SORTIE AUDIO NUM." correctement. (Voir page 29 du Manual d'Instructions.)

*¹ Fabriqué sous licence de Dolby Laboratories. Le terme Dolby et le sigle double D sont des marques commerciales de Dolby Laboratories.
*² "DTS" et "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" sont des marques de commerce de Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

TROUBLESHOOTING

- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "—" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interferes with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "—" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

LOCALIZACION DE AVERIAS

- **El fusible se quema.**
* ¿Están los conductores rojo y negro correctamente conectados?
- **No es posible conectar la alimentación.**
* ¿Está el cable amarillo conectado?
- **No sale sonido de los altavoces.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz cortocircuitado?
- **El sonido presenta distorsión.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
* ¿Están los terminales "—" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Perturbación de ruido.**
* ¿El terminal de tierra trasero está conectado al chasis del automóvil utilizando los cordones más corto y más grueso?
- **La unidad se calienta.**
* ¿Está el cable de salida del altavoz conectado a masa?
* ¿Están los terminales "—" de los altavoces L y R conectados a una masa común?
- **Este receptor no funciona en absoluto.**
* ¿Reinicializó el receptor?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
* Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils raccordés correctement?
- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
* Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?
- **Le son est déformé.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
* Les bornes "—" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
* La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?
- **L'appareil devient chaud.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
* Les bornes "—" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
* Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

INSTALACION (MONTAJE EN EL TABLERO DE INSTRUMENTOS)

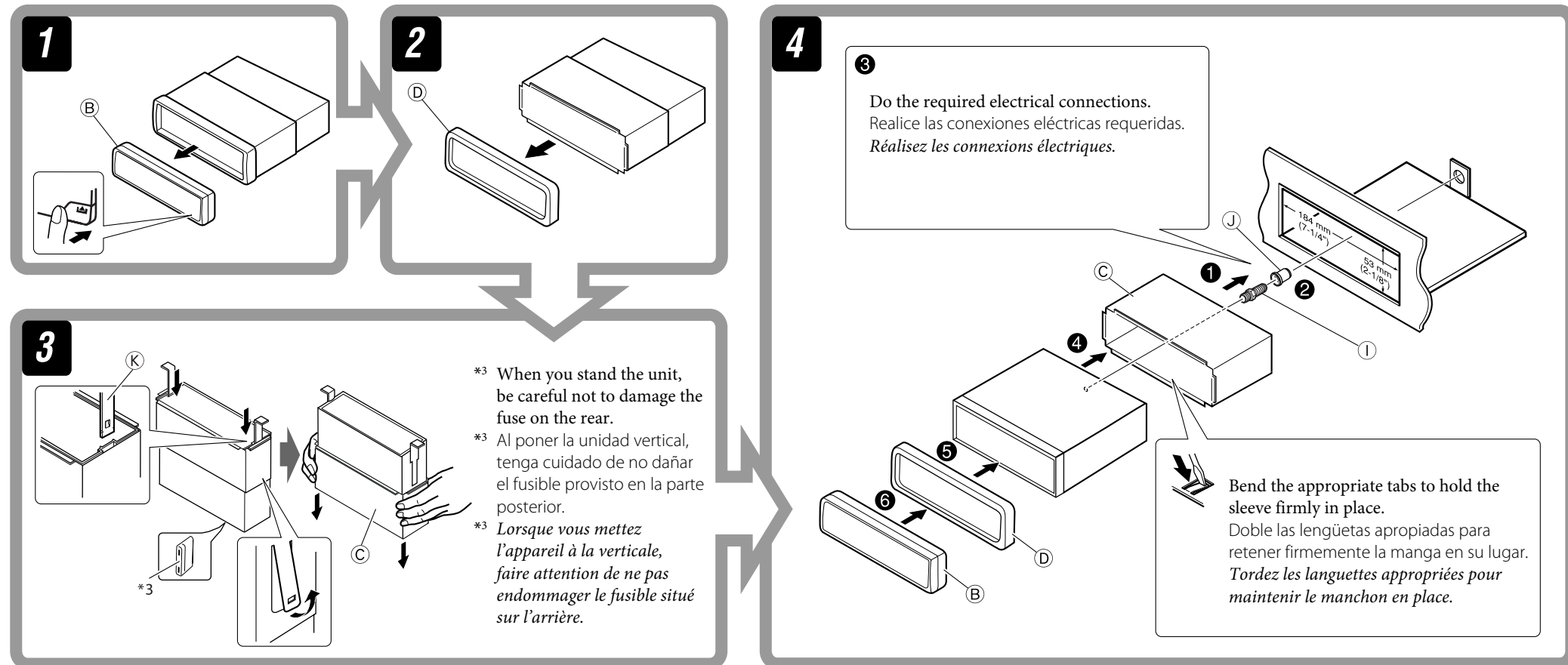
La siguiente ilustración muestra una instalación típica. Si tiene alguna pregunta o necesita información acerca de las herramientas para instalación, consulte con su concesionario de JVC de equipos de audio para automóviles o a una compañía que suministra tales herramientas.

- Si usted no está seguro de cómo instalar correctamente la unidad, hágala instalar por un técnico cualificado.

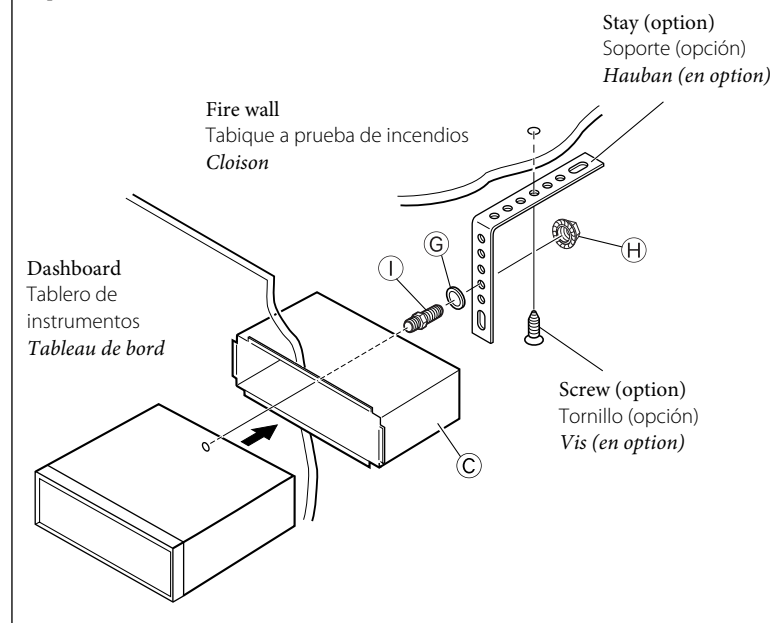
INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consultez votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.



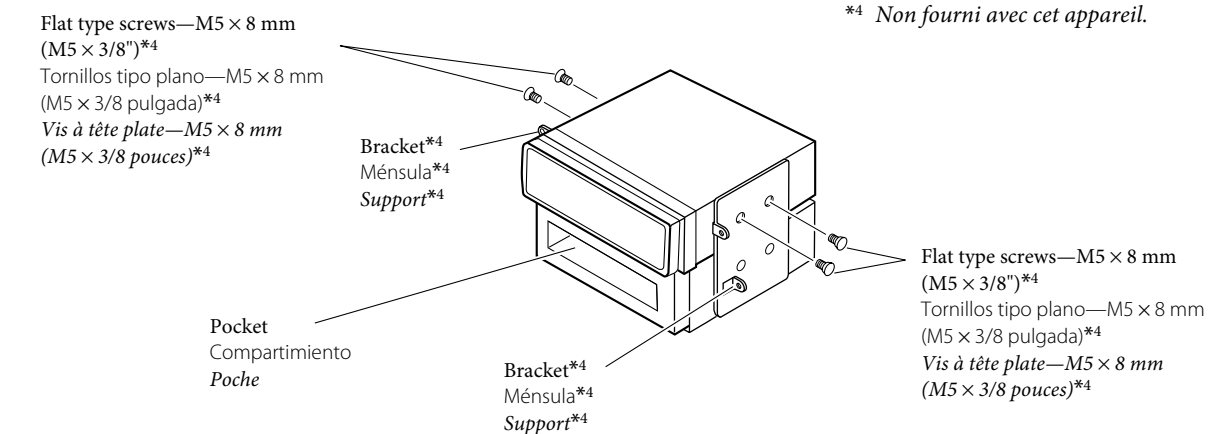
When using the optional stay / Cuando emplea un soporte opcional / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option



Install the unit at an angle of less than 30°. *Instale la unidad a un ángulo de menos de 30°.* *Installez l'appareil avec un angle de moins de 30°.*

When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Instalación de la unidad sin utilizar la cubierta / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sans utiliser de manchon

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place. *En un Toyota por ejemplo, primero retire la radio del automóvil y luego instale la unidad en su lugar.* *Par exemple dans une Toyota, retirer d'abord l'autoradio et installer l'appareil à la place.*



- *4 Not supplied for this unit. *No suministrado con esta unidad.* **4 Non fourni avec cet appareil.*

- Note** : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm (3/8") -long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
- Nota** : Cuando instala la unidad en la ménsula de montaje, asegúrese de utilizar los tornillos de 8 mm (3/8 pulgada) de longitud. Si se utilizan tornillos más largos, éstos pueden dañar la unidad.
- Remarque** : Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm (3/8 pouces). Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.

Removing the unit

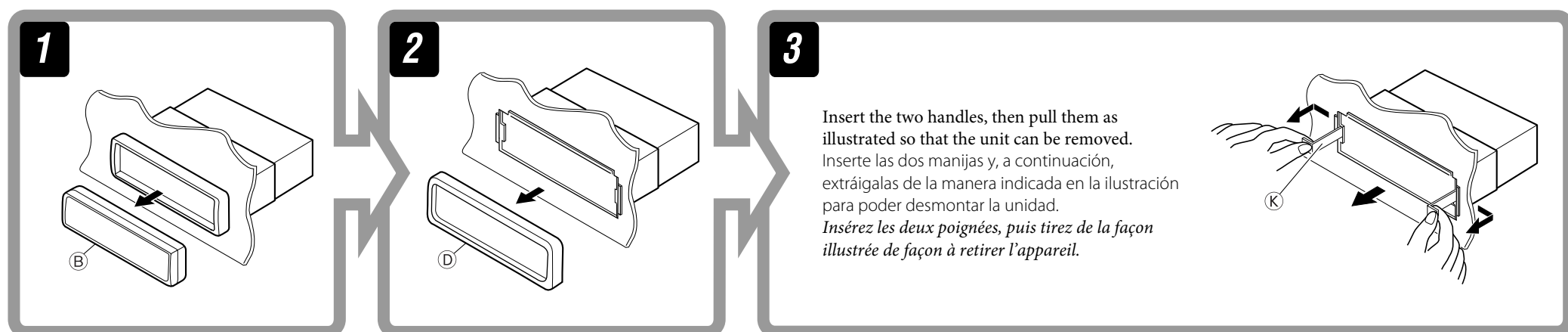
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

Extracción de la unidad

Antes de extraer la unidad, libere la sección trasera.

Retrait de l'appareil

Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

CONEXIONES ELECTRICAS

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

A Typical connections / Conexiones típicas / Raccordements typiques

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

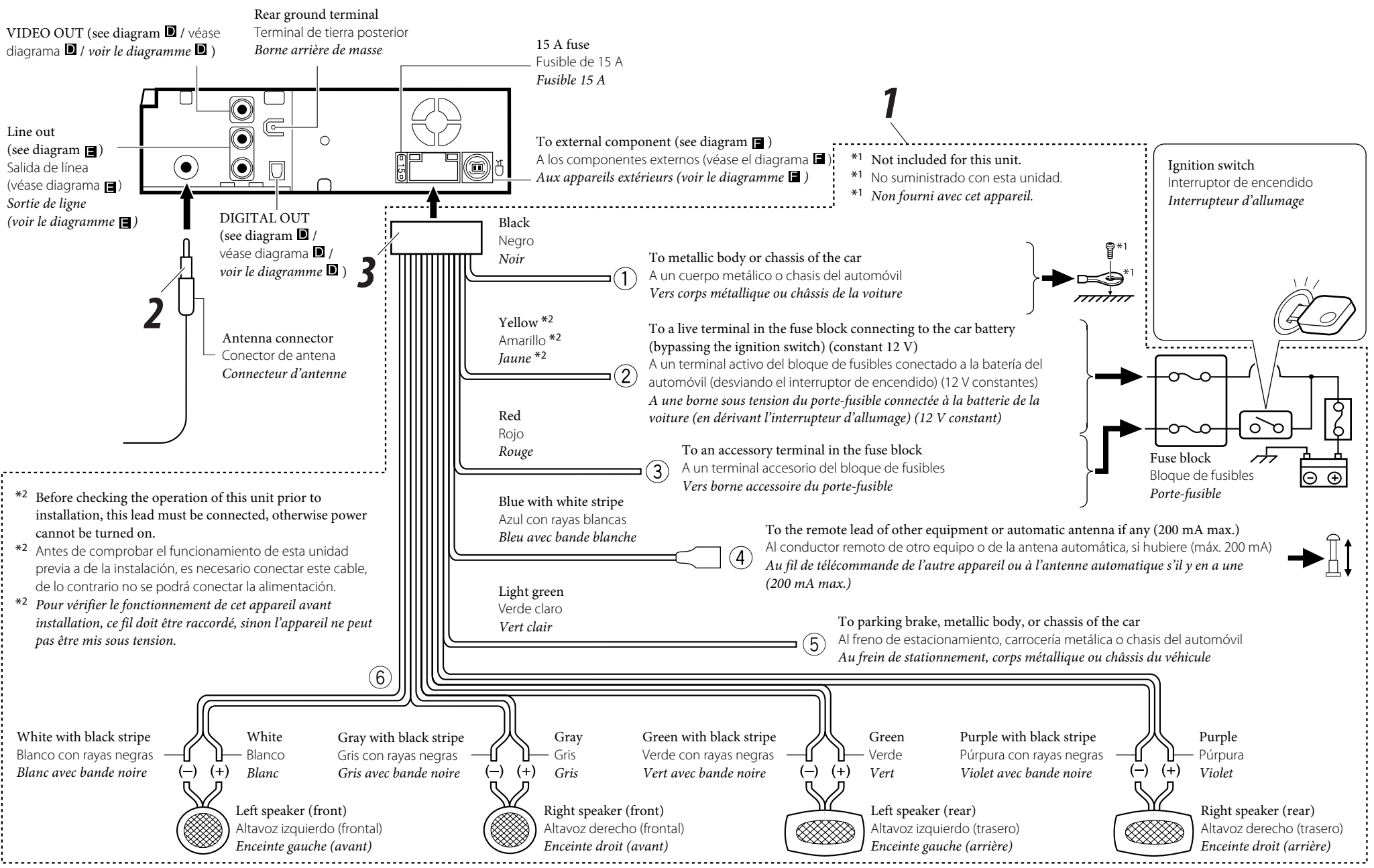
- 1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 2 Connect the antenna cord.
- 3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Antes de la conexión: Verifique atentamente el conexionado del vehículo. Una conexión incorrecta podría producir daños graves en la unidad. Los cordones del cable de alimentación y los del conector procedentes de la carrocería del automóvil podrían ser de diferentes en color.

- 1 Conecte los conductores de color del cable de alimentación en el orden especificado en la ilustración de abajo.
- 2 Conecte el cable de antena.
- 3 Por último, conecte el cable de alimentación a la unidad.

Avant de commencer la connexion: Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil. Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

- 1 Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.
- 2 Connectez le cordon d'antenne.
- 3 Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.

**B** Connecting the parking brake wire / Conexión del cable del freno de estacionamiento / Connexion du cordon de frein de stationnement

When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver

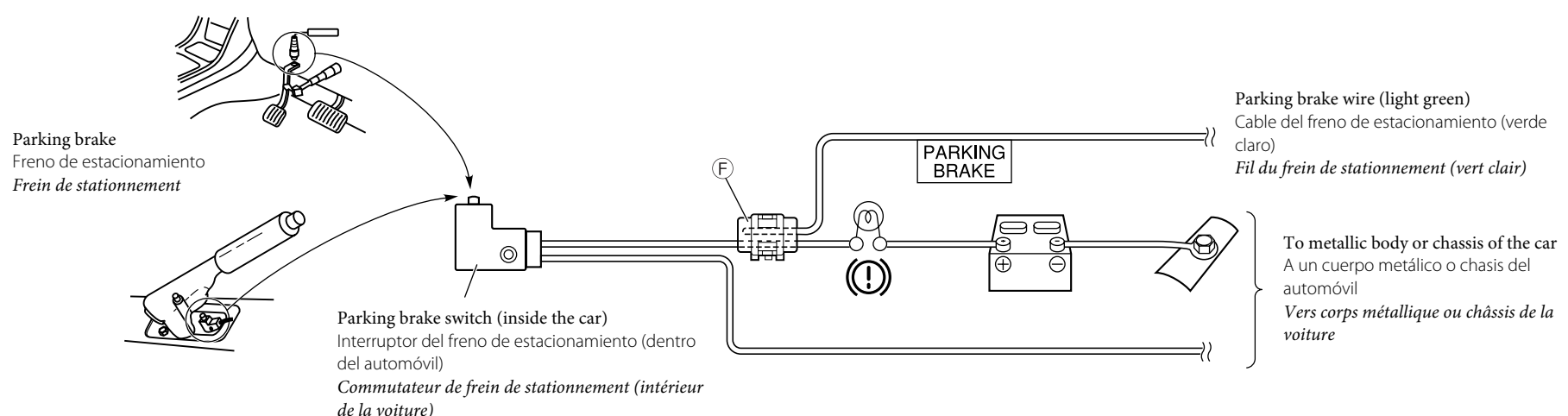
Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.

Al instalar el monitor en un lugar donde pueda ser visto por el conductor

Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento al sistema de freno de estacionamiento del automóvil.

Lorsqu'on installe le moniteur à un emplacement où il peut être vu du conducteur

Connectez le fil de frein de stationnement au système de frein de stationnement.



When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver

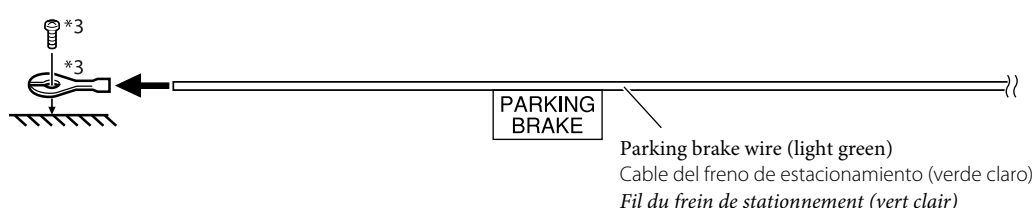
Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis of the car.

Al instalar el monitor en un lugar donde no pueda ser visto por el conductor

Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento a la carrocería metálica o al chasis del automóvil.

Lorsqu'on installe le moniteur à un emplacement où il ne peut pas être vu du conducteur

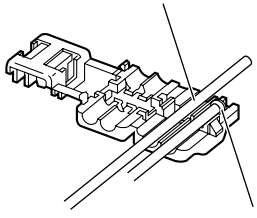
Connectez le fil du frein de stationnement au corps métallique ou châssis du véhicule.



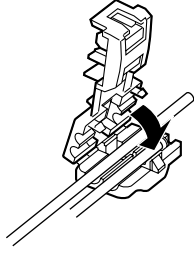
***3** Not included for this unit. / No suministrado con esta unidad. / Non fourni avec cet appareil.

C Connecting the crimp connector / Conexión del conector de presión / Connexion de la cosse sertie

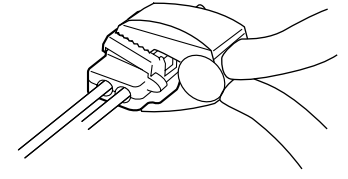
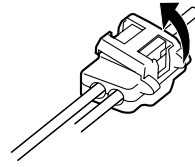
Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
Conecte la batería y el interruptor del freno de estacionamiento.
Fil connectant la batterie et l'interrupteur de frein de stationnement.



Attach the parking brake wire to this point.
Conecte el cable del freno de estacionamiento a este punto.
Attachez le fil du frein de stationnement ici.



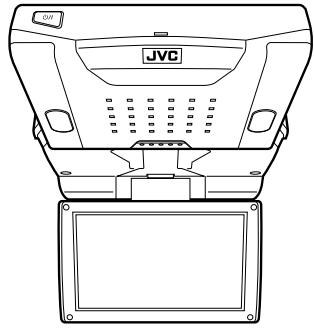
Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
Conecte la parte metálica del engarce a los cables interiores.
Mettez en contact la partie métallique de la cosse à sertir et des fils intérieurs.



Pinch the crimp firmly.
Apriete firmemente el engarce.
Pincez la cosse à sertir fermement.

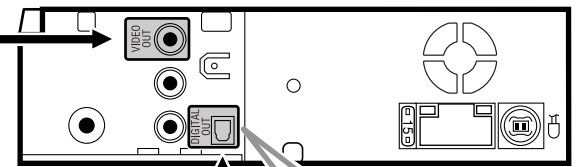
D Required connections for DVD playback / Conexiones requeridas para reproducción de DVD / Connexions requises pour la lecture de DVD

KV-MR9010
9-INCH WIDESCREEN MONITOR
(not supplied)
MONITOR DE PANTALLA ANCHA DE
9 PULGADAS (no suministrado)
MONITEUR À ÉCRAN LARGE DE
9 POUCES (non fourni)



Video cord (not supplied)
Cordón de video (no suministrado)
Cordon vidéo (non fourni)

KD-DV4200



Digital optical cable (not supplied)
Cable óptico digital (no suministrado)
Câble optique numérique (non fourni)

DIGITAL OUT

For more details, see page 37 of the Instructions.
Para mayor información, consulte la página 37 del Manual de Instrucciones.
Pour plus de détails, voir page 37 du Manual d'Instructions.

Audio/video control amplifier or the decoder compatible with the multichannel digital sources
Amplificador de control de audio/video o el decodificador compatibles con las fuentes digitales multicanal
Amplificateur de commande audio/vidéo ou décodeur compatible avec les sources numériques multicanaux

E Connecting the external amplifier / Conexión del amplificador exterior / Connexion d'un amplificateur extérieur

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

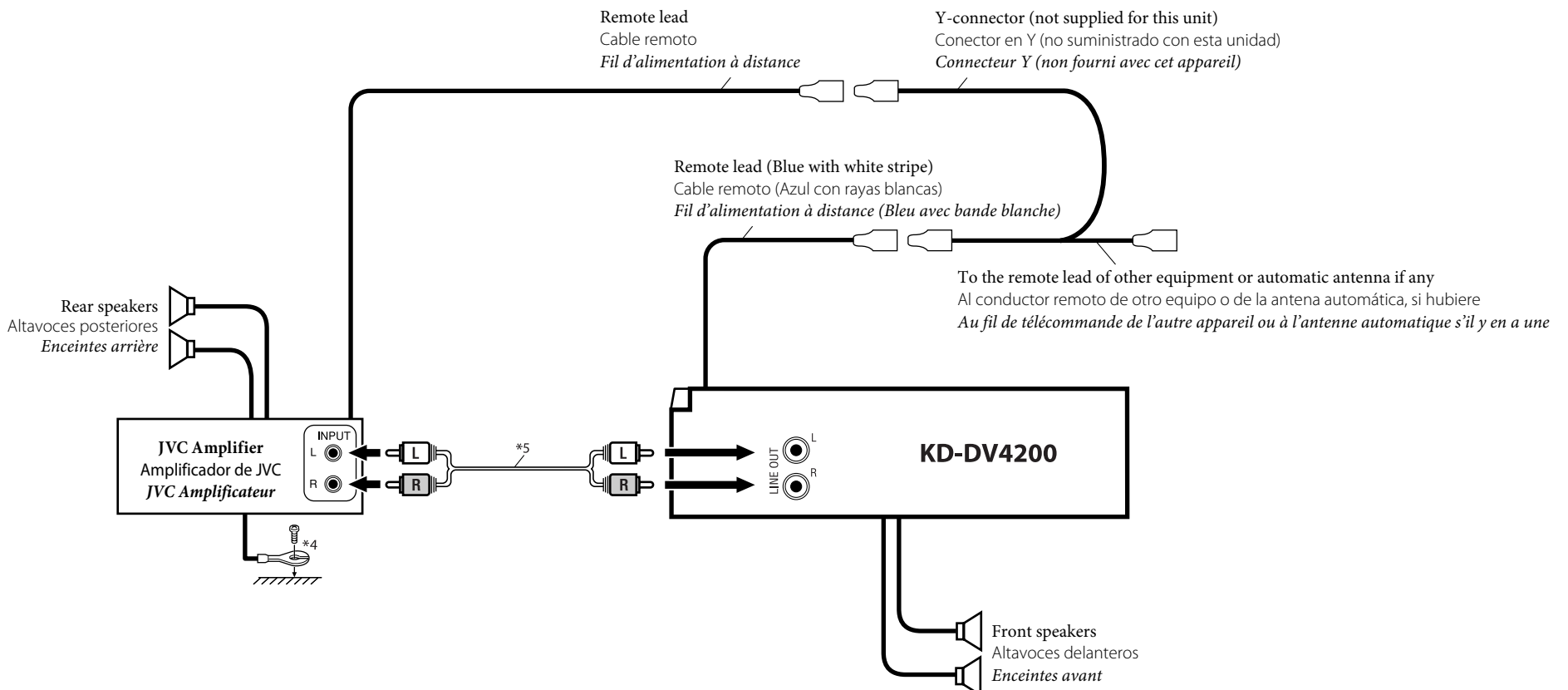
- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Usted podrá conectar un amplificador para mejorar el sistema estéreo de su automóvil.

- Conecte el conductor remoto (azul con rayas blancas) al conductor remoto del otro equipo para poderlo controlar a través de esta unidad.
- **Desconecte los altavoces de esta unidad y conéctelos al amplificador. Los cables de los altavoces de esta unidad quedan sin usar.**

Vous pouvez connecter un amplificateur pour améliorer votre système autoradio.

- Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.
- **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**



*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*4 Fije firmemente el cable de tierra a la carrocería metálica o al chasis—a un lugar no cubierto con pintura (si está cubierto con pintura, quítela antes de fijar el cable). De lo contrario, se podrían producir daños en la unidad.

*4 Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.

*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*5 Cable de señal (no suministrado con esta unidad)
*5 Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet appareil)

F Connecting the external components / Conexión de los componentes externos / Connexion des appareils extérieurs

• Set "CHANGER" for the external input setting (See page 27 of the Instructions.) / Seleccione "CHANGER" para el ajuste de entrada externa (Consulte la página 27 del Manual de Instrucciones.) / Réglez "CHANGER" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieure (Voir page 27 du Manuel d'Instructions.)

JVC CD changer, SIRIUS Satellite radio, XM Satellite radio, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / Cambiador de CD de JVC, radio satelital SIRIUS, radio satelital XM, iPod® de Apple o reproductor JVC D. / Changeur de CD JVC, radio satellite SIRIUS, radio satellite XM, iPod® Apple ou lecteur D. JVC

You can connect these components in series as illustrated below.

- For listening to the SIRIUS Satellite radio, connect a JVC DLP —Down Link Processor (separately purchased) to this unit.
- The iPod*6 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

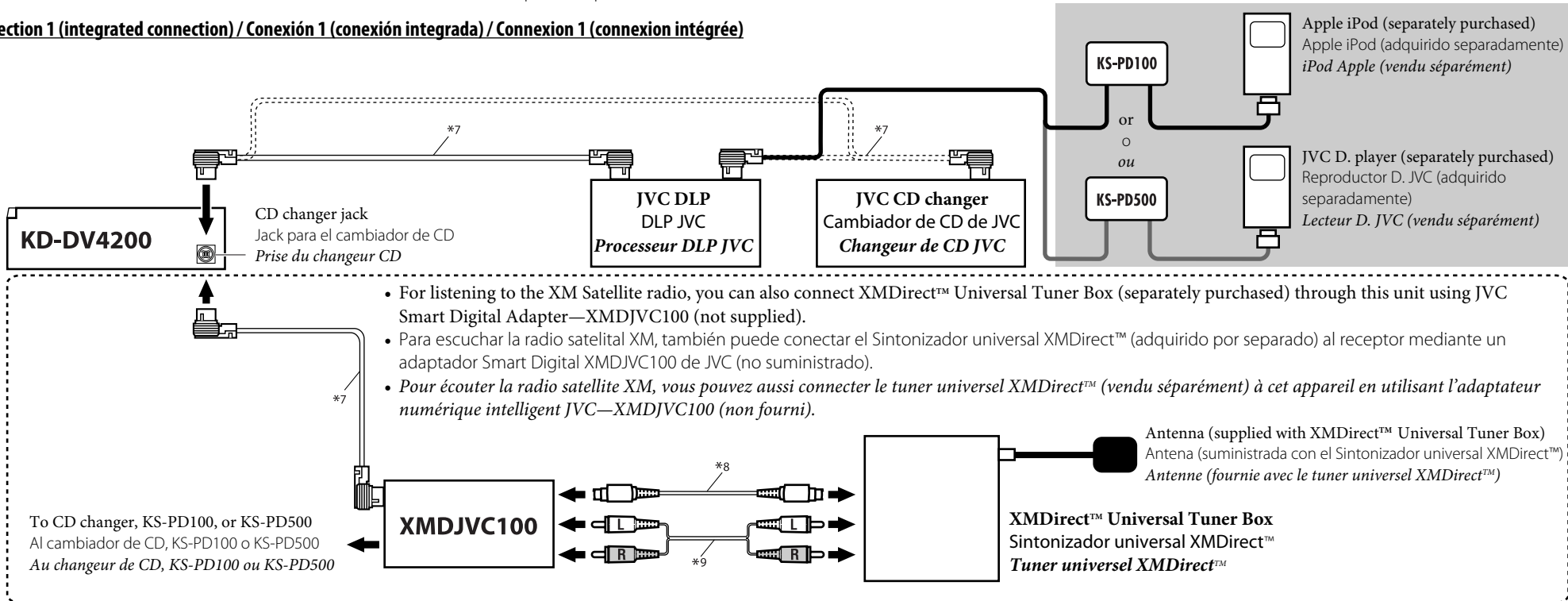
Estos componentes se pueden conectar en serie, tal como se muestra en la ilustración de abajo.

- Para escuchar la radio satelital SIRIUS, conecte un DLP (Down Link Processor) de JVC (adquirido por separado) al receptor.
- Puede conectar el iPod*6 o el reproductor D. usando un adaptador de interfaz (no suministrado)—KS-PD100 (para iPod) o KS-PD500 (para el reproductor D.).

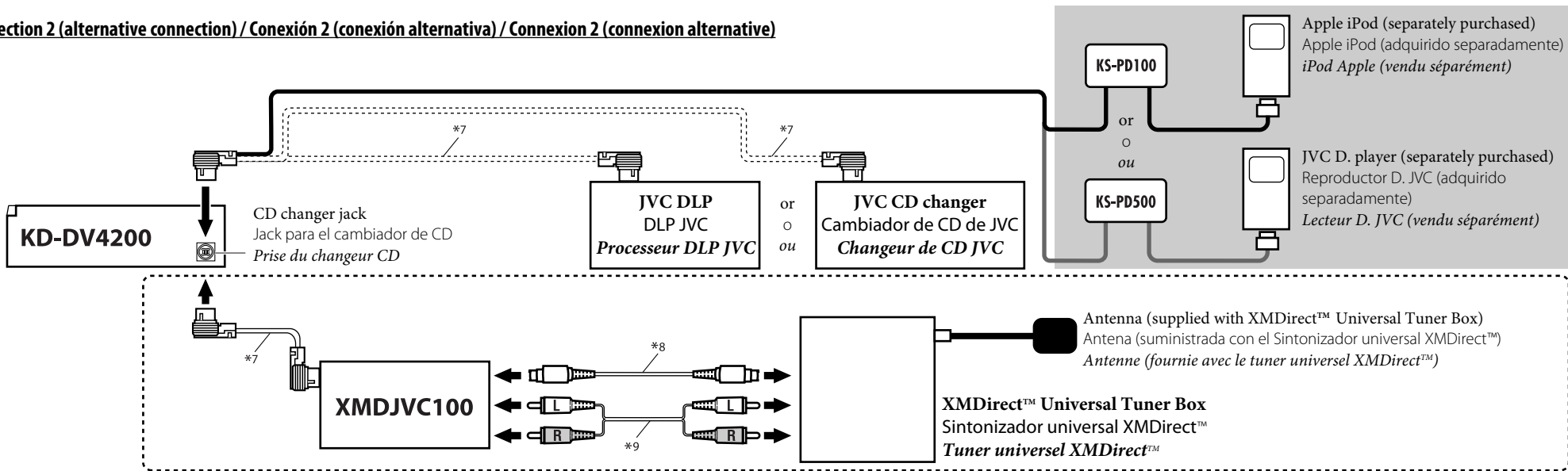
Vous pouvez connecter ces appareils en série comme montrée sur l'illustration.

- Pour écouter la radio satellite SIRIUS, connectez un processeur DLP JVC —Processeur de signaux satellite-terre (vendu séparément) à cet appareil.
- Le iPod*6 ou le lecteur D. peut être connecté en utilisant un adaptateur d'interface (non fourni)—KS-PD100 (pour iPod) ou KS-PD500 (pour le lecteur D.).

Connection 1 (integrated connection) / Conexión 1 (conexión integrada) / Connexion 1 (connexion intégrée)



Connection 2 (alternative connection) / Conexión 2 (conexión alternativa) / Connexion 2 (connexion alternative)



CAUTION / PRECAUCION / PRECAUTION:

- Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
- Antes de conectar los componentes externos, asegúrese de que la unidad esté apagada.
- Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

*6 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
*6 iPod es una marca comercial de Apple Computer, Inc., registrada en los EE.UU. y otros países.
*6 iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Computer, Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.

*7 Connection cord supplied with your JVC CD changer or DLP
*7 Conexión del cable suministrado para su cambiador de CD o DLP JVC
*7 Cordon de connexion fourni avec votre changeur de CD ou processeur DLP JVC

*8 Signal cord supplied with your Smart Digital Adapter
*8 Cable de señal suministrado con el adaptador Smart Digital
*8 Cordon de signal fourni avec votre adaptateur numérique intelligent

*9 Audio signal cord supplied with your Smart Digital Adapter
*9 Cable de señal de audio suministrado con el adaptador Smart Digital
*9 Cordon audio fourni avec votre adaptateur numérique intelligent

• Set "EXT IN" for the external input setting (See page 27 of the Instructions.) / Seleccione "EXT IN" para el ajuste de entrada externa (Consulte la página 27 del Manual de Instrucciones.) / Réglez "EXT IN" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieure (Voir page 27 du Manuel d'Instructions.)

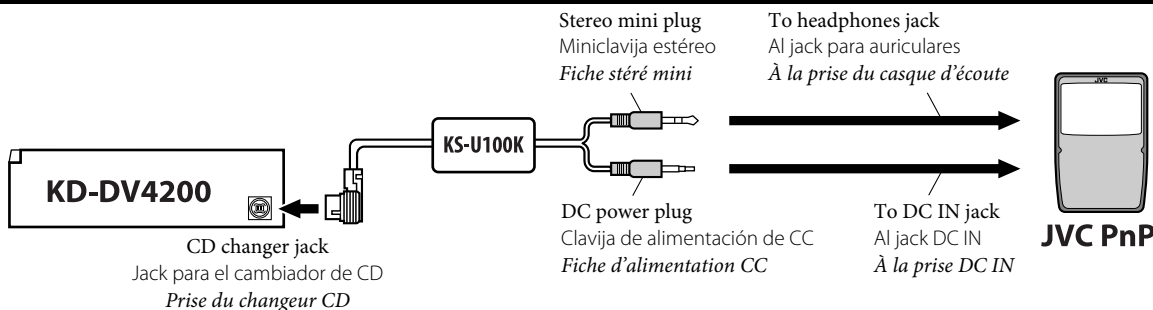
JVC PnP (Plug and Play) / PnP ("Plug and Play") JVC / PnP ("Plug and Play") JVC

You can also connect JVC PnP through this unit using JVC SIRIUS radio adapter, KS-U100K (not supplied).

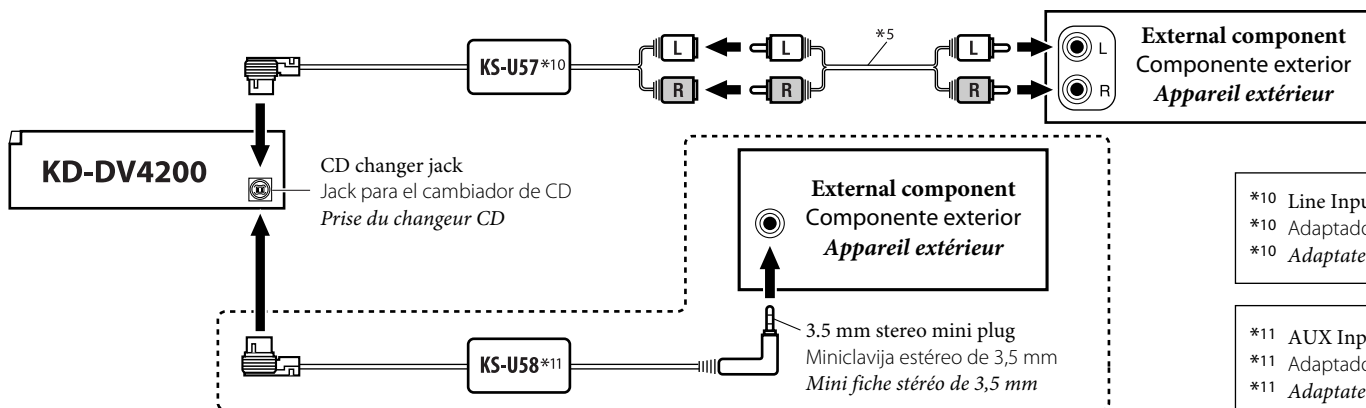
- Turning on/off the unit can also turns on/off the JVC PnP.
- También podrá conectar la PnP JVC a través de este receptor utilizando el adaptador para radio SIRIUS JVC, KS-U100K (no suministrado).

• Al encender/apagar el receptor también se enciende/apaga la PnP JVC.
Vous pouvez aussi connecter le PnP JVC à cet autoradio en utilisant l'adaptateur de radio SIRIUS JVC KS-U100K (non fourni).

- Mettre sous/hors tension l'autoradio peut aussi mettre sous/hors tension le PnP JVC.



Other external component / Otro componente externo / Autre appareil extérieur



*10 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*10 Adaptador de entrada de línea KS-U57 (no suministrado con esta unidad)
*10 Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne KS-U57 (non fourni avec cet appareil)

*11 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)
*11 Adaptador de entrada AUX KS-U58 (no suministrado con esta unidad)
*11 Adaptateur d'entrée AUX KS-U58 (non fourni avec cet autoradio)

JVC



ENGLISH

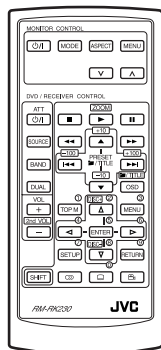
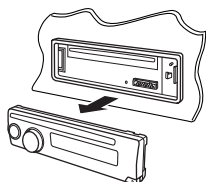
DEUTSCH

FRANÇAIS

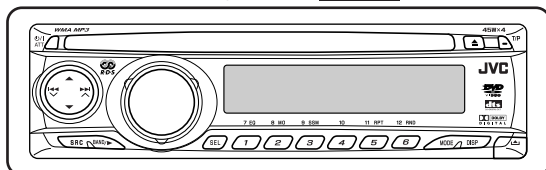
NEDERLANDS

DVD/CD RECEIVER
DVD-/CD-RECEIVER
RECEPTEUR DVD/CD
DVD/CD-RECEIVER

KD-DV4202/KD-DV4201



MP3 COMPACT WMA DISC DIGITAL VIDEO DOLBY DIGITAL dts 20+DIGITAL OUT DVD VIDEO R-DS



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 5.

Zum Abbrechen der Displaydemonstration siehe Seite 5.

Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 5.

Zie bladzijde 5 voor het annuleren van de displaydemonstratie.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

Für den Einbau und die Anschlüsse siehe das eigenständige Handbuch.

Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

Bijzonderheden over de installatie en aansluiting van het apparaat vindt u in de desbetreffende handleiding.

INSTRUCTIONS

BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG
MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS
GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING

GET0372-001A

[E]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.	ADVARSEL: Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åpen eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering for stråling.	WARNING: Synlig och osynlig laserstråling när den öppnas och spärren är turkopplad. Beträkta ej strålen.	VARO: Avattassa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

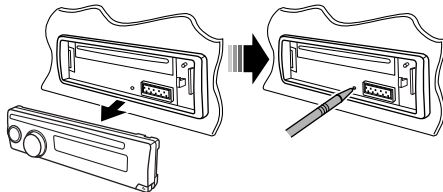
This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

How to use functions mode

If you press MODE, the unit goes into functions mode, then the number buttons and ▲/▼ buttons work as different function buttons.

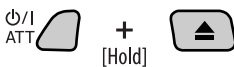
[Within 5 seconds...]

How to reset your unit



• Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

How to forcibly eject a disc



- If this does not work, reset your unit.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

How to detach/attach the control panel

Detaching...

1. Push the control panel away from the unit.
2. Lift the control panel out of the unit.

Attaching...

1. Insert the control panel into the unit.
2. Push the control panel back into the unit.

WARNINGS:

To prevent accidents and damage

- **DO NOT** install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate the unit while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
 If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

For security reasons, a numbered ID card is provided with this unit, and the same ID number is imprinted on the unit's chassis. Keep the card in a safe place, as it will help the authorities to identify your unit if stolen.

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.





Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

<i>Introduction</i>	4
■ OPERATIONS	
<i>Basic operations</i>	
• <i>Control panel</i>	6
• <i>Remote controller (RM-RK230)</i>	7
<i>Listening to the radio</i>	9
<i>Searching for FM RDS programme</i>	
— <i>PTY search</i>	10
<i>Disc operations</i>	12
■ EXTERNAL DEVICES	
<i>Listening to the CD changer</i>	18
<i>Listening to the DAB tuner</i>	19
<i>Listening to the iPod®/D. player</i>	20
<i>Listening to the other external components</i>	21
■ SETTINGS	
<i>Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ</i>	22
<i>General settings — PSM</i>	23
<i>DVD setup menu</i>	25
<i>Maintenance</i>	28
<i>More about this unit</i>	29
<i>Troubleshooting</i>	31
<i>Specifications</i>	34

Introduction

Disc type	✓ OK Playable	✗ NO Unplayable
 <p>DVD</p> <p>DVD Video, Dual Disc (DVD side only), DVD-R*/-RW, +R/+RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recorded in DVD-Video format only and in PAL color system 		<p>DVD Audio, Dual Disc (non-DVD side), DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM, DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recorded in DVD-VR format
 <p>VCD</p> <p>Video CD CD-R/-RW</p>		SVCD (Super Video CD)
 <p>MP3/WMA</p>	<p>DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW, DVD-ROM</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to UDF bridge format 	—
	<p>CD-R/-RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to ISO 9660 level 1, ISO 9660 level 2, Romeo, Joliet 	—
 <p>CD</p>	<p>Audio CD, CD Text CD-R/-RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to CD-DA format 	CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD

• It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video mode only) discs. However, the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.

* DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “2.”

Examples:

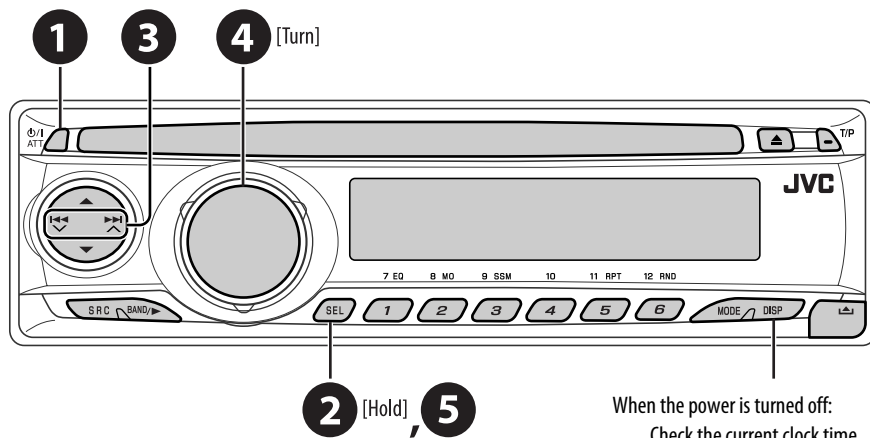


If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“REGION CODE ERROR!” appears on the monitor.

Before operating the unit — Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

• See also page 23.



When the power is turned off:
Check the current clock time
When the power is turned on:
Change the display information

- 1** Turn on the power.
- 2** Enter the PSM settings.
- 3** ⇒ **4** **Cancel the display demonstrations**
Select “DEMO,” then “DEMO OFF.”

Set the clock

Select “CLOCK H” (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select “CLOCK M” (minute), then adjust the minute.
Select “24H/12H,” then “24H” (hour) or “12H” (hour).

- 5** **Finish the procedure.**

Basic operations — Control panel

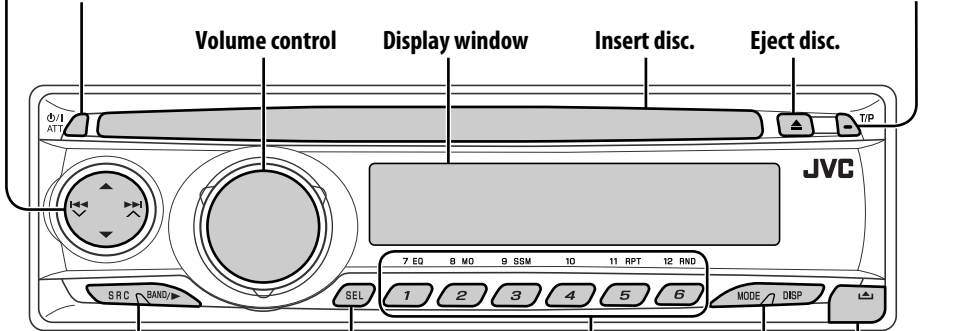
- **FM/AM/DAB:** Search for station/service.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/track.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Select track.



- **DISC:** Select folder.
Also functions as +10/-10 buttons after pressing MODE to skip 10 chapters/tracks at a time.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Enter the main menu/Pause or stop playback/Confirm selection.
- **DAB:** Select service.

- Turn on the power.
- Turn off the power [Hold].
- Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.
Hold to enter RDS programme search.



Adjust the sound mode.
Hold to enter the PSM settings.

Detach the panel.

- **FM/AM/DAB:** Select preset station/service.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/title/folder/track/disc (for CD changer).



Select the source.

FM/AM → DAB* → DISC* → CD-CH*/IPOD*/D.PLAYER* (or EXT IN) → (back to the beginning)

* You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.



- **FM/AM/DAB:** Select the bands.
- **DISC:** Start playback.



Enter functions mode.

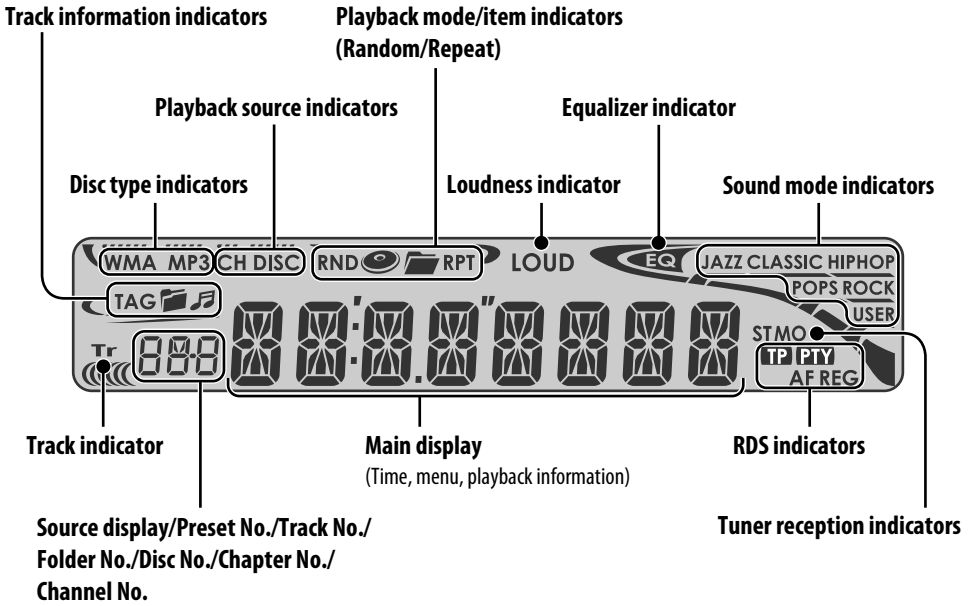
Press MODE, then one of the following buttons (within 5 seconds)...

- EQ:** Select the sound mode.
- MO:** Turn on/off monaural reception.
- SSM:** Automatic station presetting.
- RPT:** Select repeat play.
- RND:** Select random play.



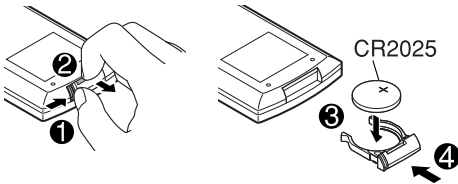
Change the display information.

Display window



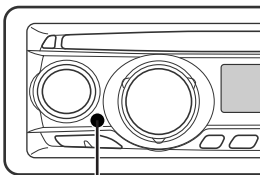
Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK230)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Remote sensor

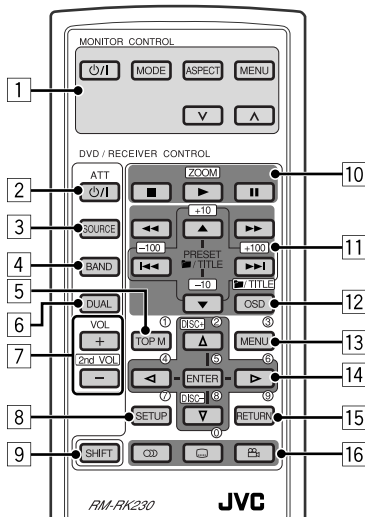
Warning:
To prevent accidents and damage

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

The unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Continued on the next page



MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons
 - Used for a JVC monitor—KV-MR9010, KV-MH6510, KV-M706, or KV-M705.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 Turns on/off the power.
 - Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- 3 Selects the source.
- 4 Selects the FM/AM/DAB bands.
- 5*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 6 Not applicable for this unit.
- 7 Adjusts the volume level.
 - 2nd VOL: Not applicable for this unit.
- 8*1 Enters DVD setup menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10
 - (stop), ► (play), || (pause)
 - ► (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button (see page 14).
 - Not applicable for CD changer/iPod/D. player operations.

11*2 For advanced disc operations:

- ■/TITLE ▲ / ▼
 - DVD: Selects the titles.
 - MP3/WMA: Selects the folders if included.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|: Reverse skip/forward skip.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse search/forward search (not applicable for CD changer operations).

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- PRESET ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset stations.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
 - Searches for the stations if pressed briefly.
 - Manual searches if pressed and held.

For DAB tuner operations:

- PRESET ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset services.
- |◀◀ / ▶▶|
 - Changes the services if pressed briefly.
 - Searches the ensembles if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - ▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
 - ▲: Enters the main menu.
 - (Now ▲/▼/|◀◀ / ▶▶| work as the menu selecting buttons.)*3
- |◀◀ / ▶▶| (in menu selecting mode)
 - Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
 - Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
- 12
 - Shows the on-screen bar.
 - Also function as the ■/TITLE button when pressed with SHIFT button (see pages 14 and 15).
- 13*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 14*1
 - Makes selection/settings.
 - DISC +/- buttons: Changes discs when the source is “CD-CH.”
- 15*1 RETURN button
- 16
 - DVD: Selects audio language (○○○), subtitles (□□□), angle (□□□).
 - VCD: Selects audio channel (○○○).

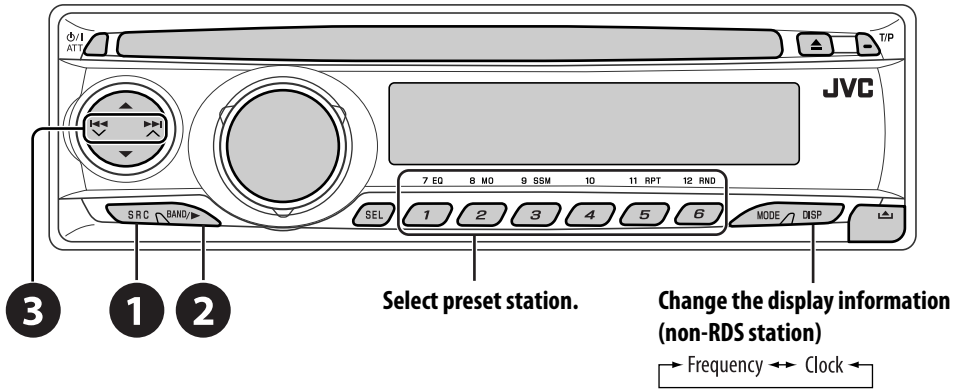
*1 Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

- FM/AM/DAB: Selects preset stations/services.
- DISC: Selects chapter/title/folder/track.

*2 Functions as +10/-10/+100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
▼: Confirms the selection.

Listening to the radio



1 Select "FM/AM."

2 Select the bands.

FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

3 Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.

- Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2

MONO → MONO OFF (Canceled)

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

- MO indicator lights up.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset six stations for each band.

1

FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

2

3 [Hold]



Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1

FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM

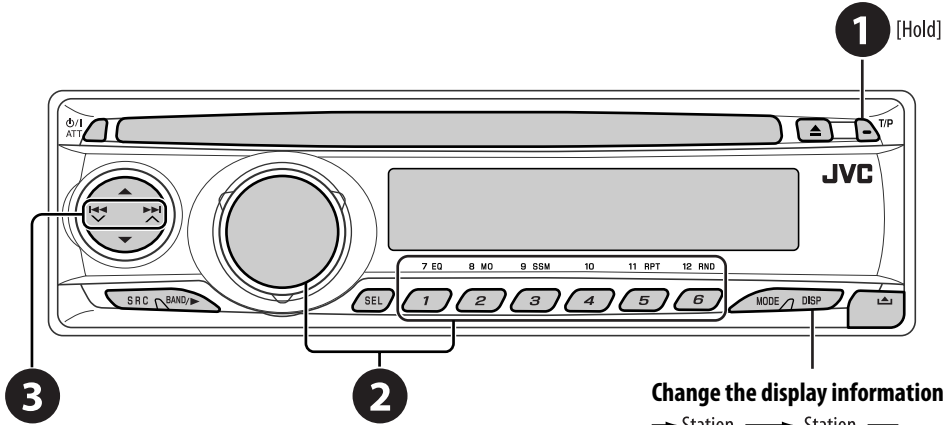
2

92.5

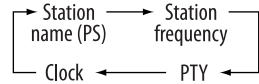
3 [Hold]

P4 92.5

Searching for FM RDS programme — PTY search



Change the display information



- 1 Activate PTY Search.**
- 2 Select one of the PTY codes (programme types).**
See the following for details.
- 3 Start searching.**
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

Preset PTY codes in the number buttons

(1 to 6):

1	2	3	4	5	6
POP M	ROCK M	EASY M	CLASSICS	AFFAIRS	VARIED

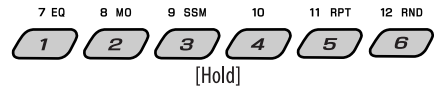
PTY codes (available with the control dial):

NEWS, AFFAIRS, INFO, SPORT, EDUCATE, DRAMA, CULTURE, SCIENCE, VARIED, POP M (music), ROCK M (music), EASY M (music), LIGHT M (music), CLASSICS, OTHER M (music), WEATHER, FINANCE, CHILDREN, SOCIAL, RELIGION, PHONE IN, TRAVEL, LEISURE, JAZZ, COUNTRY, NATION M (music), OLDIES, FOLK M (music), DOCUMENT

Storing your favorite programme types

You can store your favorite PTY codes into the number buttons.



- 1 Select a PTY code (see left column).**
- 2 Select a preset number.**



- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 for storing other PTY codes.**

- 4** T/P

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception	Indicator	PTY Standby Reception	Indicator
Press  to activate.	TP	See page 23.	PTY
The unit temporarily will switch to Traffic Announcement (TA), if available, from any source other than AM. The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (see page 23).	Lights up	The unit temporarily will switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.	Flashes	Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.	Flashes
Press  to deactivate.	Goes off	Select "OFF" for the PTY code (see page 23).	Goes off

Tracing the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception

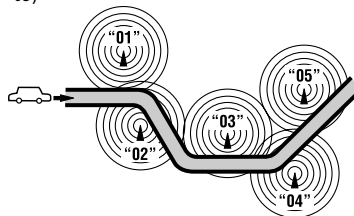
When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration on the right).

When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see "AF-REG" on page 23.

- When the DAB tuner is connected, refer to "Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception" on page 19.

Programme A broadcasting on different frequency areas (01 – 05)



Automatic station selection—Programme Search

Usually when you press the number buttons, the preset station is tuned in.

If the signals from the RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting.

- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.
- See also page 24.

Disc operations

Before performing any operations...

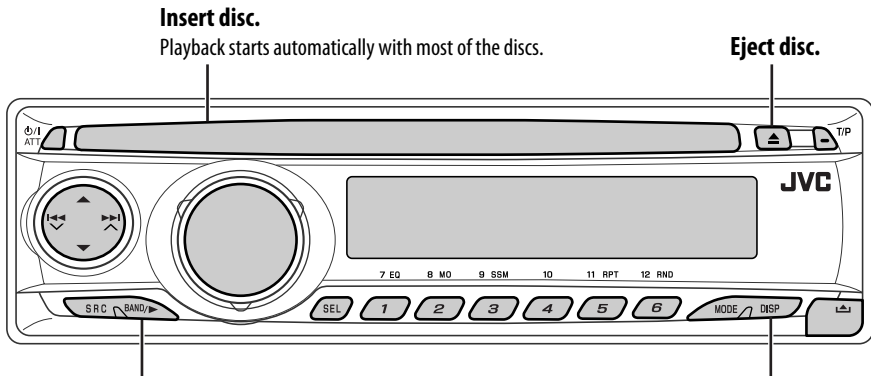
Turn on the monitor for playing a DVD or VCD. If you turn on the monitor, you can also control playback of other discs by referring to the monitor screen. (See pages 15 – 17.)

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc does not have any disc menu (when playback stops), all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If “⊘” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing “⊘,” operations will not be accepted.



Insert disc.

Playback starts automatically with most of the discs.

Eject disc.

Start playback if necessary.

Prohibiting disc ejection

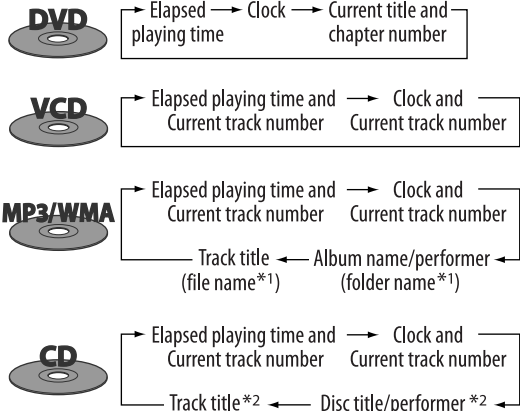


To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

*1 If the file does not have Tag information or “TAG DISP” is set to “TAG OFF” (see page 24), folder name and file name appear. TAG indicator will not light up.









*2 “NO NAME” appears for an audio CD.

Change the display information











Operations using the control panel

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

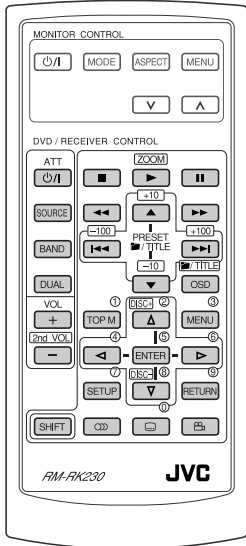
Disc type			  (Number buttons)
 DVD	Press: Select chapter Hold: Reverse /fast-forward chapter*	—	During stop: Locate title During play/pause: Locate chapter
 VCD	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse /fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Select track	Select folder	Locate particular folder directly
 CD	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse /fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly

* Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Leftrightarrow \times 10$ on the monitor.

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

Disc type			
 DVD	Skip 10 chapters (during play or pause)	CHP RPT: Repeat current chapter TIT RPT: Repeat current title	—
 VCD	Skip 10 tracks (PBC not in use)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track (PBC not in use)	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Skip 10 tracks (within the same folder)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: Repeat current folder	FLDR RND: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks
 CD	Skip 10 tracks	TRK RPT: Repeat current track	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks

• To cancel repeat play or random play, select “RPT OFF” or “RND OFF.”



- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play (10-second review if pressed during play.)
- : Reverse/forward chapter search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
- : Press: Select chapter (during play or pause)
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter search
- : Select title
- : Select audio language
- : Select subtitle language
- : Select view angle

Using menu driven features...

- 1 /
- 2 Select an item you want to start play.
- 3

While holding ...*3

- : Select chapter (during play or pause)
Select title (when stop)
- , then :
Select title directly

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.
 - 2 Move the enlarged portion.
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."

- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
 - Reverse slow motion does not work.
- : Press: Select track
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search
- : Select audio channel (ST: stereo, L: left, R: Right)

While holding ...*3

- : Select track (For VCD with PBC, a list of items is shown on the disc menu.)
 - To return to the previous menus, press .

Canceling the PBC playback...

- 1
- 2 While holding , press *3 to start the desired track.
• To resume PBC, press .

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.
 - 2 Move the enlarged portion.
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."

MP3/WMA

- : Stop play
- : Pause
- : Start play (Playback starts from the beginning of the track.)
- : Select tracks
- : Select folder

While holding ...*3

- : Select track (within the same folder)
- : Select folder directly*4

CD

- : Stop play
- : Pause
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search
- : Press: Select tracks
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search

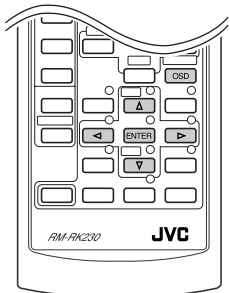
While holding ...*3

- : Select track directly

- *1 Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Rightarrow \times 5 \Rightarrow \times 10 \Rightarrow \times 20 \Rightarrow \times 60$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.
- *2 Slow motion speed changes to $\text{▶}1/32 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/16 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/8 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/4 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/2$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.
- *3 For selecting numbers greater than 9 or 99, press or , then follow by .
- *4 To use direct folder access on MP3/WMA discs, it is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Show the on-screen bar (see page 16).

(once) for MP3/WMA/CD
(twice) for DVD/VCD

2 Select an item.

3 Make a selection.

If pop-up menu appears...

- For entering time/numbers, see the following.

4 Remove the on-screen bar.

Entering time/numbers

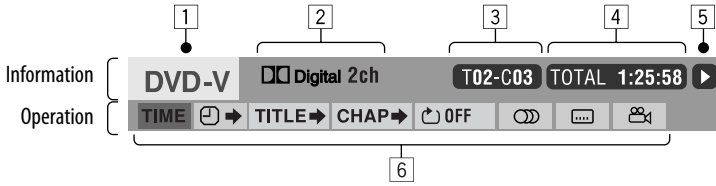
- To select numbers 0 – 9:
While holding , press .
- To select numbers greater than 9:
While holding , press . Then, press .
- After entering the numbers, press .
- To reduce numbers, use .
- To correct a misentry, use .

Ex.: Time search

- DVD: : : :
To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
- VCD (PBC not in use): : :
To enter 64 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 6, 4, 0, then 0.

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar



- 1 Disc type
- 2 DVD/DTS audio CD: Audio signal format type
VCD: PBC
- 3 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
TRACK 01 Current track
- 4 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD, elapsed playing time of the current title.)
T. REM DVD: Remaining title time
VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track
- 5 Playback status
▶ Play
▶/◀ Forward/reverse search
▶/◀ Forward/reverse slow-motion
⏸ Pause
⏹ Stop
- 6 Operation icons
TIME Change the time indication (see 4)
⌂ → Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE → Title Search (by its number)
CHAP → Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK → Track Search (by its number)
⏮ Change the audio language or audio channel
⋮ Change the subtitle language
📺 Change the view angle
⏮ OFF DVD: Repeat play
REPEAT VCD/MP3/WMA/CD: Repeat play
INTRO Intro play
RANDOM Random play



Repeat play*1 : ⏮ OFF → ⏮ CHAP → ⏮ TITLE



(PBC not in use)

Repeat play*1 : ▶ REPEAT → (Canceled)

Random play*1 : ▶ RANDOM → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 : ▶ INTRO → (Canceled)



Repeat play*1 :

▶ REPEAT TRACK → REPEAT FOLDER
(Canceled) ←

Random play*1 :

▶ RANDOM FOLDER → RANDOM DISC
(Canceled) ←

Intro play*2 :

▶ INTRO TRACK → INTRO FOLDER
(Canceled) ←



Repeat play*1 : ▶ REPEAT TRACK → (Canceled)

Random play*1 : ▶ RANDOM DISC → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 : ▶ INTRO TRACK → (Canceled)

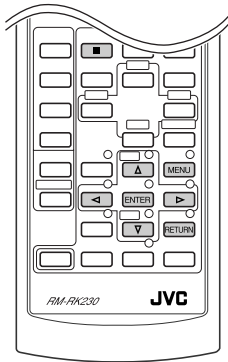
*1 For repeat play/random play, see also page 13.

*2 Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...

INTRO TRACK (INTRO): All tracks of the current disc.

INTRO FOLDER: First tracks of all folders of the current disc.

Operations using the control/list screen (MP3/WMA/CD)



These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

- Folder selection/information is only for MP3/WMA discs.

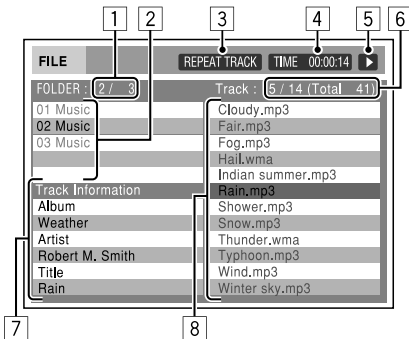
Control screen

The control screen automatically appears when you insert a disc.

- Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- Select a folder or track to start playing.



Ex.: MP3/WMA disc

- Current folder number/total folder number
- Folder list with the current folder selected
- Selected playback mode
- Elapsed playing time of the current track
- Operation mode icon (▶, ■, ||, ▶▶, ◀◀)
- Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
- Track information
- Track list with the current track selected

Folder/track list screen

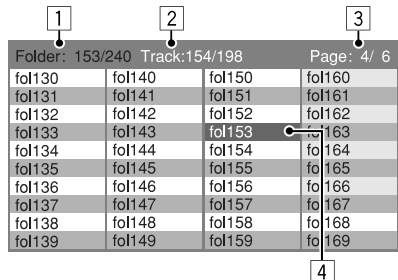
Before playing, you can display the folder list/track list to confirm the contents and start playing a track.

- Display the folder/track list while stop.



- Select an item from the list.

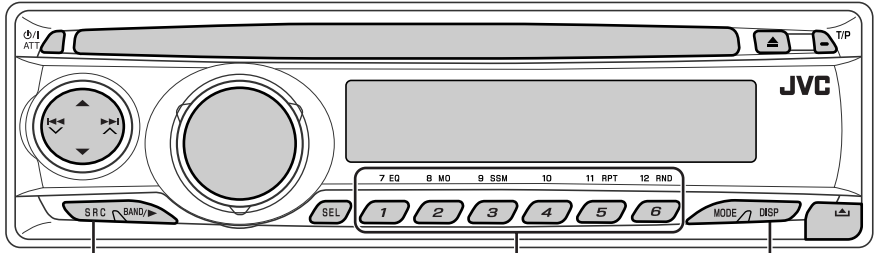
- MP3/WMA: Track list of the selected folder appears.
- To go back to the previous screen, press RETURN.



Ex.: Folder list

- Current folder number/total folder number
- Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder or in disc (CD)
- Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

Listening to the CD changer



1

2

Change the display information
(see page 12)

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can only play conventional CD (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

1 Select "CD-CH."

2 Select a disc to start playing.

Press: For selecting disc number 1 – 6.

Hold: For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

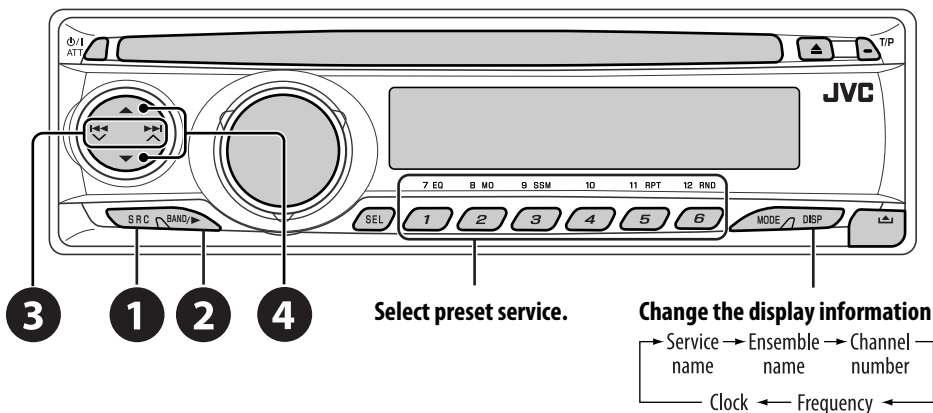
	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track
	MP3: Select folders

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks (MP3: within the same folder)
11 RPT 	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder DISC RPT: Repeat all tracks of the current disc
12 RND 	FLDR RND: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks of current disc MAG RND: Randomly play all tracks of the inserted discs

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

Listening to the DAB tuner



1 Select "DAB."

2 Select the bands.



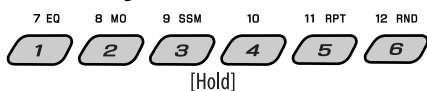
3 Searching for an ensemble.

- Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.

4 Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.

Storing DAB services in memory

While listening to a DAB service...



Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 11 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

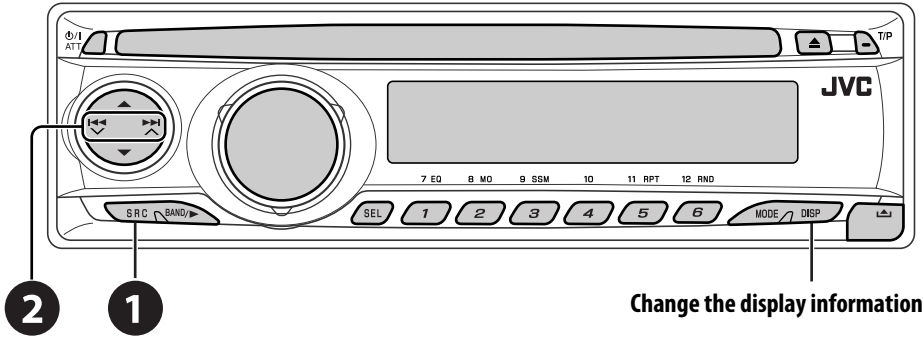
Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 24.

Listening to the iPod®/D. player



Change the display information

Before operating, connect the interface adapter (KS-PD100 or KS-PD500) to the CD changer jack of this unit.

Preparations:

Make sure "CHANGER" is selected for the external input setting, see page 24.

- 1 Select "IPOD" or "D. PLAYER."
- 2 Select a song to start playing.

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.



• This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Select the desired menu.



For iPod:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS
 ↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSER ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTIST ↔ ALBUM ↔
 GENRE ↔ TRACK ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Confirm the selection.



• To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- Holding ▼ ◀◀/▶▶ ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

	<p>Pause/stop playback</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • To resume playback, press it again.
	<p>Press: Select tracks</p> <p>Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track</p>

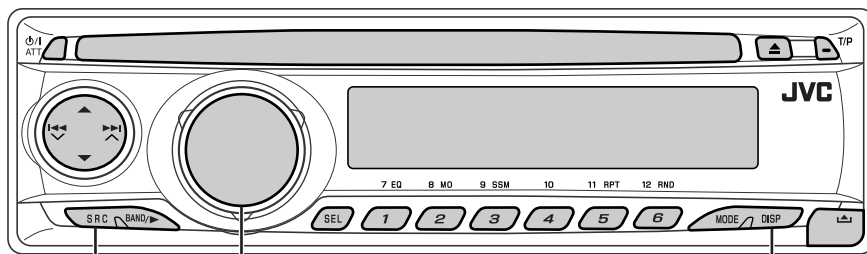
After pressing , press the following buttons to...

<p>11 RPT</p>	<p>ONE RPT:</p> <p>Functions the same as "Repeat One" or "Repeat Mode → One."</p> <p>ALL RPT:</p> <p>Functions the same as "Repeat All" or "Repeat Mode → All."</p>
<p>12 RND</p>	<p>ALBM RND*:</p> <p>Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.</p> <p>SONG RND/RND ON:</p> <p>Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" or "Random Play → On."</p>

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

* iPod: Only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."

Listening to the other external components



1

3

Change the display information

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

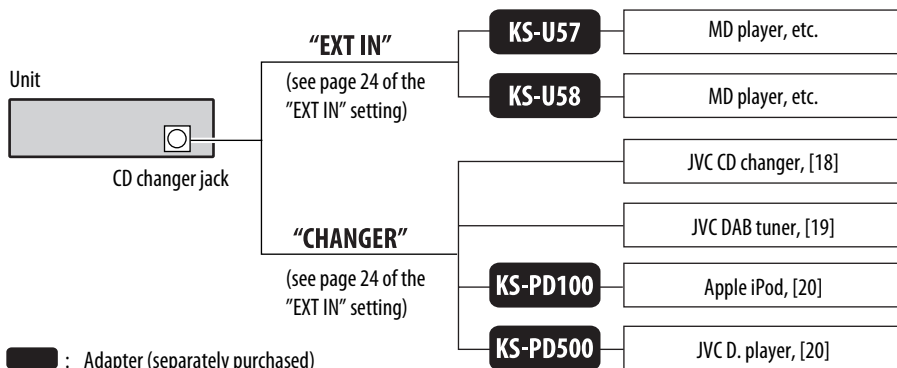
Preparations:

Make sure “EXT IN” is selected for the external input setting, see page 24.

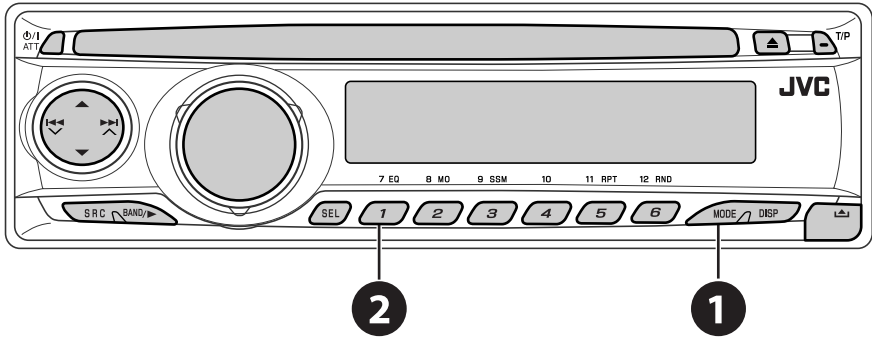
- 1 Select “EXT IN.”
- 2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.
- 3 Adjust the volume.
- 4 Adjust the sound as you want (see page 22).

Concept diagram of the external device connection

• For connection, see Installation/Connection manual (separate volume).



Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ

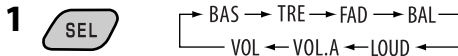


- 1 Enter functions mode.
- 2 Select a preset sound mode.

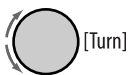


Indication (For)	BAS (bass)	TRE (treble)	LOUD (loudness)
USER (Flat sound)	00	00	OFF
ROCK (Rock or disco music)	+03	+01	ON
CLASSIC (Classical music)	+01	-02	OFF
POPS (Light music)	+04	+01	OFF
HIP HOP (Funk or rap music)	+02	00	ON
JAZZ (Jazz music)	+02	+03	OFF

Adjusting the sound



- 2 Adjust the level.



BAS *1 (bass) Adjust the bass.	-06 to +06
TRE *1 (treble) Adjust the treble.	-06 to +06
FAD *2 (fader) Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 to F06
BAL (balance) Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 to R06
LOUD *1 (loudness) Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.	LOUD ON or LOUD OFF
VOL.A *3 (volume adjust) Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level.	-05 to +05
VOL (volume) Adjust the volume.	00 to 30 (or 50)*4

*1 When you adjust the bass, treble, or loudness, the adjustment you have made is stored for the currently selected sound mode (C-EQ) including "USER."

*2 If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."

*3 You cannot make an adjustment for FM. "FIX" appears.

*4 Depending on the amplifier gain control setting. (See page 24 for details.)

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM settings.



2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.



4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
DEMO Display demonstration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DEMO ON [Initial] • DEMO OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [5]. : Cancels.
CLOCK H Hour adjustment	0 – 23 (1 – 12) [Initial: 0 (0:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLOCK M Minute adjustment	00 – 59 [Initial: 00 (0:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
24H/12H Time display mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 12H • 24H [Initial] 	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLK ADJ Clock adjustment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO [Initial] • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the RDS signal. : Cancels.
AF-REG*1 Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AF [Initial] • AF REG • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station or service (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [11, 19]. : When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. : Cancels (not selectable when "DAB AF" is set to "AF ON").
PTY-STBY PTY standby	OFF [Initial], PTY codes (see page 10)	: Activates PTY Standby Reception with one of the PTY codes, [11, 19].
TA VOL Traffic announcement volume	VOL 15 [Initial]	: VOL 00 – VOL 30 or 50*2, [11].

Continued on the next page

Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
P-SEARCH * ¹ Programme search	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : Activates Programme Search, [11]. • OFF [Initial] : Cancels. 	
DAB AF * ³ Alternative frequency reception	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AF ON [Initial] : Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations, [19]. • AF OFF : Cancels. 	
DIMMER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON : Dims the display illumination. • OFF [Initial] : Cancels. 	
TEL Telephone muting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MUTING 1 / MUTING 2 : Select either one which mutes the playback sounds while using a cellular phone. • OFF [Initial] : Cancels. 	
SCROLL * ⁴	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ONCE [Initial] : Scrolls the track information once. • AUTO : Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). • OFF : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.) 	
EXT IN * ⁵ External input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHANGER [Initial] : To use a JVC CD changer, [18], JVC DAB tuner, [19], or an Apple iPod/a JVC D. player, [20]. • EXT IN : To use any other external component than the above, [21]. 	
TAG DISP Tag display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TAG ON [Initial] : Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA tracks. • TAG OFF : Cancels. 	
AMP GAIN Amplifier gain control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LOW PWR : VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 45 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.) • HIGH PWR [Initial] : VOL 00 – VOL 50 	
IF BAND Intermediate frequency filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO [Initial] : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) • WIDE : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain. 	

*¹ Only for RDS FM preset stations.

*² Depending on the “AMP GAIN” setting.

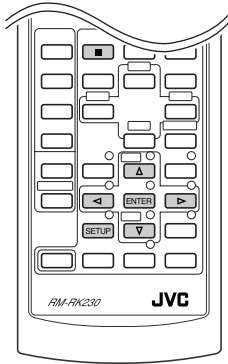
*³ Displayed only when DAB tuner is connected.

*⁴ Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.

*⁵ Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, or DISC.

DVD setup menu

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Enter the DVD setup menu while stop.



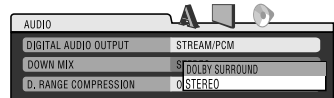
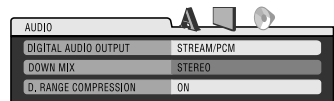
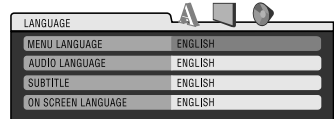
2 Select a menu.



3 Select an item you want to set up.



4 Select an option.



To return to normal screen



Menu	Item	Setting
LANGUAGE	MENU LANGUAGE	Select the initial disc menu language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 27.
	AUDIO LANGUAGE	Select the initial audio language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 27.
	SUBTITLE	Select the initial subtitle language or remove the subtitle (OFF). Refer also to "Language codes" on page 27.
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select the language for the on screen display.
PICTURE	MONITOR TYPE	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>16:9</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>4:3 LETTER BOX</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>4:3 PAN SCAN</p> </div> </div>
	OSD POSITION	Select the on-screen bar position on the monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Higher position • 2: Lower position (Guidance below the DVD setup menu will disappear.)

Continued on the next page

Menu	Item	Setting
AUDIO	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	<p>Select the signal format to be emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (Optical) terminal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PCM ONLY: Select for an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio, or connecting to a recording device. • DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. • STREAM/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio.
	DOWN MIX	<p>When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks (and through the DIGITAL OUT terminal when "PCM ONLY" is selected for "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT").</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DOLBY SURROUND: Select to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. • STEREO: Normally select this.
	D. RANGE COMPRESSION	<p>You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software). • ON: Select to always use this function.

Output signals through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Output signals are different depending on the "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" setting on the setup menu (see above).

DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Output Signals			
	STREAM/PCM	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	PCM ONLY	
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM			
	with DTS	DTS bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
	with Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with MPEG Audio	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM/48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM			
Audio CD with DTS	DTS bitstream	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM			

Language codes

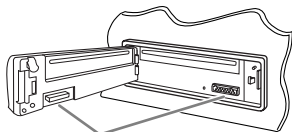
Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	GL	Galician	MK	Macedonian	SO	Somali
AB	Abkhazian	GN	Guarani	ML	Malayalam	SQ	Albanian
AF	Afrikaans	GU	Gujarati	MN	Mongolian	SR	Serbian
AM	Ameharic	HA	Hausa	MO	Moldavian	SS	Siswati
AR	Arabic	HI	Hindi	MR	Marathi	ST	Sesotho
AS	Assamese	HR	Croatian	MS	Malay (MAY)	SU	Sundanese
AY	Aymara	HU	Hungarian	MT	Maltese	SW	Swahili
AZ	Azerbaijani	HY	Armenian	MY	Burmese	TA	Tamil
BA	Bashkir	IA	Interlingua	NA	Nauru	TE	Telugu
BE	Byelorussian	IE	Interlingue	NE	Nepali	TG	Tajik
BG	Bulgarian	IK	Inupiak	NO	Norwegian	TH	Thai
BH	Bihari	IN	Indonesian	OC	Occitan	TI	Tigrinya
BI	Bislama	IS	Icelandic	OM	(Afan) Oromo	TK	Turkmen
BN	Bengali, Bangla	IW	Hebrew	OR	Oriya	TL	Tagalog
BO	Tibetan	JI	Yiddish	PA	Panjabi	TN	Setswana
BR	Breton	JW	Javanese	PL	Polish	TO	Tonga
CA	Catalan	KA	Georgian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TR	Turkish
CO	Corsican	KK	Kazakh	PT	Portuguese	TS	Tsonga
CS	Czech	KL	Greenlandic	QU	Quechua	TT	Tatar
CY	Welsh	KM	Cambodian	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TW	Twì
DZ	Bhutani	KN	Kannada	RN	Kirundi	UK	Ukrainian
EL	Greek	KO	Korean (KOR)	RO	Rumanian	UR	Urdu
EO	Esperanto	KS	Kashmiri	RW	Kinyarwanda	UZ	Uzbek
ET	Estonian	KU	Kurdish	SA	Sanskrit	VI	Vietnamese
EU	Basque	KY	Kirghiz	SD	Sindhi	VO	Volapuk
FA	Persian	LA	Latin	SG	Sangho	WO	Wolof
FI	Finnish	LN	Lingala	SH	Serbo-Croatian	XH	Xhosa
FJ	Fiji	LO	Laothian	SI	Singhalese	YO	Yoruba
FO	Faroese	LT	Lithuanian	SK	Slovak	ZU	Zulu
FY	Frisian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SL	Slovenian		
GA	Irish	MG	Malagasy	SM	Samoan		
GD	Scots Gaelic	MI	Maori	SN	Shona		

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

Center holder



To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

FM/AM/RDS

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing stations, the previously preset stations are erased and stations are stored newly.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA VOL) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- TA Standby Reception and PTY Standby Reception will be temporarily canceled while listening to an AM station.
- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See page 24.)

- If you want to know more about RDS, visit <http://www.rds.org.uk>.

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3/WMA files and their file names.
- This unit can also playback 8 cm discs.
- This unit can only playback audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- This unit can recognize a total of 3 500 files (250 folder per disc; 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for the files.
- This unit may be unable to play back some discs or files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.

Continued on the next page

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 64 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play starts from where it has been stopped previously.
For MP3/WMA disc, playback starts from the beginning of the last playing track.

DAB

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.
- A previously preset DAB service is erased when a new DAB service is stored in the same preset number.

iPod® or D. player

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.

- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 8 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 24). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

General settings—PSM

- If you change the “AMP GAIN” setting from “HIGH PWR” to “LOW PWR” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30.”




DVD setup menu







- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PAN SCAN” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LETTER BOX” for some DVDs.

On-screen guide icons

During playback, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

DVD: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing:

-  : Multi-subtitle languages
-  : Multi-audio languages
-  : Multi-angle views

-  : Playback
-  : Pause
-  : DVD/VCD: Forward slow motion
-  : DVD: Reverse slow motion
-  : Forward search
-  : Reverse search

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):** 2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 26.)
- **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):** Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 26.)
To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” correctly. (See page 26.)

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
FM/AM/RDS	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unlock the disc (see page 12). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc cannot be recognized.	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• No playback picture (DVD/VCD) appears on the monitor.	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. (See Installation/Connection Manual.)
	• No picture appears on the monitor at all.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
• The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the monitor.	Select "4:3 LETTER BOX" (see page 25).	
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the disc. • Record tracks using a compliant application in the appropriate discs (see page 4). • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3/WMA tracks.)
	• Longer readout time is required.	Readout time varies due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration. Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks cannot playback as you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "NO FILES" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains tracks of appropriate formats.
• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.	

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
CD changer	• “NO DISC” appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• “NO MAG” appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• “RESET 8” appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• “RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
DAB	• “NO DAB” appears on the display.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• “RESET 08” appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 2).
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly. Then, reset the unit (see page 2).
	• “ANT NG” appears on the display.	Check the cords and connections.
iPod/D. player playback	• The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Change the battery. • Update the firmware version.
	• Buttons do not work as intended.	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press MODE before performing the operation.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	• “NO IPOD” or “NO DP” appears on the display.	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 20).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	• No sound can be heard. • “ERROR 01” appears on the display when connecting a D. player.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• “NO FILES” or “NO TRACK” appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	• “RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• “RESET 8” appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
• The iPod or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod or D. player.	

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	45 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	17 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass/Treble:	± 10 dB at 100 Hz/ ± 10 dB at 10 kHz
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical):	Signal wave length: 660 nm Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm
		Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.0 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 k Ω
	Color System:		PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω
Other Terminals:		CD changer, Steering wheel remote input	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	(MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	MW Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μ V/35 dB
	LW Tuner	Sensitivity:	50 μ V

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)		
	Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)		
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz	
		DVD, fs=96 kHz:	16 Hz to 44 000 Hz	
		VCD/CD/MP3/WMA:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz	
	Dynamic Range:	96 dB		
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB		
	Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit		
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps	
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz	
WMA:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 192 kbps		
	Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz		
		MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz		

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)	
	Grounding System:	Negative ground		
	Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C		
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm	
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm	
	Mass (approx.):	1.6 kg (excluding accessories)		

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS 2.0 + Digital Out” are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

Haben Sie PROBLEME mit dem Betrieb?

Bitte setzen Sie Ihr Gerät zurück

Siehe Seite Zurücksetzen des Geräts

**Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de
fonctionnement?**

Réinitialisez votre appareil

Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

Hebt u PROBLEMEN met de bediening?

Stel het apparaat terug

Zie de pagina met de paragraaf Het apparaat terugstellen

JVC



EN, GE, FR, NL

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1205DTSMDTJEIN

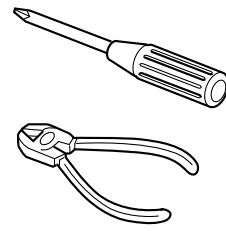
JVC KD-DV4202/KD-DV4201

Installation/Connection Manual Einbau/Anschlußanleitung Manuel d'installation/raccordement Handleiding voor installatie/aansluiting

GET0372-005A
[E]

1205DTSMDTJEIN
EN, GE, FR, NL

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited



ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

DEUTSCH

Dieses Gerät ist für einen Betrieb in **elektrischen Anlagen mit 12 V Gleichstrom und (-) Erdung ausgelegt**. Verfügt Ihr Fahrzeug nicht über diese Anlage, ist ein Spannungsinverter erforderlich, der bei JVC Autoradiohändler erworben werden kann.

FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.

NEDERLANDS

Dit apparaat mag worden gebruikt bij elektrische systemen die werken op **12 V gelijkstroom met negatieve aarding**. Als uw auto niet is uitgerust met een dergelijk systeem, is een spanningsomzetter vereist. Dit instrument kan worden aangeschaft bij JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent accidents and damage:

- **DO NOT** install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
 - **DO NOT** operate the unit while driving.
 - If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.
 - The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
- If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
- This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

WARNHINWEISE

Um Unfälle und Schäden zu vermeiden:

- Installieren Sie Geräte **NICHT** an Orten;
 - es kann die Handhabung von Lenkrad und Schalthebel behindern.
 - es kann die Funktion von Sicherheitseinrichtungen wie etwa Airbags behindern.
 - an denen sie die Sicht behindern.
 - **NICHT** das Gerät beim Fahren bedienen.
 - Wenn Sie das Gerät beim Fahren bedienen müssen, dürfen Sie nicht den Blick von der Straße nehmen.
 - Der Fahrer darf während der Fahrt auf keinen Fall auf den Monitor sehen.
- Wenn die Feststellbremse nicht verriegelt ist, erscheint „FAHRER DARF MONITOR NICHT BEIM FAHREN BETRACHTEN.“ auf dem Monitor und es wird kein Wiedergabebild angezeigt.
- Diese Warnung wird nur angezeigt, wenn das Feststellbremskabel an das in das Fahrzeug eingebaute Feststellbremssystem angeschlossen ist.

AVERTISSEMENTS

Pour éviter tout accident et tout dommage:

- **N'INSTALLEZ** aucun élément dans les endroits suivants;
 - Il peut gêner l'utilisation du volant ou du levier de vitesse.
 - Il peut gêner le fonctionnement de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les coussins de sécurité.
 - où il peut gêner la visibilité.
 - **NE** manipulez pas l'appareil quand vous conduisez.
 - Si vous devez commander l'appareil pendant que vous conduisez, assurez-vous de bien regarder devant vous.
 - Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit.
- Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas mis, "LE CONDUCTEUR NE DOIT PAS REGARDER LE MONITEUR EN CONDUISANT." apparaît sur le moniteur et l'image de lecture n'apparaît pas.
- Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.

WAARSCHUWING

Voorkomen van ongelukken en beschadiging:

- Installeer **GEEN** enkele eenheid op een plaats waar;
 - het kan de werking van het stuur en de versnellingshendel hinderen.
 - het kan de werking van veiligheidsvoorzieningen, bijvoorbeeld airbags, hinderen.
 - dit het uitzicht belemmert.
 - Bedien het toestel **NIET** tijdens het besturen van de auto.
 - Indien u het toestel tijdens het rijden moet bedienen, moet u uitermate voorzichtig zijn.
 - De bestuurder moet tijdens het autorijden niet naar het beeldscherm kijken.
- "DE BESTUURDER MOET NIET NAAR DE MONITOR KIJKEN TIJDENS HET RIJDEN." verschijnt op de monitor en er wordt geen weergavebeeld getoond wanneer de handrem niet is aangetrokken.
- Deze waarschuwing verschijnt uitsluitend indien het handremdraad met het in de auto ingebouwde handremstelsysteem is verbonden.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Zur Vermeidung von Kurzschlüssen empfehlen wir, daß Sie den negativen Batterieanschluß abtrennen und alle elektrischen Anschlüsse herstellen, bevor das Gerät eingebaut wird.

- **Sicherstellen, daß das Gerät nach dem Einbau a Chassis des Fahrzeugs geerdet wird.**

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Om kortsluiting te voorkomen adviseren wij u om de minpool van de accu los te maken en alle elektrische verbindingen tot stand te brengen voordat u het apparaat in de auto installeert.

- **Aard dit toestel beslist weer op het chassis van de auto na het installeren.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 45 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 45 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.

Hinweise:

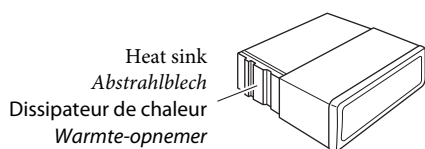
- Die Sicherung mit einer der entsprechenden Nennleistung ersetzen. Brennt die Sicherung häufig durch, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.
- Es wird empfohlen, Lautsprecher mit einer Maximalleistung von mehr als 45 W anzuschließen (sowohl hinten als auch vorne, mit einer Impedanz von **4 Ω bis 8 Ω**). Wenn die Maximalleistung weniger als 45 W beträgt, stellen Sie „AMP GAIN“ anders ein, um Schäden an den Lautsprechern zu vermeiden (siehe Seite 24 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG).
- Zur Vermeidung eines Kurzschlusses die Anschlußklemmen der **NICHT VERWENDETEN** Leitungen mit Isolierklebeband umwickeln.
- Das Abstrahlblech wird nach dem Gebrauch sehr heiß. Beim Ausbau des Geräts darauf achten, das Abstrahlblech nicht zu berühren.

Remarques:

- Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.
- Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 45 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre **4 Ω et 8 Ω**). Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 45 W, changez "AMP GAIN" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 24 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
- Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont **PAS UTILISÉS** avec de la bande isolante.
- Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.

Opmerkingen:

- Vervang de zekering door een exemplaar met het aangegeven vermogen. Als de zekering vaak doorslaat, moet u uw JVC car audio dealer raadplegen.
- Sluit bij voorkeur luidsprekers met een hoger maximaal vermogen dan 45 W (zowel achter als voor, met een impedantie van **4 Ω t/m 8 Ω**) aan. Indien het maximale vermogen lager dan 45 W is, moet u "AMP GAIN" in de andere stand stellen zodat de luidsprekers niet kunnen worden beschadigd (zie bladzijde 24 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING).
- Om kortsluiting te voorkomen, moet u de aansluitklemmen van **ONGEBRUIKTE** gekleurde draden met isolatieband bedekken.
- De warmte-opnemer kan na gebruik erg heet worden. Raak de warmte-opnemer niet aan wanneer u dit apparaat van zijn plaats haalt.



PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT** connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

VORSICHTSMASSREGELN beim Anschließen der Stromversorgung und Lautsprecher:

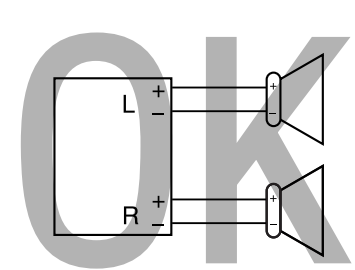
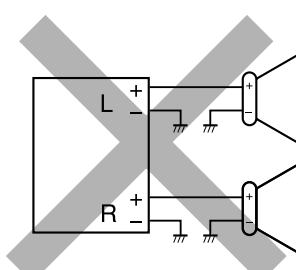
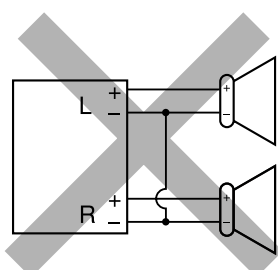
- Die Lautsprecherleitungen des Netzkabels **NICHT** an der Autobatterie anschließen, da sonst das Gerät schwer beschädigt wird.
- VOR dem Anschließen der Lautsprecherleitungen des Spannungsversorgungskabels an die Lautsprecher, die Lautsprecherverdrahtung in Ihrem Auto überprüfen.

PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS** les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.
- **AVANT** de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.

VOORZORGSMAATREGELEN bij het verbinden van de stroomkabel met de speakers:

- Verbind de speakerdraden van de stroomkabel **NIET** met de accu van de auto; als u dit wel doet, zal het apparaat ernstige schade oplopen.
- **VOORDAT** u de speakerdraden van de stroomkabel met de speakers verbindt, moet u de bedrading van de speakers in uw auto controleren.



Parts list for installation and connection

If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

Teileliste für den Einbau und Anschluß

Falls ein Artikel fehlt, wenden Sie sich sofort an Ihren JVC-Autoradiohändler.

Liste des pièces pour l'installation et raccordement

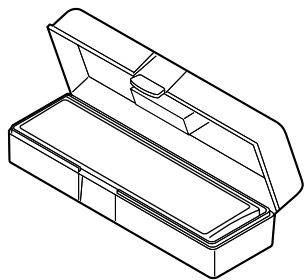
Si quelque chose manquait, consultez votre revendeur autoradio JVC immédiatement.

Lijst van onderdelen die u bij installatie en aansluiting nodig hebt

Raadpleeg direct uw JVC auto-audiohandelaar indien er iets ontbreekt.

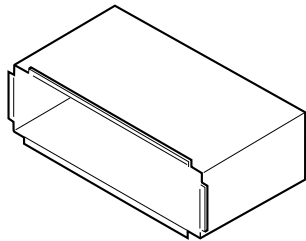
(A) / (B)

Hard case/Control panel
Etui/Schalttafel
Etui de transport/Panneau de commande
Behuizing/Bedieningspaneel



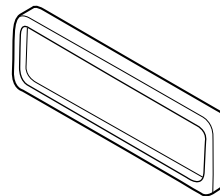
(C)

Sleeve
Halterung
Manchon
Huis



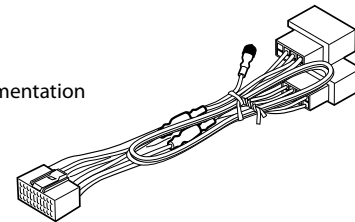
(D)

Trim plate
Frontrahmen
Plaque d'assemblage
Sierplaat



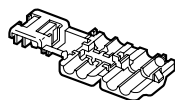
(E)

Power cord
Stromkabel
Cordon d'alimentation
Stroomkabel



(F)

Crimp connector
Quetschanschluß
Cosse à sertir
Krimpaansluiting



(G)

Washer (ø5)
Unterlegscheibe (ø5)
Rondelle (ø5)
Sluistring (ø5)



(H)

Lock nut (M5)
Sicherungsmutter (M5)
Ecrrou d'arrêt (M5)
Contra-moer (M5)



(I)

Mounting bolt (M5 × 20 mm)
Befestigungsschraube (M5 × 20 mm)
Boulon de montage (M5 × 20 mm)
Bevestigingsbout (M5 × 20 mm)



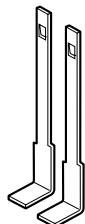
(J)

Rubber cushion
Gummipuffer
Amortisseur en caoutchouc
Rubberdop



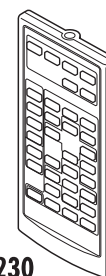
(K)

Handles
Griffe
Poignées
Hendels



(L)

Remote controller
Fernbedienung
Télécommande
Afstandsbediening



RM-RK230

(M)

Battery
Batterie
Pile
Batterij



CR2025

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

• Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):

2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

• Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" correctly. (See page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

*1 Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" and "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

Über von den Rückseitenbuchsen ausgegebenen Ton

• Über die Analogbuchsen (Lautsprecher Ausgang/LINE OUT):

2-Kanal-Signal wird ausgegeben. Beim Abspielen einer mehrkanalig codierten Disk werden Mehrkanalsignale abgemischt. (AUDIO—ABWÄRTSMISCHUNG: Siehe Seite 26 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.)

• Über DIGITAL-AUDIO-AUSGANG (optisch):

Digitalsignale (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) werden über diese Buchse ausgegeben. (Einzelheiten siehe Seite 26 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.)

Zum Reproduzieren von Mehrkanalton wie Dolby Digital und DTS schließen Sie einen Verstärker oder Decoder an diese Buchse an, der mit diesen Mehrkanalquellen kompatibel ist, und stellen „DIGITAL-AUDIO-AUSGANG“ richtig ein. (Siehe Seite 26 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.)

*1 Hergestellt unter Lizenz von Dolby Laboratories. Dolby und das Doppel-D-Symbol sind Warenzeichen von Dolby Laboratories.

*2 „DTS“ und „DTS 2.0 + Digital Out“ sind Warenzeichen von Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

À propos des sons reproduits par les prises arrière

• Par les prises analogiques (Sortie des enceintes/LINE OUT):

Un signal à 2 canaux est sorti. Lors de la lecture d'un disque codé multicanal, les signaux multicanal sont sous mixés. (AUDIO—MIXAGE DEMULTIPLICATION: voir page 26 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)

• Par la sortie DIGITAL OUT (optique):

Les signaux numériques (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) sont sortis par cette prise. (Pour plus de détails, voir page 26 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)

Pour reproduire les sons multicanal, Dolby Digital ou DTS par exemple, connectez à cette prise un amplificateur ou un décodeur compatible avec ces sources multicanal, et réglez "SORTIE AUDIO NUM." correctement. (Voir page 26 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)

*1 Fabriqué sous licence de Dolby Laboratories. Le terme Dolby et le sigle double D sont des marques commerciales de Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" et "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" sont des marques de commerce de Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

Meer over het geluid dat via de achter-aansluitingen wordt gereproduceerd

• Via de analoge aansluitingen (Speaker out/LINE OUT):

2-kanaal signalen worden uitgestuurd. Tijdens weergave van een multikanaal gecodeerde disc, worden de multikanaal-signalen teruggemengd. (AUDIO—KANAALREDUCTIE: zie bladzijde 26 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING.)

• Via de DIGITAL OUT (optische) aansluiting:

Via deze aansluiting worden digitale signalen (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) uitgestuurd. (Zie bladzijde 26 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING voor details.)

Voor het reproduceren van multikanaal-geluid, bijvoorbeeld Dolby Digital en DTS, moet u met deze aansluiting een versterker of decoder verbinden die voor deze multikanaal-bronnen geschikt is en "DIGITALE AUDIO UITVOER" juist instellen. (Zie bladzijde 26 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING.)

*1 Gefabriceerd onder licentie van Dolby Laboratories. Dolby en het symbool double-D zijn handelsmerken van Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" en "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" zijn handelsmerken van Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

TROUBLESHOOTING

• The fuse blows.

* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

• Power cannot be turned on.

* Is the yellow lead connected?

• No sound from the speakers.

* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

• Sound is distorted.

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?

* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• Noise interfere with sounds.

* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

• Unit becomes hot.

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?

* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• This unit does not work at all.

* Have you reset your unit?

FEHLERSUCHE

• Die Sicherung brennt durch.

* Sind die roten und schwarzen Leitungen richtig angeschlossen?

• Stromversorgung kann nicht eingeschaltet werden.

* Ist die gelbe Leitung angeschlossen?

• Kein Ton aus den Lautsprechern.

* Ist die Lautsprecher-Ausgangsleitung kurzgeschlossen?

• Ton verzerrt.

* Ist die Lautsprecher-Ausgangsleitung geerdet?

* Sind die (-) Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?

• Störgeräusche im Klang.

* Ist die hintere Erdungsklemme mit kürzeren und dickeren Kabeln an das Fahrzeugchassis angeschlossen?

• Gerät wird heiß.

* Ist die Lautsprecher-Ausgangsleitung geerdet?

* Sind die (-) Anschlußklemmen der linken und rechten Lautsprecher zusammen geerdet?

• Dieser Receiver funktioniert überhaupt nicht.

* Haben Sie einen Reset am Receiver vorgenommen?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

• Le fusible saute.

* Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils raccordés correctement?

• L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.

* Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?

• Pas de son des enceintes.

* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?

• Le son est déformé.

* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?

* Les bornes "-" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?

• Interférence avec les sons.

* La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?

• L'appareil devient chaud.

* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?

* Les bornes "-" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?

• Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.

* Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

PROBLEMEN OPLOSSEN

• De zekering slaat door.

* Zijn de rode en de zwarte draden op de juiste manier aangesloten?

• De stroom kan niet worden ingeschakeld.

* Is de gele draad aangesloten?

• Er komt geen geluid uit de speakers.

* Is de uitgaande speakerdraad kortgesloten?

• Het geluid wordt vervormd.

* Is de uitgaande speakerdraad geaard?

* Zijn de "-" polen van de linker- en de rechterspeakers gemeenschappelijk geaard?

• Geluid wordt door ruis gestoord.

* Is de aarde-aansluiting achter met gebruik van kortere en dikkere snoeren met het chassis van de auto verbonden?

• Het apparaat raakt verhit.

* Is de uitgaande speakerdraad geaard?

* Zijn de "-" polen van de linker- en de rechterspeakers gemeenschappelijk geaard?

• Receiver werkt helemaal niet.

* Heeft u de receiver teruggesteld?

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

EINBAU (IM ARMATURENBRETT)

Die folgende Abbildung zeigt einen typischen Einbau. Bei irgendwelchen Fragen oder wenn Sie Informationen hinsichtlich des Einbausatzes brauchen, wenden Sie sich an ihren JVC Autoradiohändler oder ein Unternehmen das diese Einbausätze vertreibt.

- Sind Sie sich über den richtigen Einbau des Geräts nicht sicher, lassen Sie es von einem qualifizierten Techniker einbauen.

INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

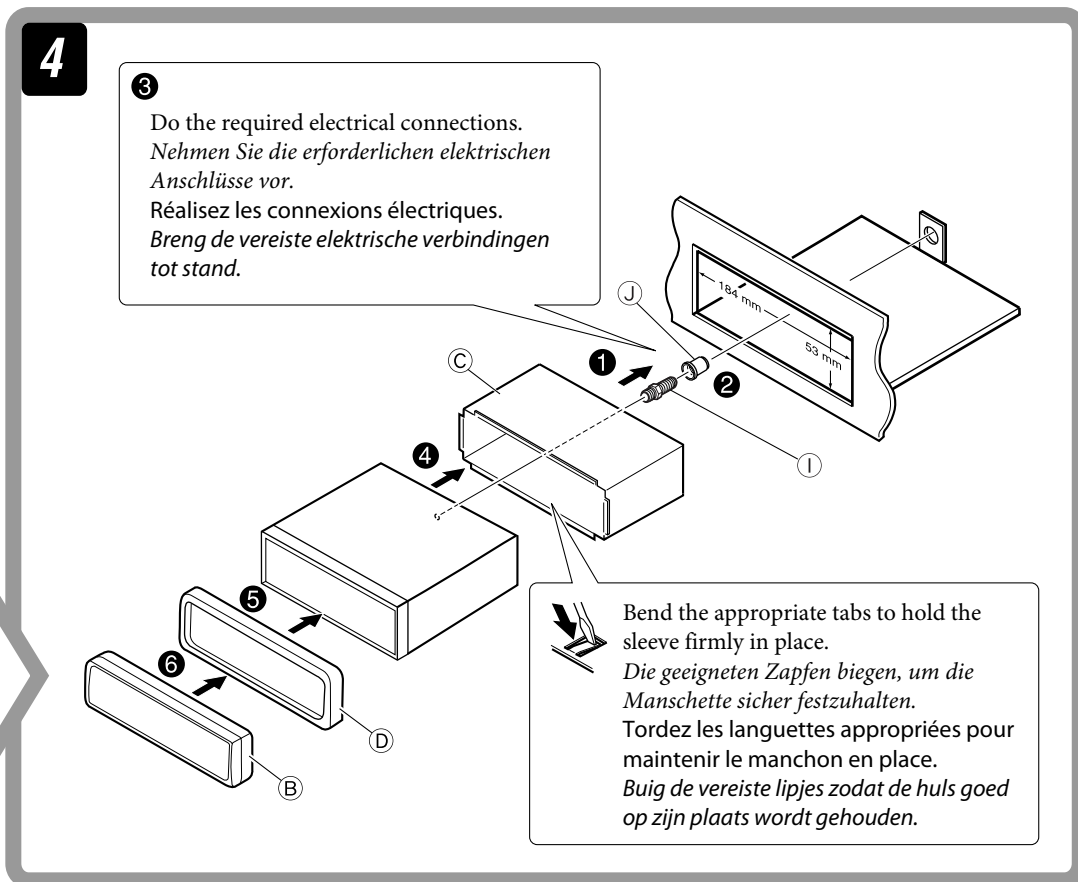
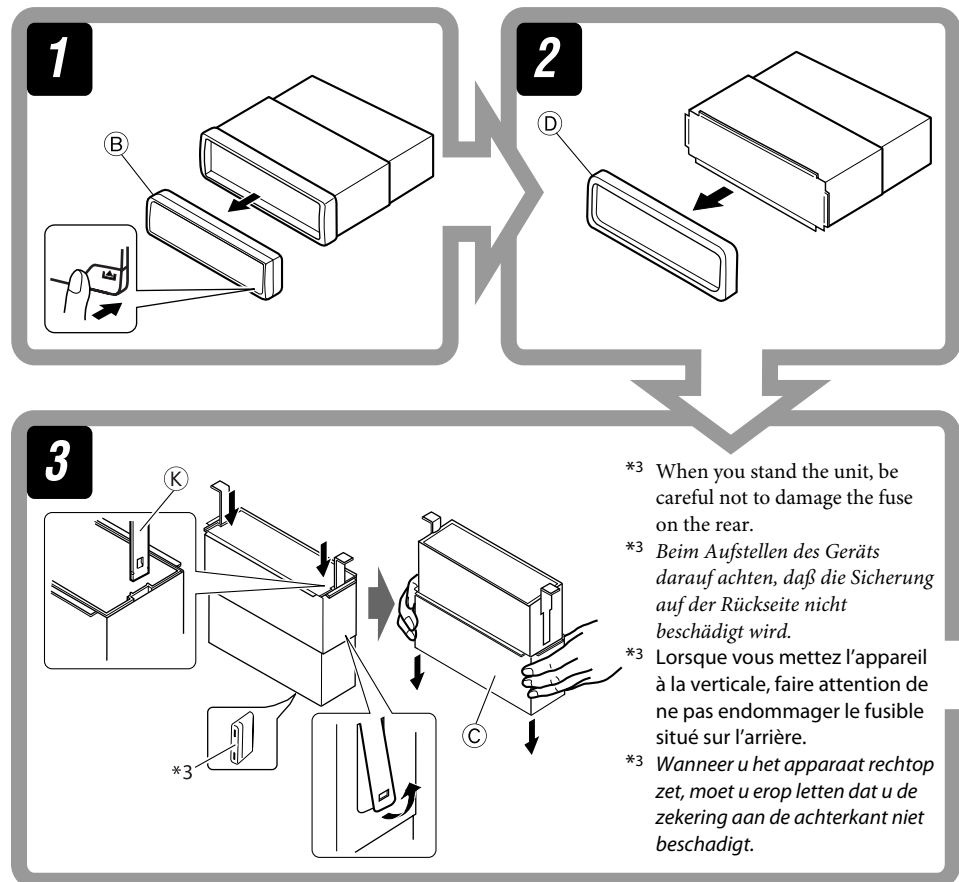
L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

- Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.

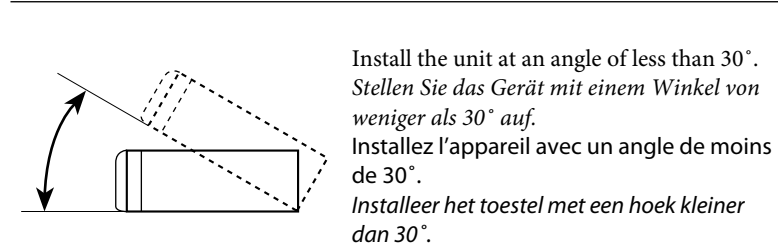
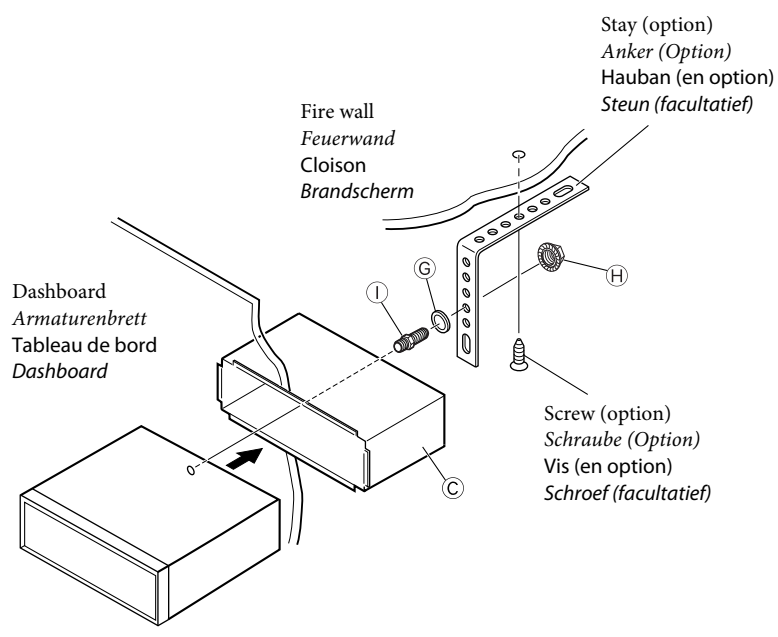
INSTALLATIE (INBOUW IN HET DASHBOARD)

Op de volgende afbeelding kunt u zien hoe de installatie, normaal gesproken, in zijn werk gaat. Neem bij vragen of voor meer bijzonderheden over inbouwpakketten contact op met uw JVC car audio dealer of een dealer of een bedrijf dat inbouwpakketten levert.

- Als u niet zeker weet hoe u dit apparaat moet installeren, kunt u dit beter door een daartoe gekwalificeerde technicus laten doen.

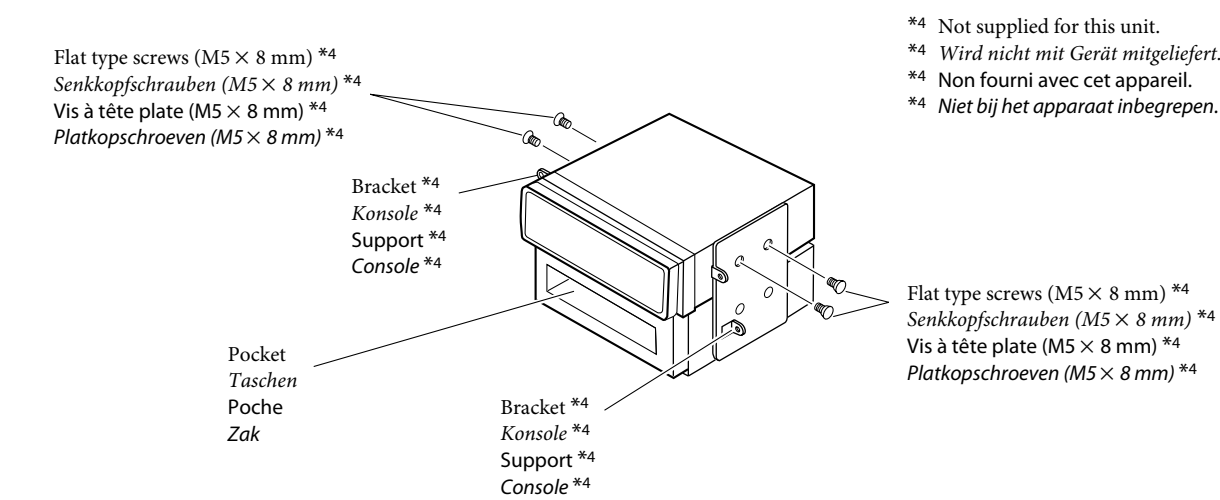


When using the optional stay / Beim Verwenden der Anker-Option / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option / Wanneer u de steun gebruikt (facultatief)



When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Beim Einbau des Geräts ohne Halterung / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sans utiliser de manchon / Wanneer u het apparaat zonder huls installeert

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place. Zum Beispiel in einem Toyota zuerst das Autoradio ausbauen und dann das Gerät an seinem Platz einbauen. Dans une voiture Toyota, par exemple, retirez d'abord l'autoradio et installez l'appareil à la place. Voorbeeld: Bij een Toyota moet u eerst de autoradio verwijderen en daarna het apparaat installeren.



- Note** : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
- Hinweis** : Beim Anbringen des Gerät an der Konsole sicherstellen, daß 8 mm lange Schrauben verwendet werden. Werden längere Schrauben verwendet, können sie das Gerät beschädigen.
- Remarque** : Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sur le support de montage, s'assurer d'utiliser des vis d'une longueur de 8 mm. Si des vis plus longues sont utilisées, elles peuvent endommager l'appareil.
- Opmerking** : Wanneer u het apparaat aan de bevestigingsklem vastmaakt, moet u de 8 mm lange schroeven gebruiken. Als u langere schroeven gebruikt, kan het apparaat worden beschadigd.

Removing the unit

Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

Ausbau des Geräts

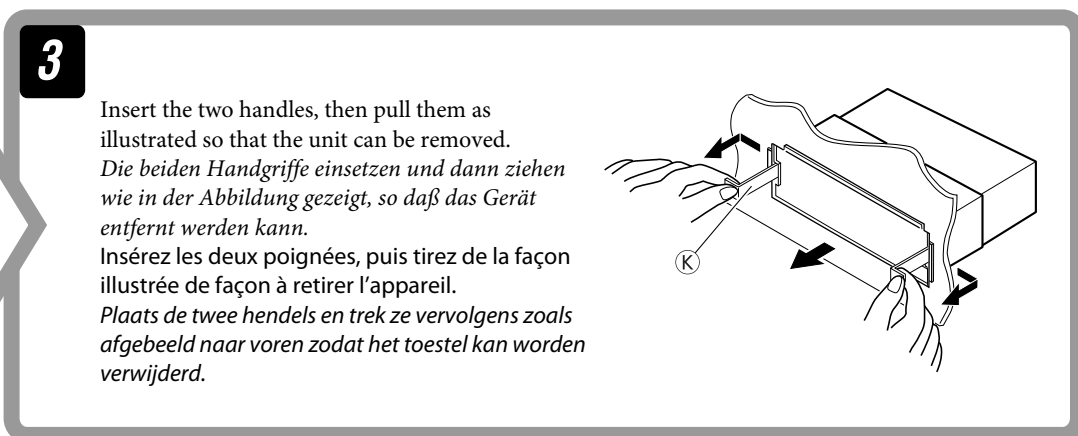
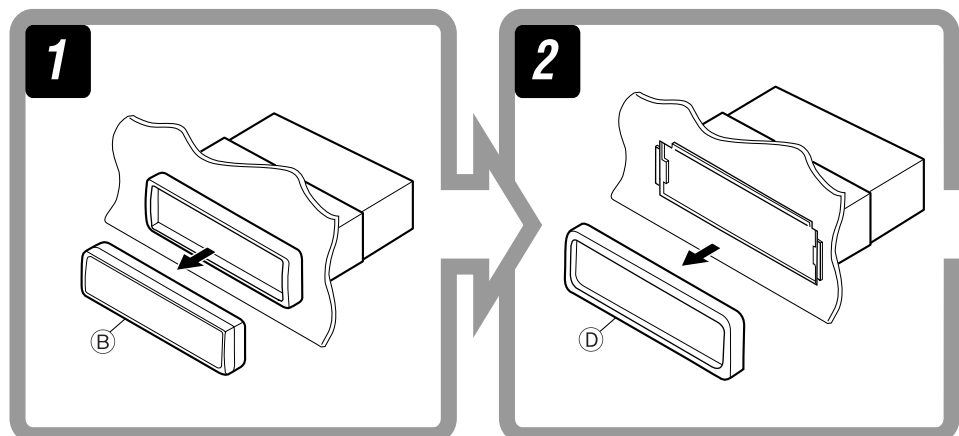
Vor dem Ausbau des Geräts den hinteren Teil freigeben.

Retrait de l'appareil

Avant de retirer l'appareil, libérer la section arrière.

Verwijderen van het apparaat

Voordat u het apparaat verwijdert, moet u het achtergedeelte losmaken.



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

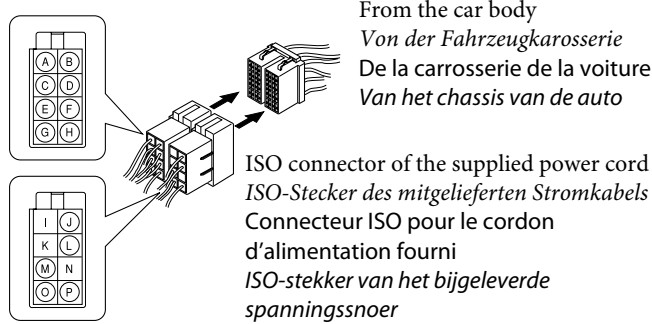
ELEKTRISCHE ANSCHLÜSSE

RACCORDEMENTS ELECTRIQUES

ELEKTRISCHE VERBINDINGEN

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit dem ISO-Steckverbinder ausgestattet ist / Si votre voiture est équipée d'un connecteur ISO / Indien uw auto een ISO-aansluiting heeft

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Schließen Sie die ISO-Steckverbinder an, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
- Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.
- Verbind de ISO-stekkers zoals afgebeeld.



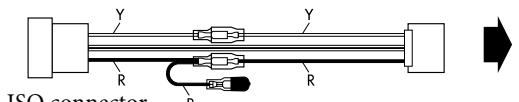
View from the lead side
Von der Kabelseite aus gesehen
Vue à partir du côté des fils
Gezien vanaf de spanningstoevoerkant

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile / Bei bestimmten VW-/Audi- oder Opel-(Vauxhall-) Fahrzeugen / Pour certaine voiture VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall) / Voor bepaalde VW/Audi en Opel (Vauxhall) auto's

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

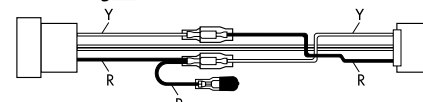
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.
- Es kann erforderlich sein, die Verdrahtung des mitgelieferten Stromkabels zu modifizieren, wie in der Abbildung gezeigt.
- Wenden Sie sich vor dem Einbau dieses Receivers an Ihre Auto-Fachwerkstatt.
- Vous aurez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.
- Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.
- U moet mogelijk de bedrading van het bijgeleverde spanningsnoer als afgebeeld veranderen.
- Raadpleeg een erkend autogarage alvorens deze receiver te installeren.

Original wiring / Originalverdrahtung / Câblage original / Oorspronkelijke bedrading



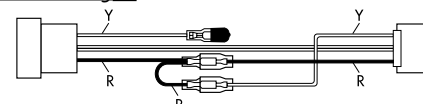
ISO connector
ISO-Steckverbinder
Connecteur ISO
ISO-aansluiting

Modified wiring 1 / Modifizierte Verdrahtung 1 / Câblage modifié 1 / Veranderde bedrading 1



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Verwenden Sie die modifizierte Verdrahtung 2 wenn der Receiver nicht einschaltet.
Utilisez le câblage modifié 2 si l'appareil ne se met pas sous tension.
Gebruik methode 2 voor het veranderen van de bedrading indien de receiver niet wordt ingeschakeld.

Modified wiring 2 / Modifizierte Verdrahtung 2 / Câblage modifié 2 / Veranderde bedrading 2



Y: Yellow
Gelb
Jaune
Geel

R: Red
Rot
Rouge
Rood

B Connections without using the ISO connectors / Anschlüsse ohne Verwendung der ISO-Steckverbinder / Connexions sans l'utilisation des connecteurs ISO / Verbinden zonder gebruik van ISO-stekkers

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

- 1 Cut the ISO connector.
- 2 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 3 Connect the aerial cord.
- 4 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Vor dem Anschließen: Die Verdrahtung im Fahrzeug sorgfältig überprüfen. Falsche Anschlüsse können ernsthafte Schäden am Gerät hervorrufen.
Die Leiter des Stromkabels und die Leiter des Anschlusses im Fahrzeug können sich farblich unterscheiden.

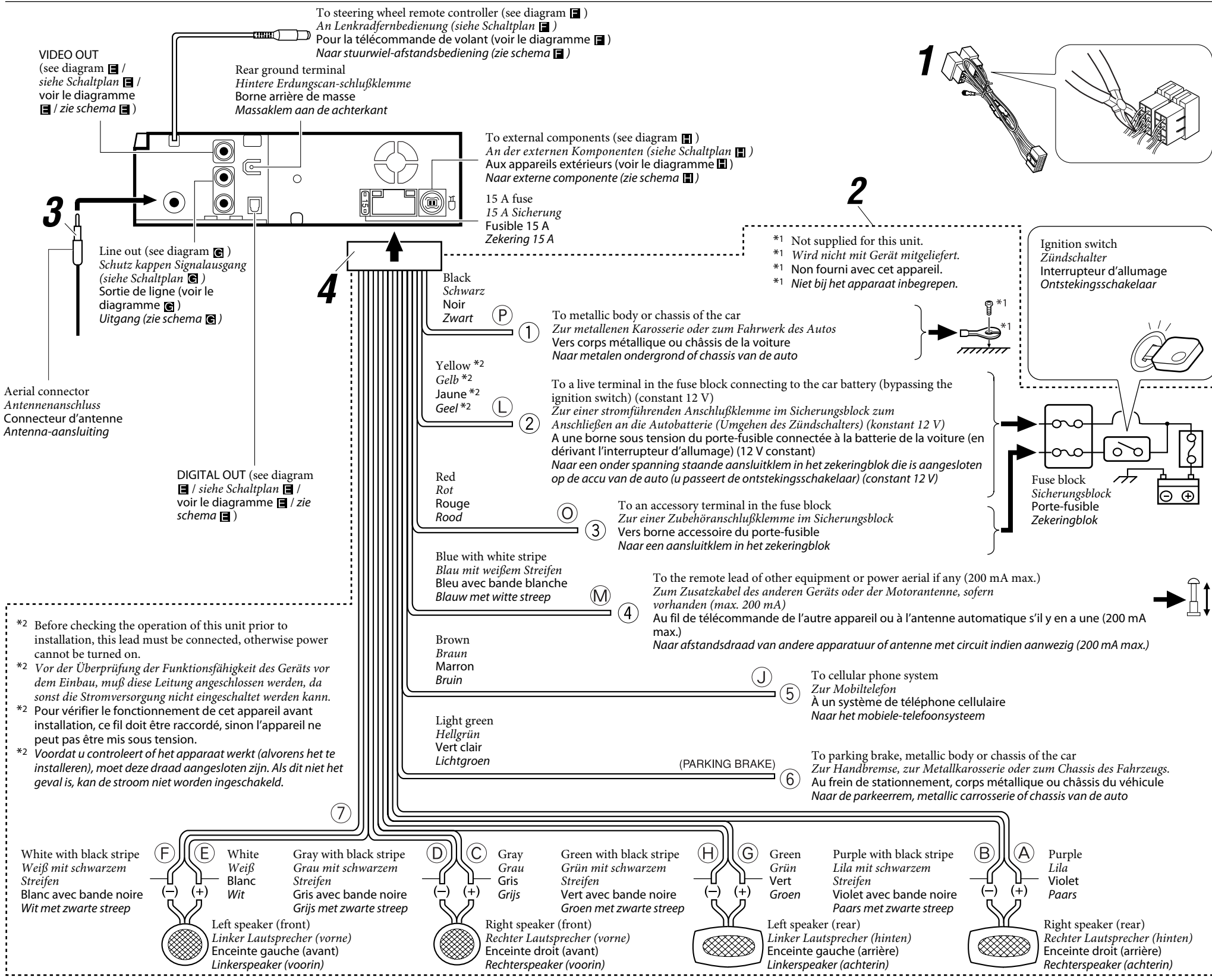
- 1 Schneiden Sie den ISO-Steckverbinder auf.
- 2 Die farbigen Adern des Stromkabels in der Reihenfolge anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt.
- 3 Das Antennenkabel anschließen.
- 4 Die Kabelbäume am Gerät anschließen.

Avant de commencer la connexion: Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.
Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

- 1 Coupez le connecteur ISO.
- 2 Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.
- 3 Connectez le cordon d'antenne.
- 4 Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.

Alvorens de verbindingen tot stand te brengen: Moet u de bedrading in de auto zorgvuldig. Het apparaat kan door verkeerde verbindingen ernstige schade oplopen.

- De draden van het stroomsnoer verschillen mogelijk van kleur met de aansluitingen op het chassis van de auto.
- 1 Knip de ISO-stekker af.
 - 2 Verbind de gekleurde draden van het stroomsnoer in de afbeelding hieronder aangegeven volgorde.
 - 3 Sluit de antenne aan.
 - 4 Verbind de draadbundel daarna met het apparaat.



C Connecting the parking brake wire / Anschluss des Handbremsenkabels / Connexion du cordon de frein de stationnement / De parkeerremdraad aansluiten

When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver

Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.

Wenn der Monitor an einer vom Fahrer einsehbaren Stelle installiert wird

Anschluss des Handbremsenkabels an das im Fahrzeug eingebaute Handbremsensystem.

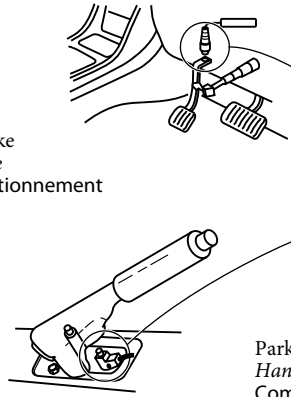
Lorsqu'on installe le moniteur à un emplacement où il peut être vu du conducteur

Connectez le fil de frein de stationnement au système de frein de stationnement.

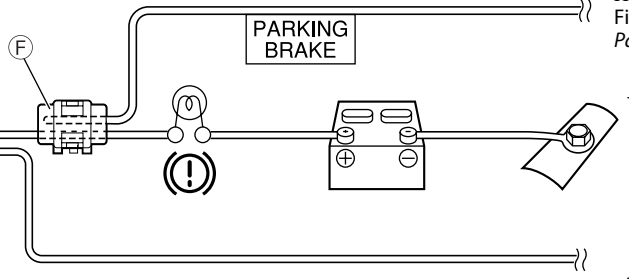
Wanneer de monitor op een plaats geïnstalleerd wordt waar hij door de bestuurder gezien kan worden

Sluit de parkeerremdraad op het parkeerremstelsysteem van de auto aan.

Parking brake
Handbremse
Frein de stationnement
Parkeerrem



Parking brake switch (inside the car)
Handbremsenschalter (Fahrzeuginneres)
Commutateur de frein de stationnement (intérieur de la voiture)
Parkeerremschakelaar (in de auto)



Parking brake wire (light green)
Handbremsenkabel (hellgrün)
Fil du frein de stationnement (vert clair)
Parkeerremdraad (lichtgroen)

To metallic body or chassis of the car
Zur metallenen Karosserie oder zum Fahrwerk des Autos
Vers corps métallique ou châssis de la voiture
Naar metalen ondergrond of chassis van de auto

When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver

Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis of the car.

Wenn der Monitor an einer vom Fahrer nicht einsehbaren Stelle installiert wird

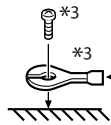
Schließen Sie das Handbremsenkabel an die Metallkarosserie oder an das Chassis des Fahrzeugs an.

Lorsqu'on installe le moniteur à un emplacement où il ne peut pas être vu du conducteur

Connectez le fil du frein de stationnement au corps métallique ou châssis du véhicule.

Wanneer de monitor op een plaats geïnstalleerd wordt waar hij niet door de bestuurder gezien kan worden

Sluit de parkeerremdraad aan op de metallic carrosserie of chassis van de auto.

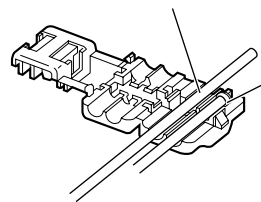


Parking brake wire (light green)
Handbremsenkabel (hellgrün)
Fil du frein de stationnement (vert clair)
Parkeerremdraad (lichtgroen)

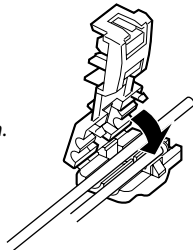
*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 Wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert.
*3 Non fourni avec cet appareil.
*3 Niet bij het apparaat inbegrepen.

D Connecting the crimp connector / Anschließen des Crimpanschlusses / Connexion de la cosse sertie / Verbinden van de krimpaansluiting

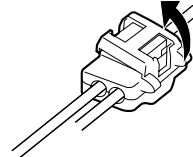
Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
Verbinden des Batterie- und des Handbremsenkabelschalters.
Fil connectant la batterie et l'interrupteur de frein de stationnement.
Draad voor aansluiting van de accu op de parkeerremschakelaar.



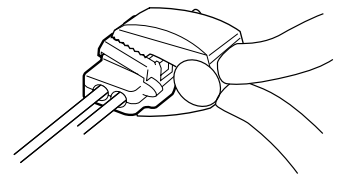
Attach the parking brake wire to this point.
Legen Sie das Handbremsenkabel hier ein.
Attachez le fil du frein de stationnement ici.
Bevestig op dit punt het draad van de parkeerrem.



Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
Kontaktieren des Metallteils des Quetschverbinders mit den Kabeln im Inneren.
Mettez en contact la partie métallique de la cosse à sertir et des fils intérieurs.
Zorg ervoor dat het metalen gedeelte van de krimp in contact komt met de interne draden.

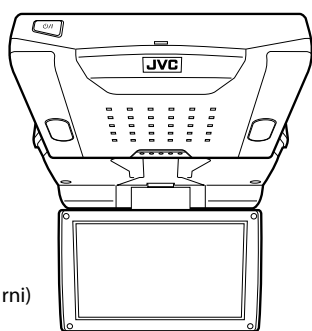


Pinch the crimp firmly.
Drücken Sie den Quetschverbinder fest zusammen.
Pincez la cosse à sertir fermement.
Knijp stevig in de krimp.

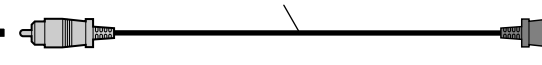


E Required connections for DVD playback / Zur DVD-Wiedergabe notwendige Anschlüsse / Connexions requises pour la lecture de DVD / Aansluitingen voor het afspelen van DVD

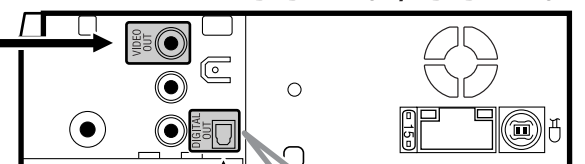
KV-MR9010
9-INCH WIDESCREEN MONITOR (not supplied)
9-ZOLL-BREITBILDMONITOR (nicht mitgeliefert)
MONITEUR À ÉCRAN LARGE DE 9 POUÇES (non fourni)
9-INCH BREEDBEELD-MONITOR (niet bijgeleverd)



Video cord (not supplied)
Videokabel (nicht mitgeliefert)
Cordon vidéo (non fourni)
Videosnoer (niet meegeleverd)



KD-DV4202/KD-DV4201



Digital optical cable (not supplied)
Optisches Digitalkabel (nicht mitgeliefert)
Câble optique numérique (non fourni)
Digitale optische kabel (niet meegeleverd)

DIGITAL OUT
See "About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals."
Siehe "Über von den Rückseitenbuchsen ausgegebenen Ton".
Référez-vous "À propos des sons reproduits par les prises arrière".
Zie "Meer over het geluid dat via de achter-aansluitingen wordt gereproduceerd."

Audio/video control amplifier or the decoder compatible with the multichannel digital sources
Audio/Video-Verstärker oder mit Mehrkanalquellen kompatibler Decoder
Amplificateur de commande audio/vidéo ou décodeur compatible avec les sources numériques multicanaux
Audio/videregeling versterker of de decoder compatibel met meerkanaals digitale bronnen

F Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Anschluß an die Lenkradfernbedienung / Connexion de la télécommande de volant / Verbinden met de stuurwiel-afstandsbediening

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Wenn Ihr Fahrzeug mit einer Lenkradfernbedienung ausgestattet ist, können Sie damit diesen Receiver steuern. Hierfür ist ein für Ihr Fahrzeug passender Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption von JVC (nicht im Lieferumfang enthalten) erforderlich. Für weitere Einzelheiten wenden Sie sich an Ihren JVC Autoradiohändler.

Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour le faire, un adaptateur pour télécommande au volant JVC (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est nécessaire. Consultez votre revendeur d'autoradio JVC pour les détails.

Indien uw auto een stuurwiel-afstandsbediening heeft, kunt u deze receiver met die afstandsbediening bedienen. Hiervoor heeft u echter een JVC adapter (niet bijgeleverd) nodig die geschikt is voor de stuurwiel-afstandsbediening van uw auto. Raadpleeg uw JVC car audio dealer voor details.

Steering wheel remote input
Eingang für Lenkradfernbedienung
Entrée de la télécommande de volant
Ingang stuurwiel-afstandsbediening



OE remote adapter (not supplied)
Radio-Lenkrad-Fernbedienungsadaption (nicht im Lieferumfang enthalten)
Adaptateur pour télécommande au volant (non fourni)
Adapter voor stuurwiel-afstandsbediening (niet bijgeleverd)

Steering wheel remote controller (equipped in the car)
Lenkradfernbedienung (im Fahrzeug installiert)
Télécommande de volant (installée dans la voiture)
Stuurwiel-afstandsbediening (in de auto)

G Connecting the external amplifier / Anschließen des externen Verstärkers / Connexion d'un amplificateur extérieur / Aansluiten van een externe versterker

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Sie können einen Verstärker anschließen, um Ihre Autostereoanlage zu erweitern.

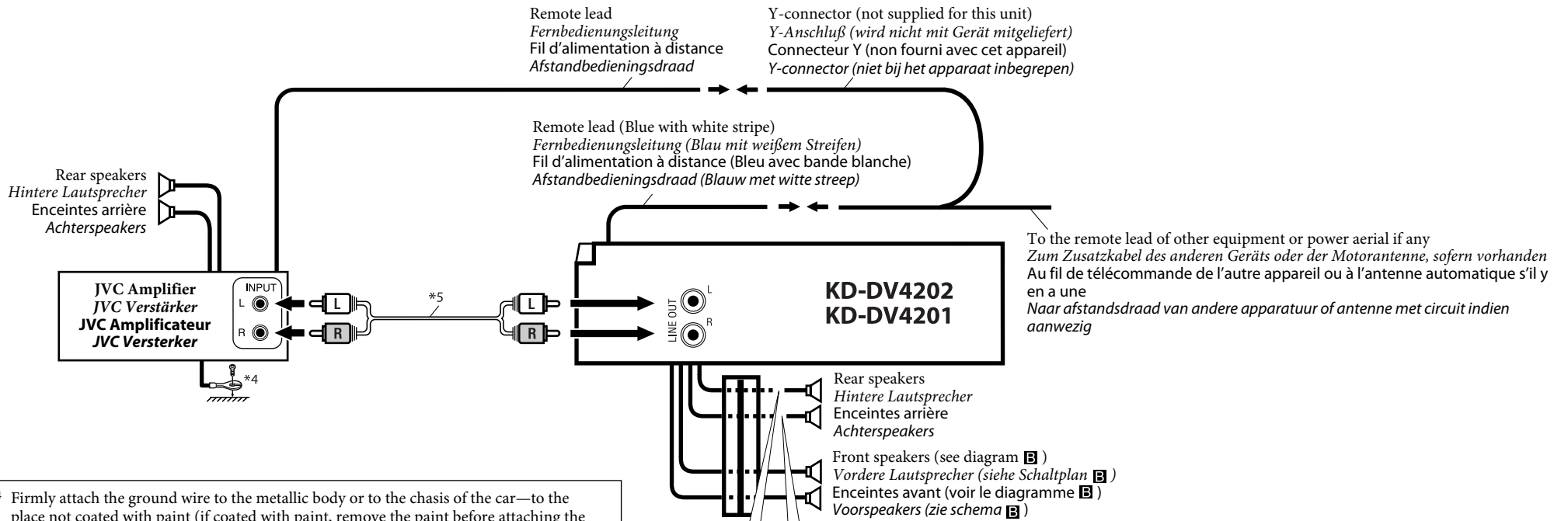
- Schließen Sie das Fernbedienungskabel (blau mit weißem Streifen) an das Fernbedienungskabel des anderen Geräts an, so daß es über dieses Gerät gesteuert werden kann.
- Die Lautsprecher von diesem Gerät abtrennen und am Verstärker anschließen. Die Lautsprecherleitungen dieses Geräts unbenutzt lassen.

Vous pouvez connecter un amplificateur pour améliorer votre système autoradio.

- Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.
- **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**

Het is mogelijk om uw autostereosysteem uit te breiden door een versterker aan te sluiten.

- Verbind de externe kabel (blauw met witte streep) met de externe kabel van het andere apparaat zodat deze op afstand vanaf deze apparaat kan worden bediend.
- **Koppel de speakers van dit apparaat los en verbind ze aan de versterker. Gebruik de speakerdraden van dit apparaat niet.**

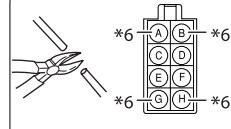


*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place not coated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*4 Verbinden Sie den Erdungsleiter mit der Karosserie oder dem Rahmen des Fahrzeugs. Die Kontaktstelle darf nicht lackiert sein (sollte die Kontaktstelle lackiert sein, entfernen Sie den Lack der Kontaktstelle, bevor Sie den Leiter befestigen). Wenn der Erdungsleiter nicht ordnungsgemäß angeschlossen wird, kann dieses Gerät beschädigt werden.

*4 Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.

*4 Bevestig de aarddraad goed met een metalen onderdeel of het chassis van de auto—bevestig op een niet-gelakt gedeelte (indien gelakt, schuur dan af alvorens de draad te bevestigen). Het toestel kan worden beschadigd indien de aarddraad niet goed is aangesloten.



*6 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.

*6 Schneiden Sie die hinteren Lautsprecherkabel des ISO-Steckverbinders des Fahrzeugs ab, und schließen diese an den Verstärker an.

*6 Coupez les fils des enceintes arrière du connecteur ISO de la voiture et connectez-les à l'amplificateur.

*6 Knip de achterluidsprekerdraden van de ISO-stekker van de auto en verbind de draden met de versterker.

*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*5 Einzelleitung (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert)
*5 Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet appareil)
*5 Signaalkabel (niet bij het apparaat inbegrepen)

H Connecting the external components / Anschließen der externen Komponenten / Connexion des appareils extérieurs / Verbinden van externe componenten

CD changer, DAB tuner, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / CD-Wechsler, DAB-Tuner, Apple iPod® oder JVC D. Player / Changeur de CD, tuner DAB, iPod, Apple® ou lecteur D. JVC / CD-wisselaar, DAB-tuner, Apple iPod® of JVC D.speler

- Set "CHANGER" for the external input setting (See page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Stellen Sie „CHANGER“ für externe Eingangseinstellung ein (Siehe Seite 24 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.) / Choisissez "CHANGER" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieure (Voir page 24 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.) / Stel "CHANGER" voor de externe ingang in (Zie bladzijde 24 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING.)

You can connect these components in series as illustrated below. The iPod*7 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

Sie können diese Komponenten in Reihe anschließen, wie in der Abbildung unten gezeigt. Der iPod*7 oder D. Player kann mit einem Schnittstellenadapter angeschlossen werden (nicht mitgeliefert)—KS-PD100 (für iPod) oder KS-PD500 (für D. Player).

Vous pouvez connecter ces appareils en série comme montrée sur l'illustration. Le iPod*7 ou le lecteur D. peut être connecté en utilisant un adaptateur d'interface (non fourni)—KS-PD100 (pour iPod) ou KS-PD500 (pour le lecteur D.).

U kunt deze componenten als hieronder afgebeeld aansluiten. De iPod*7 of D.speler kan middels een interface-adaptor (niet bijgeleverd) worden aangesloten—KS-PD100 (voor iPod) of KS-PD500 (voor D.speler).

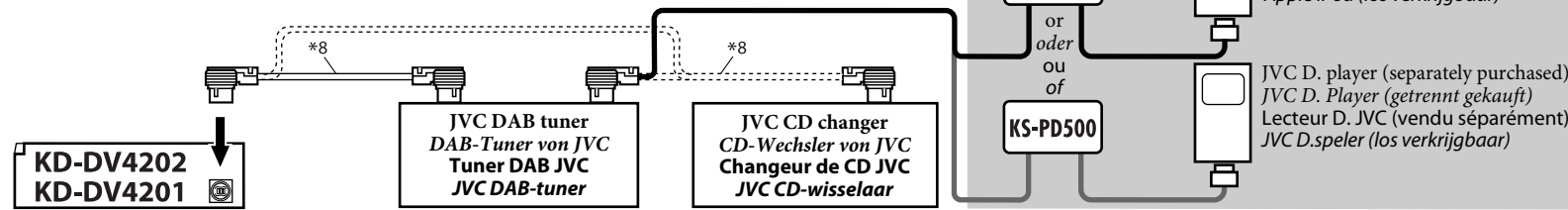
CAUTION / ACHTUNG / PRECAUTION / WAARSCHUWING:

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

Vor dem Anschließen der externen Komponenten sicherstellen, dass das Gerät ausgeschaltet ist.

Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

Controleer alvorens de externe componenten aan te sluiten dat dit toestel best is uitgeschakeld.

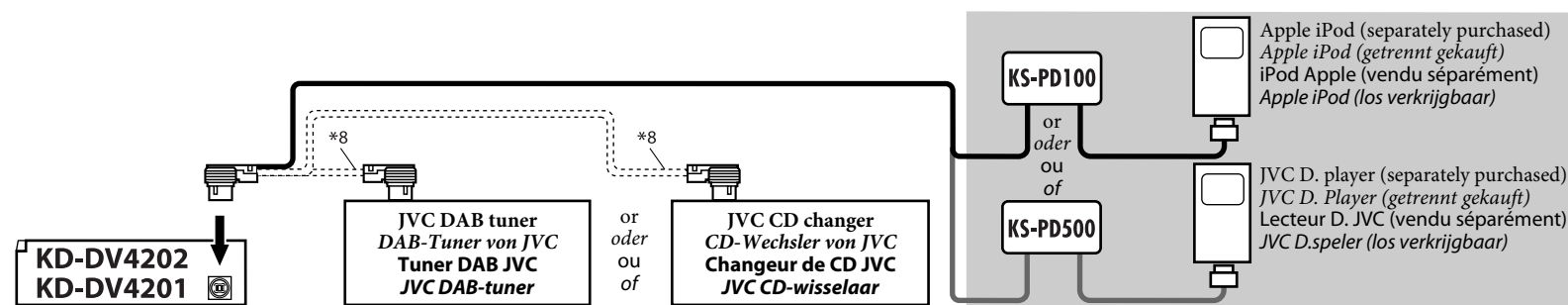


*7 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

*7 iPod ist ein Warenzeichen von Apple Computer, Inc., eingetragen in den USA und anderen Ländern.

*7 iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Computer, Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.

*7 iPod is een handelsmerk van Apple Computer, Inc., geregistreerd in de V.S. en andere landen.



*8 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer or DAB tuner

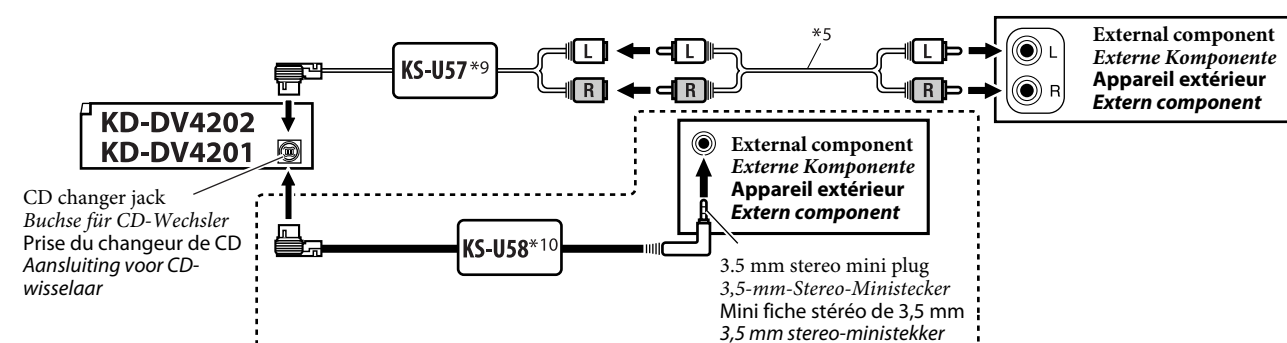
*8 Anschließen des für CD-Wechsler oder DAB-Tuner mitgelieferten Kabels

*8 Cordon de connexion fourni avec votre changeur de CD ou tuner DAB

*8 Aansluitnoer bijgeleverd voor uw CD-wisselaar of DAB-tuner

Other external component / Externe Komponente / Autre appareil extérieur / Extern component

- Set "EXT IN" for the external input setting (See page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Stellen Sie „EXT IN“ für externe Eingangseinstellung ein (Siehe Seite 24 der BEDIENUNGSANLEITUNG.) / Choisissez "EXT IN" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieure (Voir page 24 du MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS.) / Stel "EXT IN" voor de externe ingang in (Zie bladzijde 24 van de GEBRUIKSAANWIJZING.)



*9 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*9 Line-Eingangsadapter KS-U57 (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert)
*9 Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne KS-U57 (non fourni avec cet appareil)
*9 KS-U57 lijningangsadapter (niet bij het apparaat inbegrepen)

*10 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)
*10 AUX-Eingangsadapter KS-U58 (wird nicht mit Gerät mitgeliefert)
*10 Adaptateur d'entrée AUX KS-U58 (non fourni avec cet appareil)
*10 AUX-ingangsadapter KS-U58 (niet bij het apparaat inbegrepen)

JVC

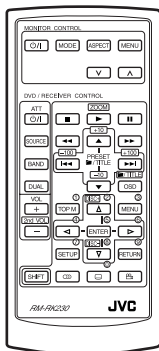
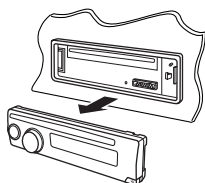


ENGLISH

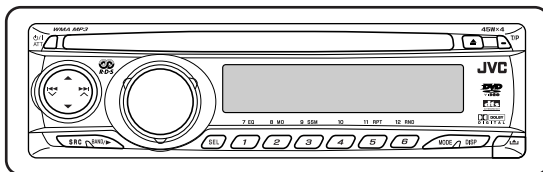
FRANÇAIS

DVD/CD RECEIVER
RECEPTEUR DVD/CD

KD-DV4202/KD-DV4201



MP3 **COMPACT DISC** **DOLBY DIGITAL** **DTS** **DVD VIDEO** **R-D-S**
WMA **DIGITAL VIDEO** **DIGITAL** **2.0+DIGITAL OUT**



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 5.
Pour annuler la démonstration des affichages, référez-vous à la page 5.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Pour l'installation et les raccordements, se référer au manuel séparé.

INSTRUCTIONS

MANUEL D'INSTRUCTIONS

GET0372-003A
[EU]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	ADVARSEL : Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (e)	WARNING : Synlig och osynlig laserstråling när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Beträkta strålen. (d)	VARO : Arvattessa ja suoraan näköalkeus ohittettuna tai välillä olet alittina näkövälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteien kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

How to use functions mode

If you press MODE, the unit goes into functions mode, then the number buttons and ▲/▼ buttons work as different function buttons.

[Within 5 seconds...]

How to reset your unit

- Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

How to forcibly eject a disc

⏻/ATT + [Hold]

- If this does not work, reset your unit.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

How to detach/attach the control panel

Detaching...

Attaching...

WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- **DO NOT** install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate the unit while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.





Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

<i>Introduction</i>	4
■ OPERATIONS	
<i>Basic operations</i>	
• <i>Control panel</i>	6
• <i>Remote controller (RM-RK230)</i>	7
<i>Listening to the radio</i>	9
<i>Searching for FM RDS programme</i>	
— <i>PTY search</i>	10
<i>Disc operations</i>	12
■ EXTERNAL DEVICES	
<i>Listening to the CD changer</i>	18
<i>Listening to the DAB tuner</i>	19
<i>Listening to the iPod®/D. player</i>	20
<i>Listening to the other external components</i>	21
■ SETTINGS	
<i>Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ</i>	22
<i>General settings — PSM</i>	23
<i>DVD setup menu</i>	25
<i>Maintenance</i>	28
<i>More about this unit</i>	29
<i>Troubleshooting</i>	31
<i>Specifications</i>	34

Introduction

Disc type	✓OK Playable	✗NO Unplayable
	DVD Video, Dual Disc (DVD side only), DVD-R*/-RW, +R/+RW <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recorded in DVD-Video format only and in PAL color system 	DVD Audio, Dual Disc (non-DVD side), DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM, DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recorded in DVD-VR format
	Video CD CD-R/-RW	SVCD (Super Video CD)
	DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW, DVD-ROM <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to UDF bridge format 	—
	CD-R/-RW <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to ISO 9660 level 1, ISO 9660 level 2, Romeo, Joliet 	—
	Audio CD, CD Text CD-R/-RW <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to CD-DA format 	CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD

• It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video mode only) discs. However, the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.

* DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “2.”

Examples:

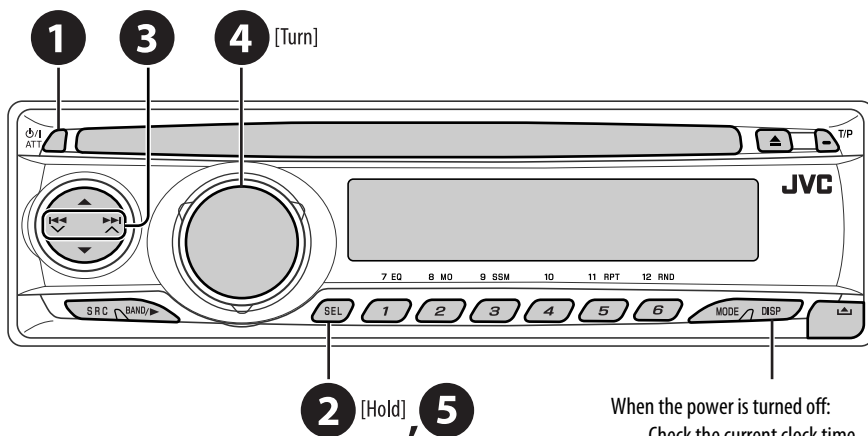


If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“REGION CODE ERROR!” appears on the monitor.

Before operating the unit — Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

• See also page 23.



- 1 Turn on the power.
- 2 Enter the PSM settings.
- 3 ⇒ 4 Cancel the display demonstrations
Select "DEMO," then "DEMO OFF."

Set the clock

Select "CLOCK H" (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select "CLOCK M" (minute), then adjust the minute.
Select "24H/12H," then "24H" (hour) or "12H" (hour).

- 5 Finish the procedure.

When the power is turned off:
Check the current clock time
When the power is turned on:
Change the display information

Basic operations — Control panel

- **FM/AM/DAB:** Search for station/service.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/track.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Select track.

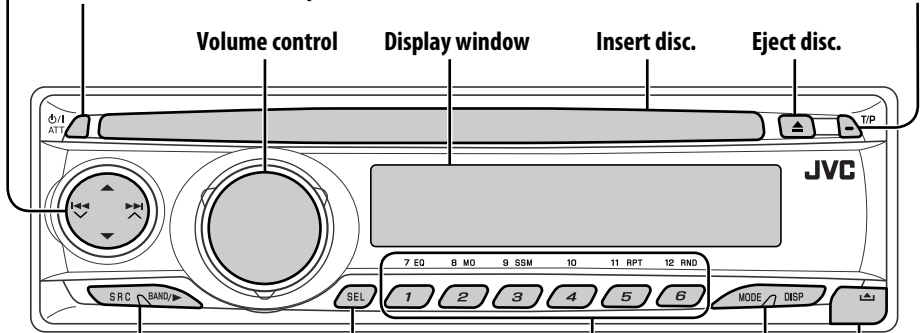


- **DISC:** Select folder.
Also functions as +10/-10 buttons after pressing MODE to skip 10 chapters/tracks at a time.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Enter the main menu/Pause or stop playback/Confirm selection.
- **DAB:** Select service.

- Turn on the power.
- Turn off the power [Hold].
- Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.

Hold to enter RDS programme search.



Adjust the sound mode.
Hold to enter the PSM settings.

Detach the panel.

- **FM/AM/DAB:** Select preset station/service.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/title/folder/track/disc (for CD changer).



Select the source.

FM/AM → **DAB*** → **DISC*** → **CD-CH*/IPOD*/D.PLAYER*** (or **EXT IN**) → (back to the beginning)

* You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.



- **FM/AM/DAB:** Select the bands.
- **DISC:** Start playback.



Enter functions mode.

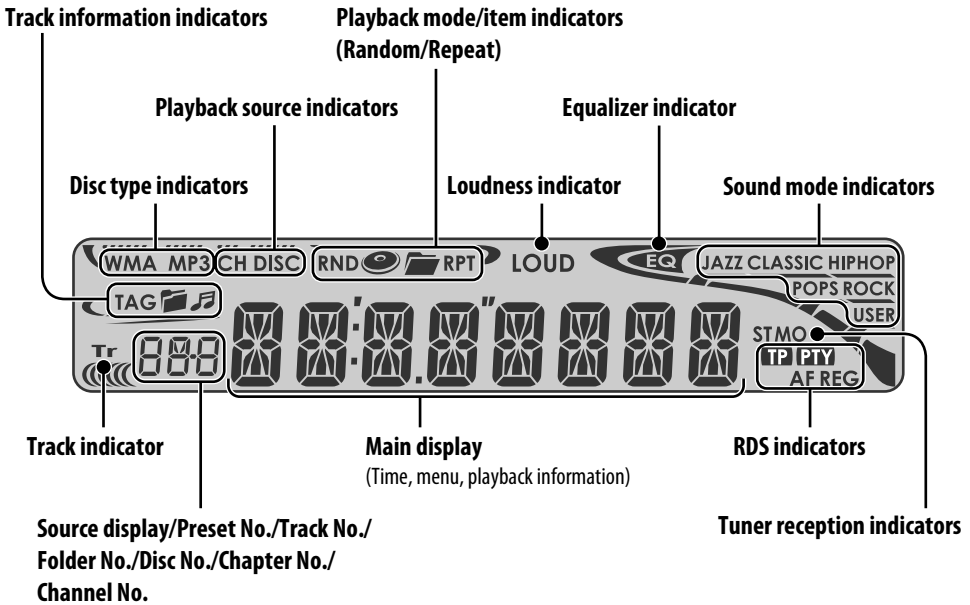
Press MODE, then one of the following buttons (within 5 seconds)...

- EQ:** Select the sound mode.
- MO:** Turn on/off monaural reception.
- SSM:** Automatic station presetting.
- RPT:** Select repeat play.
- RND:** Select random play.



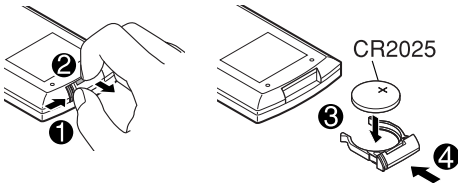
Change the display information.

Display window



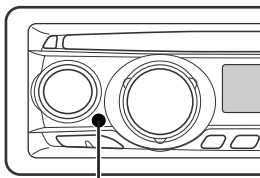
Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK230)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Remote sensor

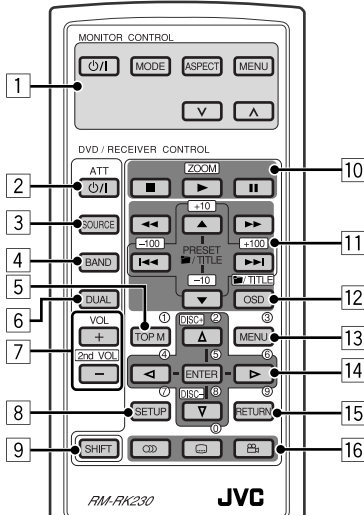
Warning:
To prevent accidents and damage

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

The unit is equipped with the steering wheel remote control function.

- See the Installation/Connection Manual (separate volume) for connection.

Continued on the next page



MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons
 - Used for a JVC monitor—KV-MR9010, KV-MH6510, KV-M706, or KV-M705.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 Turns on/off the power.
 - Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- 3 Selects the source.
- 4 Selects the FM/AM/DAB bands.
- 5*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 6 Not applicable for this unit.
- 7 Adjusts the volume level.
 - 2nd VOL: Not applicable for this unit.
- 8*1 Enters DVD setup menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10
 - (stop), ► (play), || (pause)
 - ► (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button (see page 14).
 - Not applicable for CD changer/iPod/ D. player operations.

11*2 For advanced disc operations:

- ◀/TITLE ▲ / ▼
DVD: Selects the titles.
MP3/WMA: Selects the folders if included.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse skip/forward skip.
- ◀◀◀ / ▶▶▶: Reverse search/forward search (not applicable for CD changer operations).

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- PRESET ▲ / ▼
Changes the preset stations.
- ◀◀◀ / ▶▶▶
– Searches for the stations if pressed briefly.
– Manual searches if pressed and held.

For DAB tuner operations:

- PRESET ▲ / ▼
Changes the preset services.
- ◀◀◀ / ▶▶▶
– Changes the services if pressed briefly.
– Searches the ensembles if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
▲: Enters the main menu.
(Now ▲/▼/◀◀◀ / ▶▶▶ work as the menu selecting buttons.)*3
- ◀◀◀ / ▶▶▶ (in menu selecting mode)
– Selects an item if pressed briefly.
(Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
– Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
- 12
 - Shows the on-screen bar.
 - Also function as the ◀/TITLE button when pressed with SHIFT button (see pages 14 and 15).
- 13*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 14*1
 - Makes selection/settings.
 - DISC +/- buttons: Changes discs when the source is “CD-CH.”
- 15*1 RETURN button
- 16
 - DVD: Selects audio language (ⓄⓄ), subtitles (ⓄⓄ), angle (ⓄⓄ).
 - VCD: Selects audio channel (ⓄⓄ).

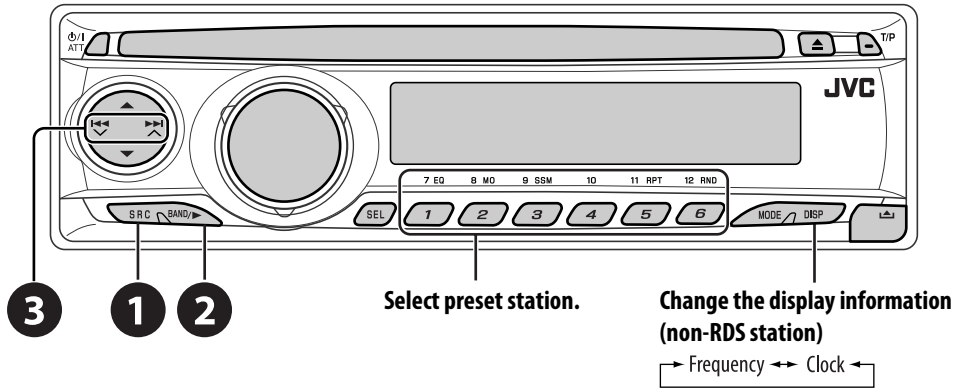
*1 Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

– FM/AM/DAB: Selects preset stations/ services.
– DISC: Selects chapter/title/folder/track.

*2 Functions as +10/-10/+100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
▼: Confirms the selection.

Listening to the radio



1 Select "FM/AM."

2 Select the bands.

→ FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM ←

3 Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.

- Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2 → MONO → MONO OFF (Canceled)

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

- MO indicator lights up.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset six stations for each band.

1 → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM ←

2

3 [Hold]



Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

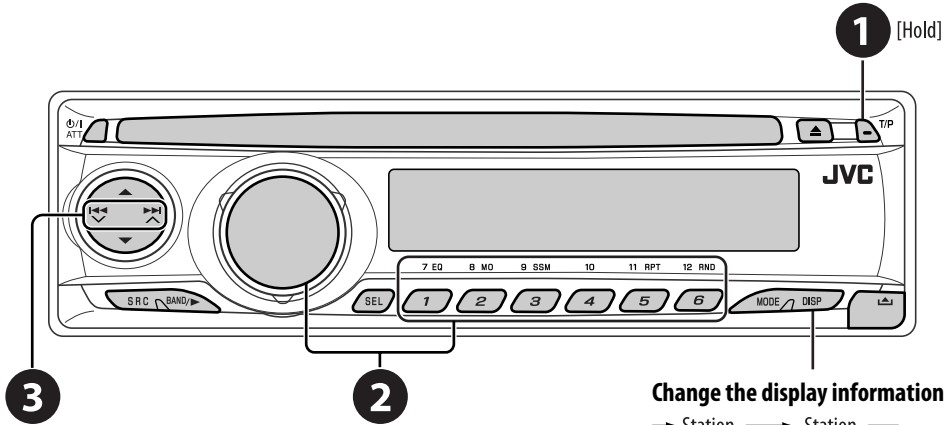
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1 → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM ←

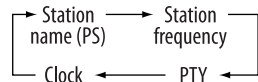
2 92.5

3 [Hold] P4 92.5

Searching for FM RDS programme — PTY search



Change the display information



- 1 Activate PTY Search.**
- 2 Select one of the PTY codes (programme types).**
See the following for details.
- 3 Start searching.**
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

Preset PTY codes in the number buttons (1 to 6):

1	2	3	4	5	6
POP M	ROCK M	EASY M	CLASSICS	AFFAIRS	VARIED

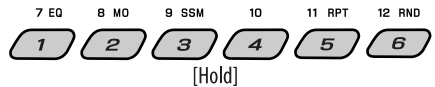
PTY codes (available with the control dial):

NEWS, AFFAIRS, INFO, SPORT, EDUCATE, DRAMA, CULTURE, SCIENCE, VARIED, POP M (music), ROCK M (music), EASY M (music), LIGHT M (music), CLASSICS, OTHER M (music), WEATHER, FINANCE, CHILDREN, SOCIAL, RELIGION, PHONE IN, TRAVEL, LEISURE, JAZZ, COUNTRY, NATION M (music), OLDIES, FOLK M (music), DOCUMENT

Storing your favorite programme types

You can store your favorite PTY codes into the number buttons.



- 1 Select a PTY code (see left column).**
- 2 Select a preset number.**



- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 for storing other PTY codes.**

- 4** T/P

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception	Indicator	PTY Standby Reception	Indicator
Press  to activate.	TP	See page 23.	PTY
The unit temporarily will switch to Traffic Announcement (TA), if available, from any source other than AM. The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (see page 23).	Lights up	The unit temporarily will switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.	Flashes	Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.	Flashes
Press  to deactivate.	Goes off	Select “OFF” for the PTY code (see page 23).	Goes off

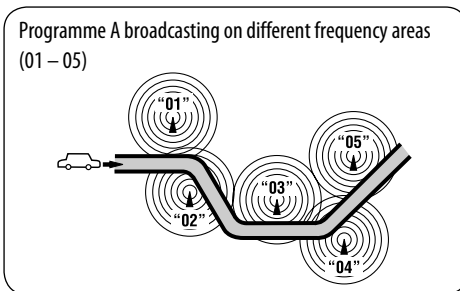
Tracing the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration on the right).

When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see “AF-REG” on page 23.

- When the DAB tuner is connected, refer to “Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception” on page 19.



Automatic station selection—Programme Search

Usually when you press the number buttons, the preset station is tuned in.

If the signals from the RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting.

- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.
- See also page 24.

Disc operations

Before performing any operations...

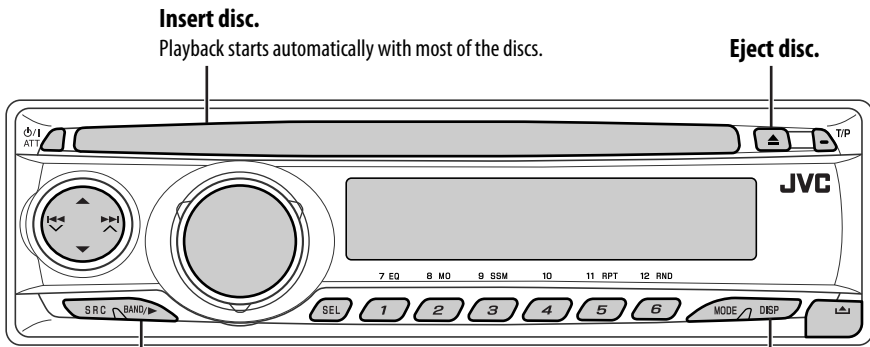
Turn on the monitor for playing a DVD or VCD. If you turn on the monitor, you can also control playback of other discs by referring to the monitor screen. (See pages 15 – 17.)

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc does not have any disc menu (when playback stops), all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If “⊘” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing “⊘,” operations will not be accepted.



Start playback if necessary.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

*1 If the file does not have Tag information or "TAG DISP" is set to "TAG OFF" (see page 24), folder name and file name appear. TAG indicator will not light up.

*2 "NO NAME" appears for an audio CD.

Change the display information



Elapsed playing time → Clock → Current title and chapter number



Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number



Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number

Track title ← Album name/performer (file name*1) ← (folder name*1)











Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number


Track title*2 ← Disc title/performer *2 ←








Operations using the control panel

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

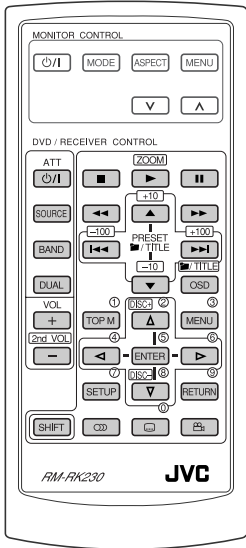
Disc type			  (Number buttons)
 Press: Select chapter Hold: Reverse /fast-forward chapter*	—	During stop: Locate title During play/pause: Locate chapter	
 Press: Select track Hold: Reverse /fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly (PBC not in use)	
 Select track	Select folder	Locate particular folder directly	
 Press: Select track Hold: Reverse /fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly	

* Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Leftrightarrow \times 10$ on the monitor.

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

Disc type			
 Skip 10 chapters (during play or pause)	CHP RPT: Repeat current chapter TIT RPT: Repeat current title	—	
 Skip 10 tracks (PBC not in use)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track (PBC not in use)	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks (PBC not in use)	
 Skip 10 tracks (within the same folder)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: Repeat current folder	FLDR RND: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks	
 Skip 10 tracks	TRK RPT: Repeat current track	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks	

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select “RPT OFF” or “RND OFF.”



- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play (10-second review if pressed during play.)
- : Reverse/forward chapter search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
- : *Press*: Select chapter (during play or pause)
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter search
- : Select title
- : Select audio language
- : Select subtitle language
- : Select view angle



Using menu driven features...

- 1 TOP M / MENU
- 2 Select an item you want to start play.
- 3 ENTER

While holding ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select chapter (during play or pause)
- : Select title (when stop)
- , then ①...⑨ : Select title directly

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.
 - 2 Move the enlarged portion.
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."

- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
 - Reverse slow motion does not work.
- : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search
- : Select audio channel (ST: stereo, L: left, R: Right)

While holding ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select track (For VCD with PBC, a list of items is shown on the disc menu.)
 - To return to the previous menus, press .

Canceling the PBC playback...

- 1
- 2 While holding , press ①...⑨*3 to start the desired track.
 - To resume PBC, press / .

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.
 - 2 Move the enlarged portion.
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."



MP3/WMA

- : Stop play
- : Pause
- : Start play (Playback starts from the beginning of the track.)
- : Select tracks
- : Select folder

While holding ...*3

- ... : Select track (within the same folder)
- : then ... : Select folder directly*4

CD

- : Stop play
- : Pause
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search
- : Press: Select tracks
- Hold:* Reverse/fast-forward track search

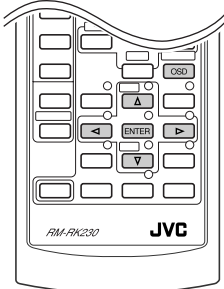
While holding ...*3

- ... : Select track directly

*1 Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Rightarrow \times 5 \Rightarrow \times 10 \Rightarrow \times 20 \Rightarrow \times 60$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.
 *2 Slow motion speed changes to $\text{▶1/32} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/16} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/8} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/4} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/2}$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.
 *3 For selecting numbers greater than 9 or 99, press +10 or +100 , then follow by $\text{①} \dots \text{⑨}$.
 *4 To use direct folder access on MP3/WMA discs, it is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Show the on-screen bar (see page 16).

(once) for MP3/WMA/CD
 (twice) for DVD/VCD

2 Select an item.

3 Make a selection.

If pop-up menu appears...

• For entering time/numbers, see the following.

4 Remove the on-screen bar.

Entering time/numbers

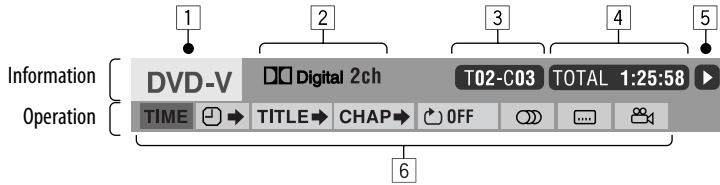
- To select numbers 0 – 9:
While holding , press
- To select numbers greater than 9:
While holding , press +10 . Then, press
- After entering the numbers, press .
- To reduce numbers, use -10 .
- To correct a misentry, use ◀ .

Ex.: Time search

- DVD: $_:_:_$
To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
- VCD (PBC not in use): $_:_:_$
To enter 64 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 6, 4, 0, then 0.

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar



- 1 Disc type
- 2 DVD/DTS audio CD: Audio signal format type
VCD: PBC
- 3 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
TRACK 01 Current track
- 4 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD, elapsed playing time of the current title.)
T. REM DVD: Remaining title time
VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track

- 5 Playback status
▶ Play
▶/◀ Forward/reverse search
▶/◀ Forward/reverse slow-motion
⏸ Pause
⏹ Stop

- 6 Operation icons
TIME Change the time indication (see 4)
⏮ → Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE → Title Search (by its number)
CHAP → Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK → Track Search (by its number)
⏭ Change the audio language or audio channel
⏮ Change the subtitle language
📺 Change the view angle
↺ OFF DVD: Repeat play
REPEAT VCD/MP3/WMA/CD: Repeat play
INTRO Intro play
RANDOM Random play



Repeat play*1 : [OFF] → [CHAP] → [TITLE]



(PBC not in use)

Repeat play*1 : [REPEAT] → (Canceled)

Random play*1 : [RANDOM] → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 : [INTRO] → (Canceled)



Repeat play*1 :

[REPEAT TRACK] → [REPEAT FOLDER] → (Canceled)

Random play*1 :

[RANDOM FOLDER] → [RANDOM DISC] → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 :

[INTRO TRACK] → [INTRO FOLDER] → (Canceled)



Repeat play*1 : [REPEAT TRACK] → (Canceled)

Random play*1 : [RANDOM DISC] → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 : [INTRO TRACK] → (Canceled)

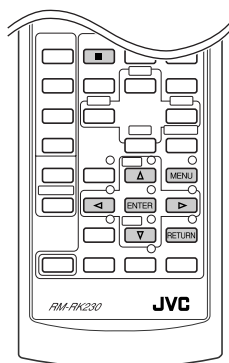
*1 For repeat play/random play, see also page 13.

*2 Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...

INTRO TRACK (INTRO): All tracks of the current disc.

INTRO FOLDER: First tracks of all folders of the current disc.

Operations using the control/list screen (MP3/WMA/CD)



These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

- Folder selection/information is only for MP3/WMA discs.

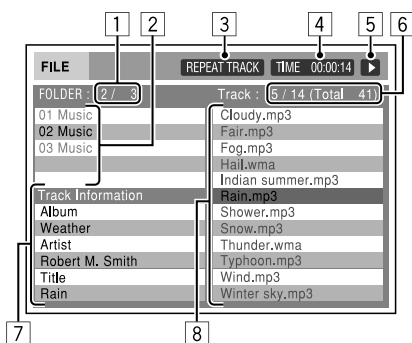
Control screen

The control screen automatically appears when you insert a disc.

- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track to start playing.



Ex.: MP3/WMA disc

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Folder list with the current folder selected
- 3 Selected playback mode
- 4 Elapsed playing time of the current track
- 5 Operation mode icon (▶, ■, II, ►►, ◀◀)
- 6 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
- 7 Track information
- 8 Track list with the current track selected

Folder/track list screen

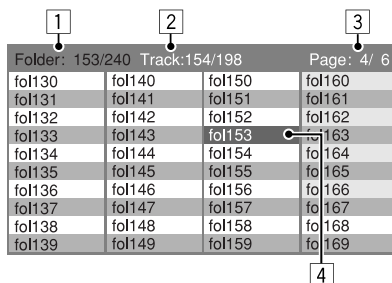
Before playing, you can display the folder list/track list to confirm the contents and start playing a track.

- 1 Display the folder/track list while stop.



- 2 Select an item from the list.

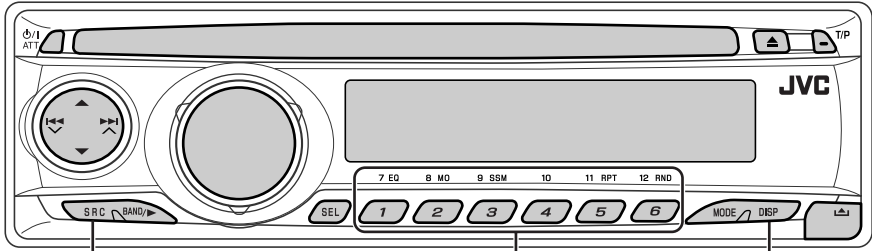
- MP3/WMA: Track list of the selected folder appears.
- To go back to the previous screen, press RETURN.



Ex.: Folder list

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder or in disc (CD)
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

Listening to the CD changer



1

2

Change the display information
(see page 12)

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can only play conventional CD (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

1 Select "CD-CH."

2 Select a disc to start playing.

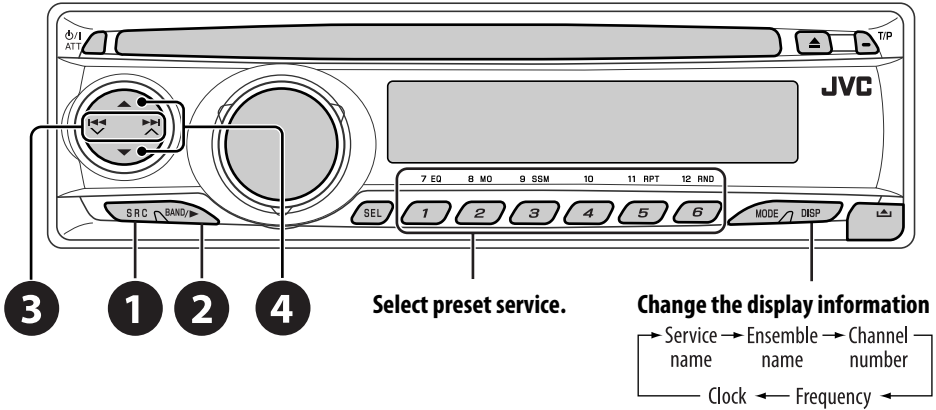
Press: For selecting disc number 1 – 6.

Hold: For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	<p>Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track</p>	<p>After pressing , press the following buttons to...</p>
	<p>MP3: Select folders</p>	
		<p>11 RPT </p>
		<p>TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder DISC RPT: Repeat all tracks of the current disc</p>
		<p>12 RND </p>
		<p>FLDR RND: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks of current disc MAG RND: Randomly play all tracks of the inserted discs</p>

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

Listening to the DAB tuner



1 Select “DAB.”

2 Select the bands.



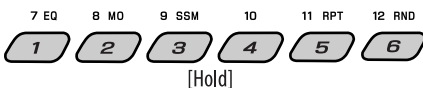
3 Searching for an ensemble.

- Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until “M” flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.

4 Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.

Storing DAB services in memory

While listening to a DAB service...



Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 11 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

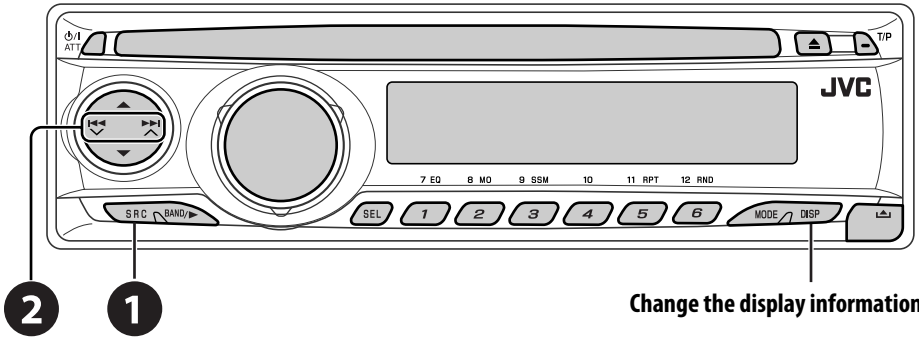
Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 24.

Listening to the iPod®/D. player



Before operating, connect the interface adapter (KS-PD100 or KS-PD500) to the CD changer jack of this unit.

Preparations:

Make sure "CHANGER" is selected for the external input setting, see page 24.

- ① Select "IPOD" or "D. PLAYER."
- ② Select a song to start playing.

Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu.
 - This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.



- 2 Select the desired menu.



For iPod:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS
 ↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSER ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTIST ↔ ALBUM ↔
 GENRE ↔ TRACK ↔ (back to the beginning)

- 3 Confirm the selection.
 - To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.



- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- Holding ▼|◀◀/▶▶|▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

Change the display information

	Pause/stop playback • To resume playback, press it again.
	Press: Select tracks Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track

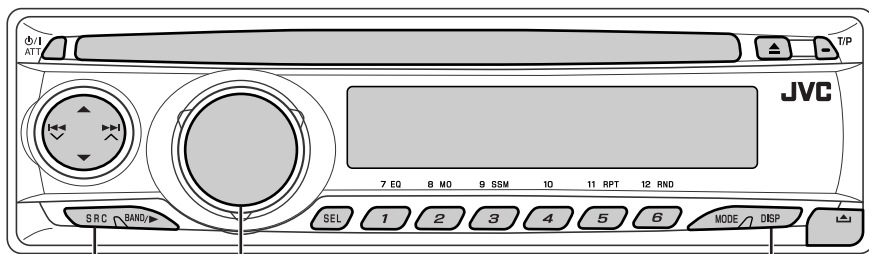
After pressing , press the following buttons to...

11 RPT 	ONE RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat One" or "Repeat Mode → One." ALL RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat All" or "Repeat Mode → All."
12 RND 	ALBM RND*: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod. SONG RND/RND ON: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" or "Random Play → On."

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

* iPod: Only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."

Listening to the other external components



1

3

Change the display information

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

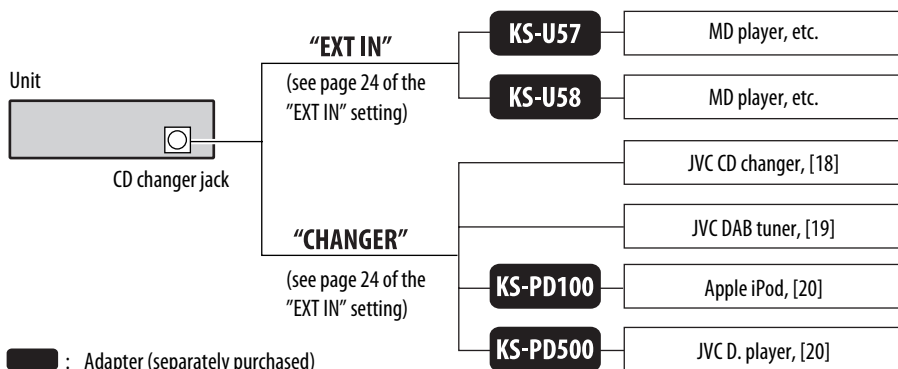
Preparations:

Make sure “EXT IN” is selected for the external input setting, see page 24.

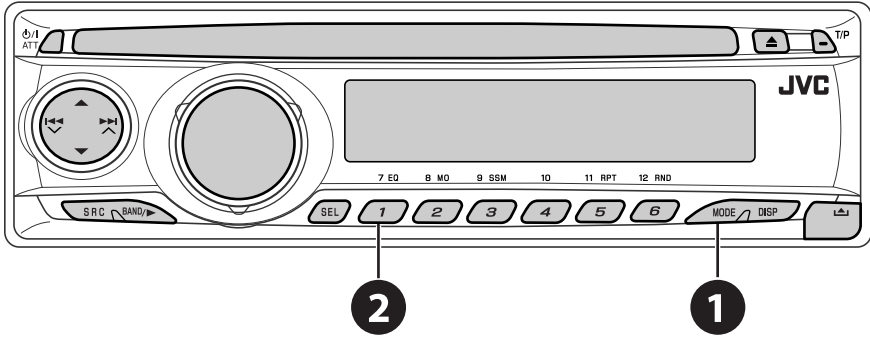
- 1 Select “EXT IN.”
- 2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.
- 3 Adjust the volume.
- 4 Adjust the sound as you want (see page 22).

Concept diagram of the external device connection

- For connection, see Installation/Connection manual (separate volume).



Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ

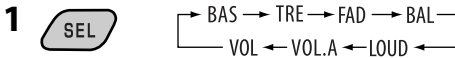


- 1 Enter functions mode.
- 2 Select a preset sound mode.



Indication (For)	BAS (bass)	TRE (treble)	LOUD (loudness)
USER (Flat sound)	00	00	OFF
ROCK (Rock or disco music)	+03	+01	ON
CLASSIC (Classical music)	+01	-02	OFF
POPS (Light music)	+04	+01	OFF
HIP HOP (Funk or rap music)	+02	00	ON
JAZZ (Jazz music)	+02	+03	OFF

Adjusting the sound



- 2 Adjust the level.



BAS *1 (bass) Adjust the bass.	-06 to +06
TRE *1 (treble) Adjust the treble.	-06 to +06
FAD *2 (fader) Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 to F06
BAL (balance) Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 to R06
LOUD *1 (loudness) Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.	LOUD ON or LOUD OFF
VOL.A *3 (volume adjust) Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level.	-05 to +05
VOL (volume) Adjust the volume.	00 to 30 (or 50)*4

*1 When you adjust the bass, treble, or loudness, the adjustment you have made is stored for the currently selected sound mode (C-EQ) including "USER."

*2 If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."

*3 You cannot make an adjustment for FM. "FIX" appears.

*4 Depending on the amplifier gain control setting. (See page 24 for details.)

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM settings.



2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.



4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
DEMO Display demonstration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DEMO ON [Initial] • DEMO OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [5]. : Cancels.
CLOCK H Hour adjustment	0 – 23 (1 – 12) [Initial: 0 (0:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLOCK M Minute adjustment	00 – 59 [Initial: 00 (0:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
24H/12H Time display mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 12H • 24H [Initial] 	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLK ADJ Clock adjustment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO [Initial] • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the RDS signal. : Cancels.
AF-REG*1 Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AF [Initial] • AF REG • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station or service (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [11, 19]. : When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. : Cancels (not selectable when “DAB AF” is set to “AF ON”).
PTY-STBY PTY standby	OFF [Initial], PTY codes (see page 10)	: Activates PTY Standby Reception with one of the PTY codes, [11, 19].
TA VOL Traffic announcement volume	VOL 15 [Initial]	: VOL 00 – VOL 30 or 50*2, [11].

Continued on the next page

Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
P-SEARCH * ¹ Programme search	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Activates Programme Search, [11]. : Cancels.
DAB AF * ³ Alternative frequency reception	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AF ON [Initial] • AF OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations, [19]. : Cancels.
DIMMER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Dims the display illumination. : Cancels.
TEL Telephone muting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MUTING 1/ MUTING 2 • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Select either one which mutes the playback sounds while using a cellular phone. : Cancels.
SCROLL * ⁴	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ONCE [Initial] • AUTO • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
EXT IN * ⁵ External input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHANGER [Initial] • EXT IN 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : To use a JVC CD changer, [18], JVC DAB tuner, [19], or an Apple iPod/a JVC D. player, [20]. : To use any other external component than the above, [21].
TAG DISP Tag display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TAG ON [Initial] • TAG OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
AMP GAIN Amplifier gain control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LOW PWR • HIGH PWR [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 45 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.) : VOL 00 – VOL 50
IF BAND Intermediate frequency filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO [Initial] • WIDE 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.

*¹ Only for RDS FM preset stations.

*² Depending on the “AMP GAIN” setting.

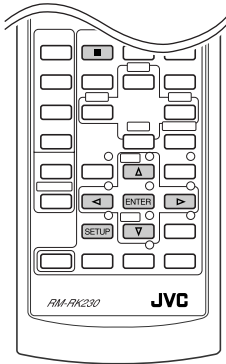
*³ Displayed only when DAB tuner is connected.

*⁴ Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.

*⁵ Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, or DISC.

DVD setup menu

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Enter the DVD setup menu while stop.



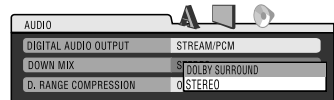
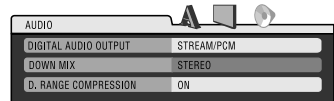
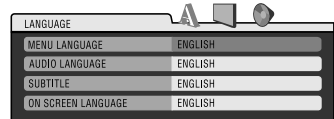
2 Select a menu.



3 Select an item you want to set up.



4 Select an option.



To return to normal screen



Menu	Item	Setting
LANGUAGE	MENU LANGUAGE	Select the initial disc menu language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 27.
	AUDIO LANGUAGE	Select the initial audio language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 27.
	SUBTITLE	Select the initial subtitle language or remove the subtitle (OFF). Refer also to "Language codes" on page 27.
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select the language for the on screen display.
PICTURE	MONITOR TYPE	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>16:9</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>4:3 LETTER BOX</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>4:3 PAN SCAN</p> </div> </div>
	OSD POSITION	Select the on-screen bar position on the monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Higher position • 2: Lower position (Guidance below the DVD setup menu will disappear.)

Continued on the next page

Menu	Item	Setting
AUDIO	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	<p>Select the signal format to be emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (Optical) terminal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PCM ONLY: Select for an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio, or connecting to a recording device. • DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. • STREAM/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio.
	DOWN MIX	<p>When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks (and through the DIGITAL OUT terminal when "PCM ONLY" is selected for "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT").</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DOLBY SURROUND: Select to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. • STEREO: Normally select this.
	D. RANGE COMPRESSION	<p>You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software). • ON: Select to always use this function.

Output signals through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Output signals are different depending on the "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" setting on the setup menu (see above).

DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Output Signals		
	STREAM/PCM	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	PCM ONLY
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
	96 kHz, Linear PCM		
	with DTS	DTS bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital bitstream	
	with MPEG Audio	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM
Audio CD, Video CD	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM/48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS	DTS bitstream	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
MP3/WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

Language codes

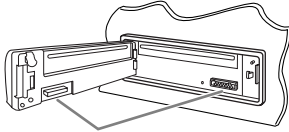
Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	GL	Galician	MK	Macedonian	SO	Somali
AB	Abkhazian	GN	Guarani	ML	Malayalam	SQ	Albanian
AF	Afrikaans	GU	Gujarati	MN	Mongolian	SR	Serbian
AM	Ameharic	HA	Hausa	MO	Moldavian	SS	Siswati
AR	Arabic	HI	Hindi	MR	Marathi	ST	Sesotho
AS	Assamese	HR	Croatian	MS	Malay (MAY)	SU	Sundanese
AY	Aymara	HU	Hungarian	MT	Maltese	SW	Swahili
AZ	Azerbaijani	HY	Armenian	MY	Burmese	TA	Tamil
BA	Bashkir	IA	Interlingua	NA	Nauru	TE	Telugu
BE	Byelorussian	IE	Interlingue	NE	Nepali	TG	Tajik
BG	Bulgarian	IK	Inupiak	NO	Norwegian	TH	Thai
BH	Bihari	IN	Indonesian	OC	Occitan	TI	Tigrinya
BI	Bislama	IS	Icelandic	OM	(Afan) Oromo	TK	Turkmen
BN	Bengali, Bangla	IW	Hebrew	OR	Oriya	TL	Tagalog
BO	Tibetan	JI	Yiddish	PA	Panjabi	TN	Setswana
BR	Breton	JW	Javanese	PL	Polish	TO	Tonga
CA	Catalan	KA	Georgian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TR	Turkish
CO	Corsican	KK	Kazakh	PT	Portuguese	TS	Tsonga
CS	Czech	KL	Greenlandic	QU	Quechua	TT	Tatar
CY	Welsh	KM	Cambodian	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TW	Twi
DZ	Bhutani	KN	Kannada	RN	Kirundi	UK	Ukrainian
EL	Greek	KO	Korean (KOR)	RO	Rumanian	UR	Urdu
EO	Esperanto	KS	Kashmiri	RW	Kinyarwanda	UZ	Uzbek
ET	Estonian	KU	Kurdish	SA	Sanskrit	VI	Vietnamese
EU	Basque	KY	Kirghiz	SD	Sindhi	VO	Volapuk
FA	Persian	LA	Latin	SG	Sangho	WO	Wolof
FI	Finnish	LN	Lingala	SH	Serbo-Croatian	XH	Xhosa
FJ	Fiji	LO	Laothian	SI	Singhalese	YO	Yoruba
FO	Faroese	LT	Lithuanian	SK	Slovak	ZU	Zulu
FY	Frisian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SL	Slovenian		
GA	Irish	MG	Malagasy	SM	Samoan		
GD	Scots Gaelic	MI	Maori	SN	Shona		

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

Center holder



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

FM/AM/RDS

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing stations, the previously preset stations are erased and stations are stored newly.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA VOL) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- TA Standby Reception and PTY Standby Reception will be temporarily canceled while listening to an AM station.
- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See page 24.)

- If you want to know more about RDS, visit [«http://www.rds.org.uk»](http://www.rds.org.uk).

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3/WMA files and their file names.
- This unit can also playback 8 cm discs.
- This unit can only playback audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- This unit can recognize a total of 3 500 files (250 folder per disc; 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for the files.
- This unit may be unable to play back some discs or files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.

Continued on the next page

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 64 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play starts from where it has been stopped previously.
For MP3/WMA disc, playback starts from the beginning of the last playing track.

DAB

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.
- A previously preset DAB service is erased when a new DAB service is stored in the same preset number.

iPod® or D. player

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.

- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 8 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 24). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

General settings—PSM

- If you change the “AMP GAIN” setting from “HIGH PWR” to “LOW PWR” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30.”


DVD setup menu


- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PAN SCAN” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LETTER BOX” for some DVDs.


On-screen guide icons

During playback, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

DVD: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing:


 : Multi-subtitle languages

 : Multi-audio languages


 : Multi-angle views

 : Playback

 : Pause

 : DVD/VCD: Forward slow motion

 : DVD: Reverse slow motion

 : Forward search

 : Reverse search

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):** 2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 26.)

- **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):** Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 26.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” correctly. (See page 26.)

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
FM/AM/RDS	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unlock the disc (see page 12). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc cannot be recognized.	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• “NO DISC” appears on the display.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• No playback picture (DVD/VCD) appears on the monitor.	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. (See Installation/Connection Manual.)
	• No picture appears on the monitor at all.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
• The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the monitor.	Select “4:3 LETTER BOX” (see page 25).	
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the disc. • Record tracks using a compliant application in the appropriate discs (see page 4). • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3/WMA tracks.)
	• Longer readout time is required.	Readout time varies due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration. Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks cannot playback as you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• “NO FILES” appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains tracks of appropriate formats.
• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.	

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
CD changer	• “NO DISC” appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• “NO MAG” appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• “RESET 8” appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• “RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
DAB	• “NO DAB” appears on the display.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• “RESET 08” appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 2).
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly. Then, reset the unit (see page 2).
	• “ANT NG” appears on the display.	Check the cords and connections.
iPod/D. player playback	• The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Change the battery. • Update the firmware version.
	• Buttons do not work as intended.	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press MODE before performing the operation.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/D. player.
	• “NO IPOD” or “NO DP” appears on the display.	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 20).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	• No sound can be heard.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• “ERROR 01” appears on the display when connecting a D. player.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• “NO FILES” or “NO TRACK” appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	• “RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
• “RESET 8” appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.	
	• The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod or D. player.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	45 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	17 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass/Treble:	± 10 dB at 100 Hz/ ± 10 dB at 10 kHz
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical):	Signal wave length: 660 nm Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm
		Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.0 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 k Ω
	Color System:		PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 V _{p-p} /75 Ω
Other Terminals:		CD changer, Steering wheel remote input	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	(MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	MW Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μ V/35 dB
	LW Tuner	Sensitivity:	50 μ V

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)		
	Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)		
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz	
		DVD, fs=96 kHz:	16 Hz to 44 000 Hz	
		VCD/CD/MP3/WMA:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz	
	Dynamic Range:	96 dB		
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB		
	Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit		
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps	
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz	
WMA:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 192 kbps		
	Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz		
		MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz		

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)	
	Grounding System:	Negative ground		
	Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C		
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm	
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm	
	Mass (approx.):	1.6 kg (excluding accessories)		

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS 2.0 + Digital Out” are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

**Vous avez des PROBLÈMES de
fonctionnement?**

Réinitialisez votre appareil

Référez-vous à la page intitulée Comment réinitialiser votre appareil

JVC



EN, FR

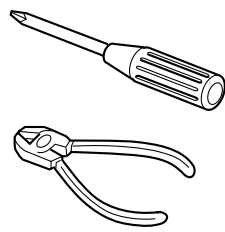
© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1205DTSMDTJEIN

JVC KD-DV4202/KD-DV4201

Installation/Connection Manual Manuel d'installation/raccordement

GET0372-007A
[EU]



1205DTSMDTJEIN
EN, FR

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent accidents and damage:

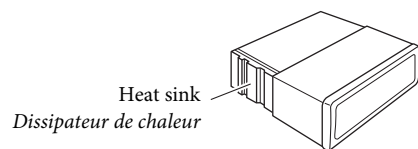
- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where;**
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT operate the unit while driving.**
- **If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
- **If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 45 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 45 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



FRANÇAIS

Cet appareil est conçu pour fonctionner sur des sources de **courant continu de 12 V à masse NEGATIVE**. Si votre véhicule n'offre pas ce type d'alimentation, il vous faut un convertisseur de tension, que vous pouvez acheter chez un revendeur d'autoradios JVC.

AVERTISSEMENTS

Pour éviter tout accident et tout dommage:

- **N'INSTALLEZ aucun élément dans les endroits suivants;**
 - Il peut gêner l'utilisation du volant ou du levier de vitesse.
 - Il peut gêner le fonctionnement de dispositifs de sécurité tels que les coussins de sécurité.
 - où il peut gêner la visibilité.
- **NE manipulez pas l'appareil quand vous conduisez.**
- **Si vous devez commander l'appareil pendant que vous conduisez, assurez-vous de bien regarder devant vous.**
- **Le conducteur ne doit pas regarder le moniteur lorsqu'il conduit.**
- **Si le frein de stationnement n'est pas mis, "LE CONDUCTEUR NE DOIT PAS REGARDER LE MONITEUR EN CONDUISANT." apparaît sur le moniteur et l'image de lecture n'apparaît pas.**
 - Cet avertissement apparaît uniquement quand le fil du frein de stationnement est connecté au système de frein de stationnement intégré à la voiture.

Pour éviter tout court-circuit, nous vous recommandons de débrancher la borne négative de la batterie et d'effectuer tous les raccordements électriques avant d'installer l'appareil.

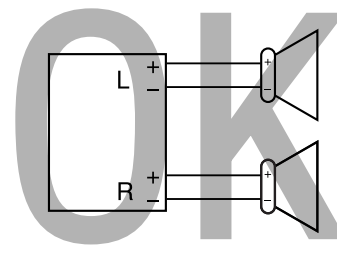
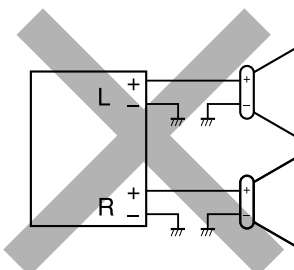
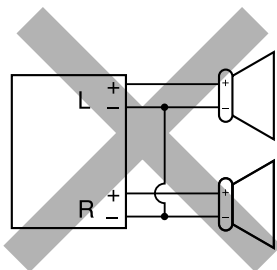
- **Assurez-vous de raccorder de nouveau la mise à la masse de cet appareil au châssis de la voiture après l'installation.**

Remarques:

- Remplacer le fusible par un de la valeur précisée. Si le fusible saute souvent, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC.
- Il est recommandé de connecter des enceintes avec une puissance de plus de 45 W (les enceintes arrière et les enceintes avant, avec une impédance comprise entre **4 Ω et 8 Ω**). Si la puissance maximum est inférieure à 45 W, changez "AMP GAIN" pour éviter d'endommager vos enceintes (voir page 24 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS).
- Pour éviter les court-circuits, couvrir les bornes des fils qui ne sont PAS UTILISÉS avec de la bande isolante.
- Le dissipateur de chaleur devient très chaud après usage. Faire attention de ne pas le toucher en retirant cet appareil.

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



PRECAUTIONS sur l'alimentation et la connexion des enceintes:

- **NE CONNECTEZ PAS les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation à la batterie; sinon, l'appareil serait sérieusement endommagé.**
- AVANT de connecter les fils d'enceintes du cordon d'alimentation aux enceintes, vérifiez le câblage des enceintes de votre voiture.

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):**
2-channel signal is emitted.
When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)
- **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):**
Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)
To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" correctly. (See page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

*1 Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" and "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

À propos des sons reproduits par les prises arrière

- **Par les prises analogiques (Sortie des enceintes/LINE OUT):**
Un signal à 2 canaux est sorti.
Lors de la lecture d'un disque codé multicanaux, les signaux multicanaux sont sous mixés. (AUDIO—MIXAGE DEMULTIPLICATION: voir page 26 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)
- **Par la sortie DIGITAL OUT (optique):**
Les signaux numériques (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) sont sortis par cette prise. (Pour plus de détails, voir page 26 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)
Pour reproduire les sons multicanaux, Dolby Digital ou DTS par exemple, connectez à cette prise un amplificateur ou un décodeur compatible avec ces sources multicanaux, et réglez "SORTIE AUDIO NUM." correctement. (Voir page 26 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)

*1 Fabriqué sous licence de Dolby Laboratories. Le terme Dolby et le sigle double D sont des marques commerciales de Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" et "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" sont des marques de commerce de Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

TROUBLESHOOTING

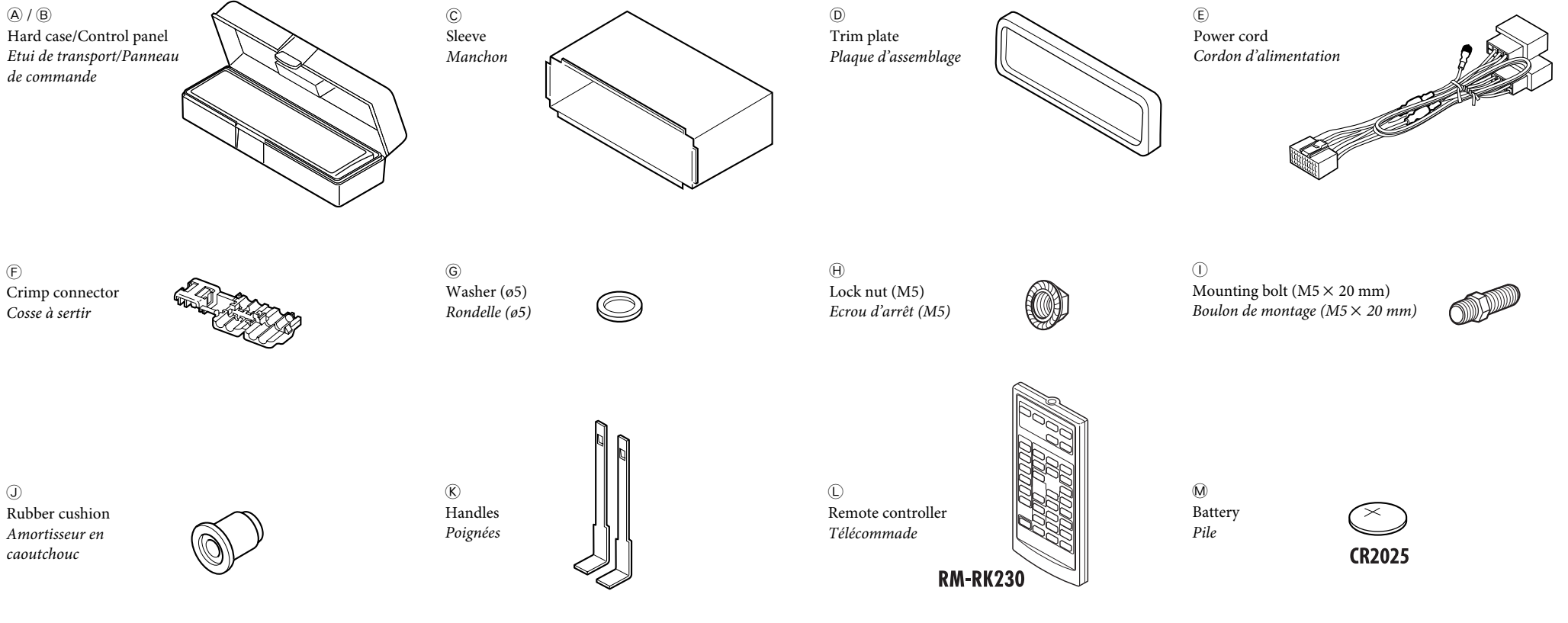
- **The fuse blows.**
* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?
- **Power cannot be turned on.**
* Is the yellow lead connected?
- **No sound from the speakers.**
* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?
- **Sound is distorted.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **Noise interfere with sounds.**
* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?
- **Unit becomes hot.**
* Is the speaker output lead grounded?
* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?
- **This unit does not work at all.**
* Have you reset your unit?

EN CAS DE DIFFICULTES

- **Le fusible saute.**
* Les fils rouge et noir sont-ils raccordés correctement?
- **L'appareil ne peut pas être mise sous tension.**
* Le fil jaune est-elle raccordée?
- **Pas de son des enceintes.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il court-circuité?
- **Le son est déformé.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
* Les bornes "-" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- **Interférence avec les sons.**
* La prise arrière de mise à la terre est-elle connectée au châssis de la voiture avec un cordon court et épais?
- **L'appareil devient chaud.**
* Le fil de sortie d'enceinte est-il à la masse?
* Les bornes "-" des enceintes gauche et droit sont-elles mises ensemble à la masse?
- **Cet appareil ne fonctionne pas du tout.**
* Avez-vous réinitialisé votre appareil?

Parts list for installation and connection

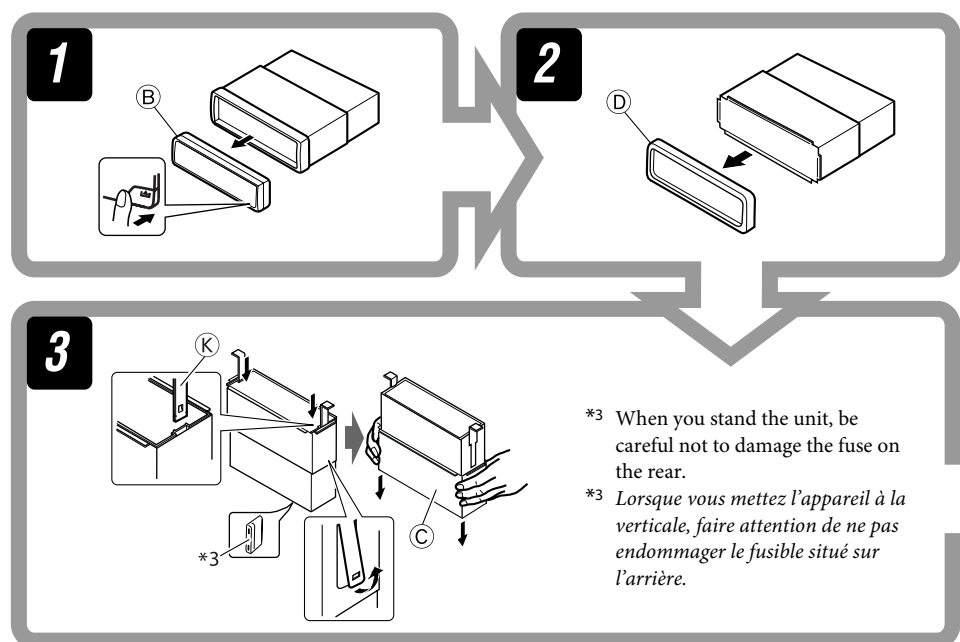
If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.



INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

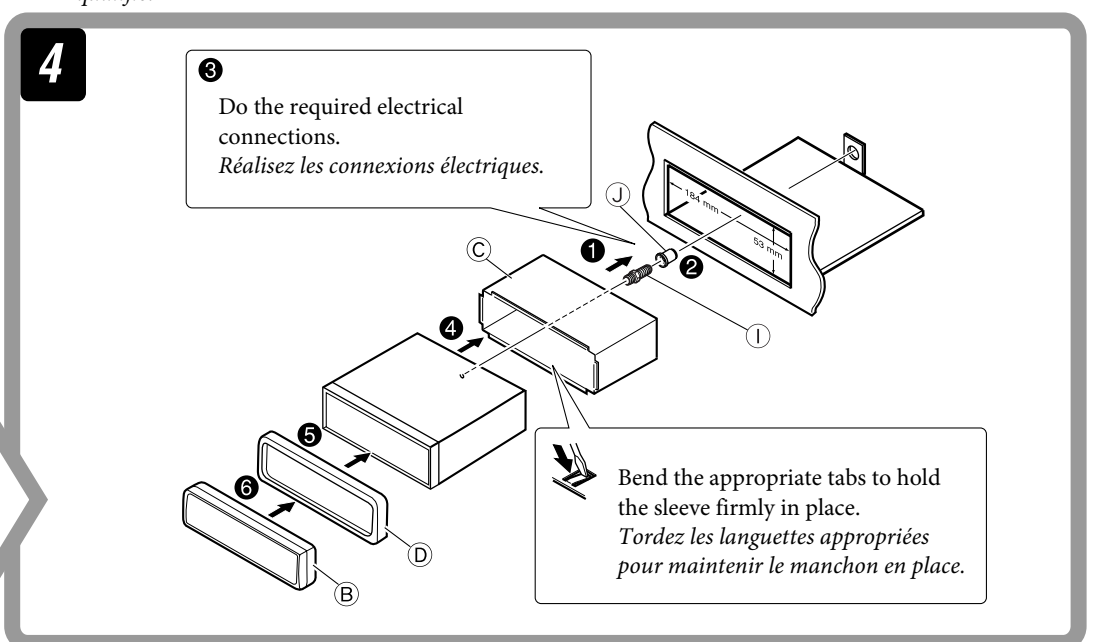
- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.



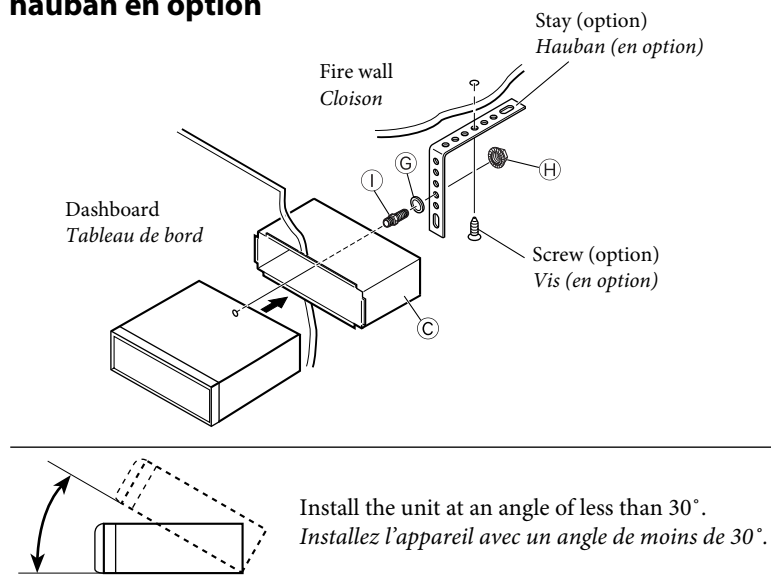
INSTALLATION (MONTAGE DANS LE TABLEAU DE BORD)

L'illustration suivante est un exemple d'installation typique. Si vous avez des questions ou avez besoin d'information sur des kits d'installation, consulter votre revendeur d'autoradios JVC ou une compagnie d'approvisionnement.

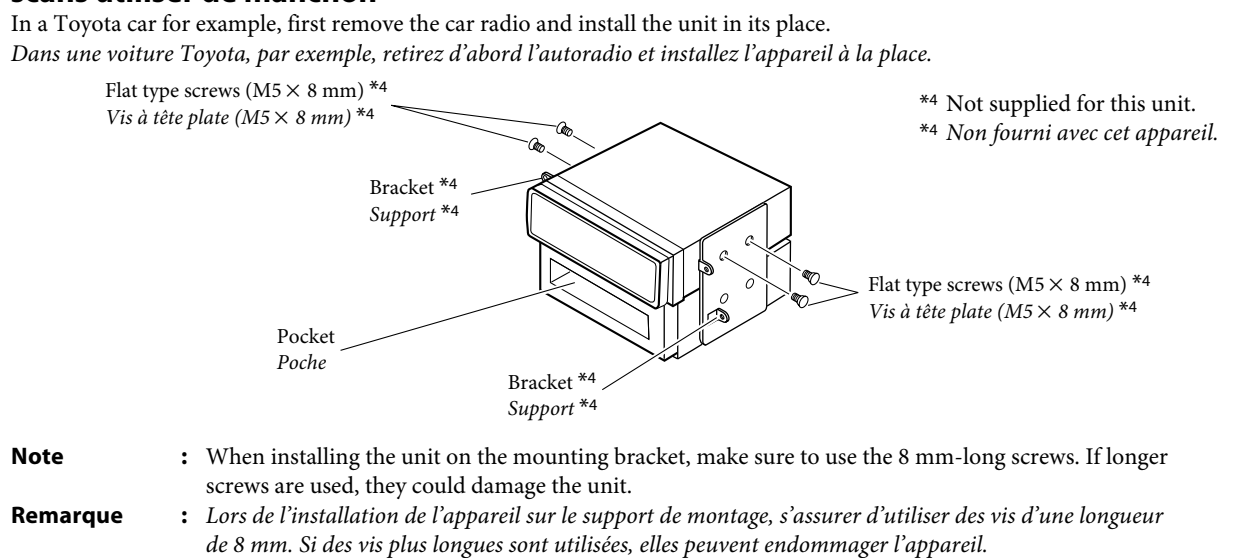
- Si l'on n'est pas sûr de pouvoir installer correctement cet appareil, le faire installer par un technicien qualifié.



When using the optional stay / Lors de l'utilisation du hauban en option

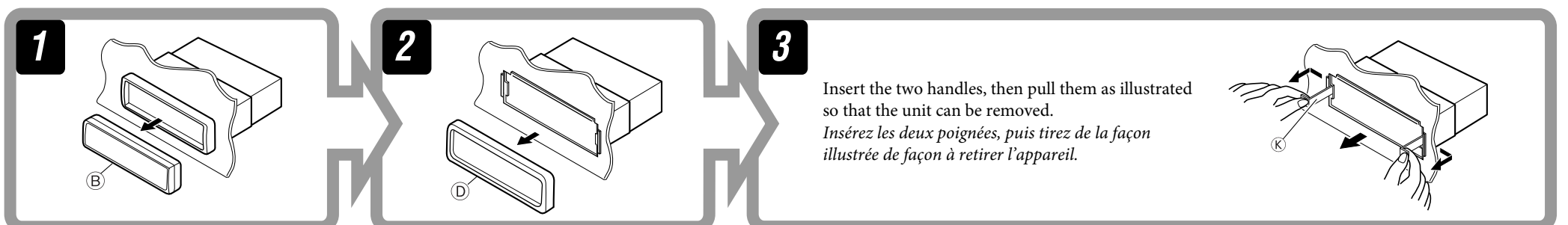


When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Lors de l'installation de l'appareil sans utiliser de manchon



Removing the unit

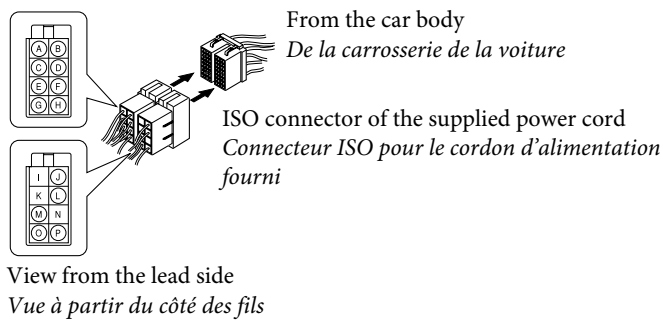
Before removing the unit, release the rear section.



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Si votre voiture est équipée d'un connecteur ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Connectez les connecteurs ISO comme montré sur l'illustration.

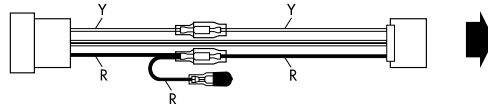


For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile / Pour certaine voiture VW/Audi ou Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.
- Vous aurez peut-être besoin de modifier le câblage du cordon d'alimentation fourni comme montré sur l'illustration.
- Contactez votre revendeur automobile autorisé avant d'installer l'appareil.

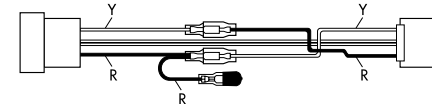
Original wiring / Câblage original



ISO connector
Connecteur ISO

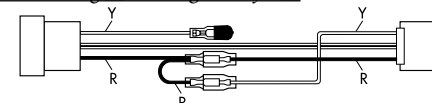
Y: Yellow
Jaune R: Red
Rouge

Modified wiring 1 / Câblage modifié 1



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Utilisez le câblage modifié 2 si l'appareil ne se met pas sous tension.

Modified wiring 2 / Câblage modifié 2



B Connections without using the ISO connectors / Connexions sans l'utilisation des connecteurs ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.

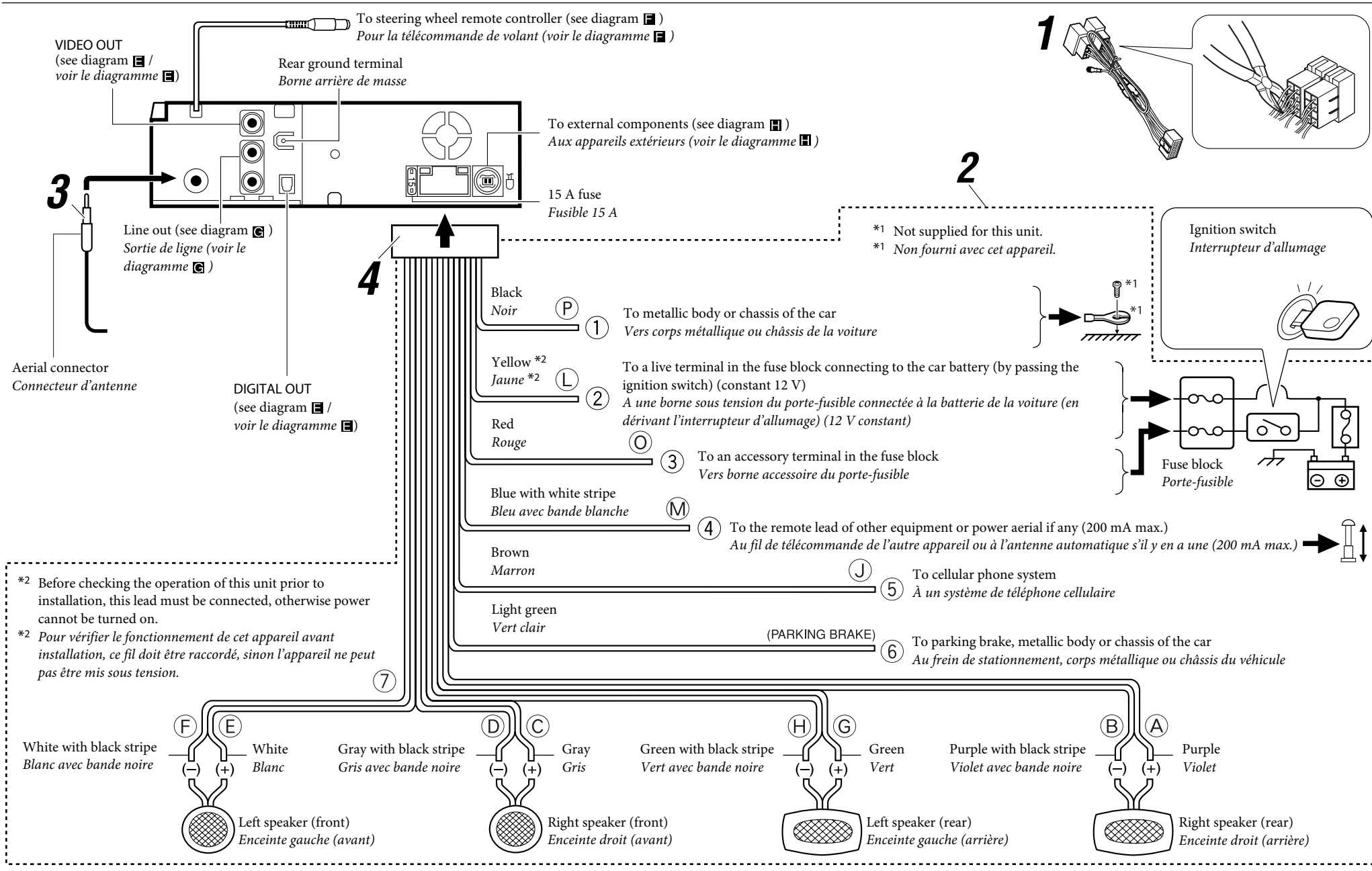
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

- 1 Cut the ISO connector.
- 2 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 3 Connect the aerial cord.
- 4 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Avant de commencer la connexion: Vérifiez attentivement le câblage du véhicule. Une connexion incorrecte peut endommager sérieusement l'appareil.

Le fil du cordon d'alimentation et ceux des connecteurs du châssis de la voiture peuvent être différents en couleur.

- 1 Coupez le connecteur ISO.
- 2 Connectez les fils colorés du cordon d'alimentation dans l'ordre spécifié sur l'illustration ci-dessous.
- 3 Connectez le cordon d'antenne.
- 4 Finalement, connectez le faisceau de fils à l'appareil.



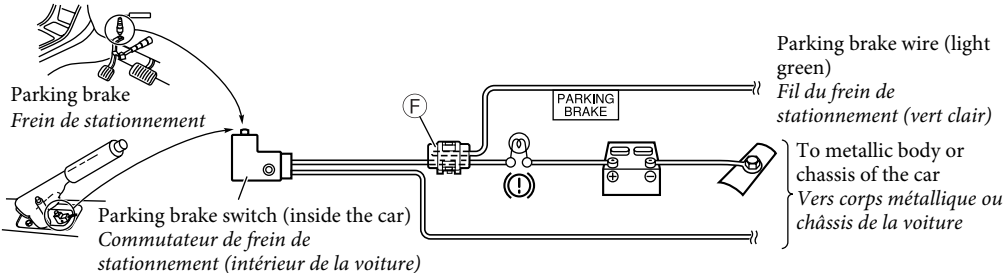
C Connecting the parking brake wire / Connexion du cordon de frein de stationnement

When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver

Connect the parking brake wire to the parking brake system built in the car.

Lorsqu'on installe le moniteur à un emplacement où il peut être vu du conducteur

Connectez le fil de frein de stationnement au système de frein de stationnement.

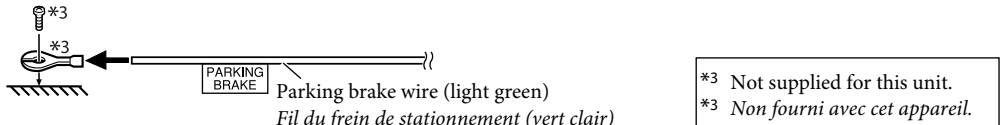


When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver

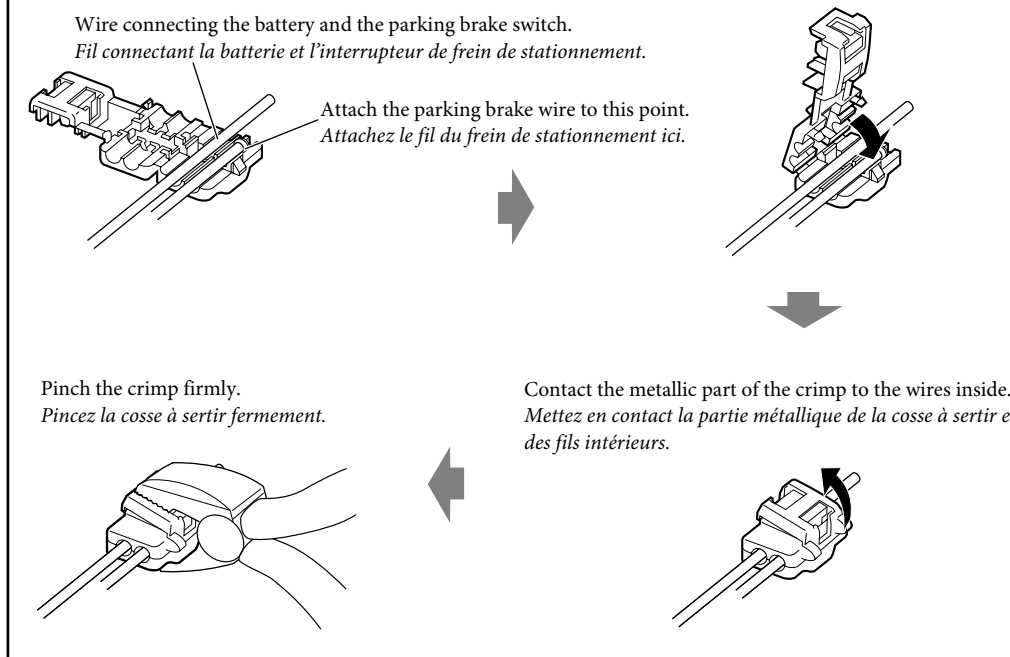
Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis of the car.

Lorsqu'on installe le moniteur à un emplacement où il ne peut pas être vu du conducteur

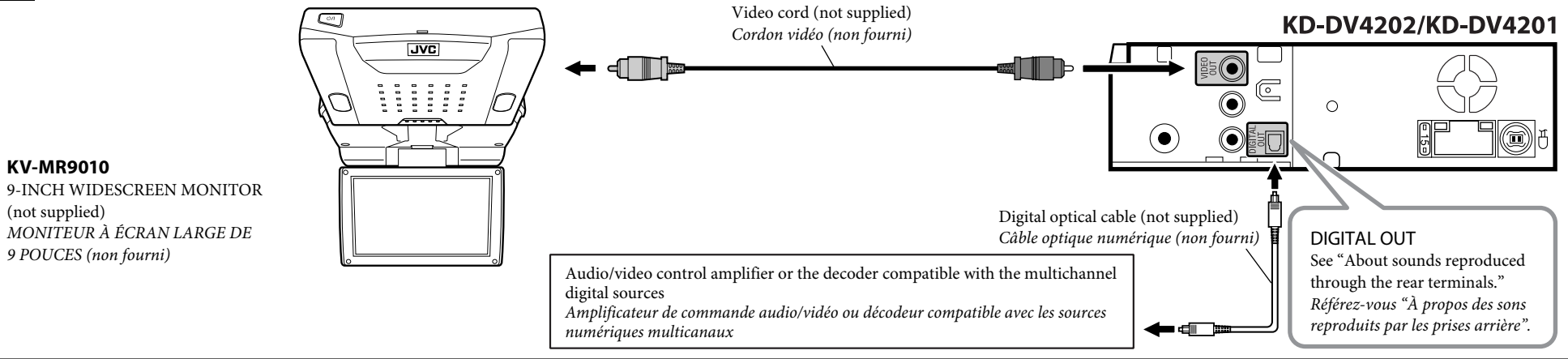
Connectez le fil du frein de stationnement au corps métallique ou châssis du véhicule.



D Connecting the crimp connector / Connexion de la cosse sertie



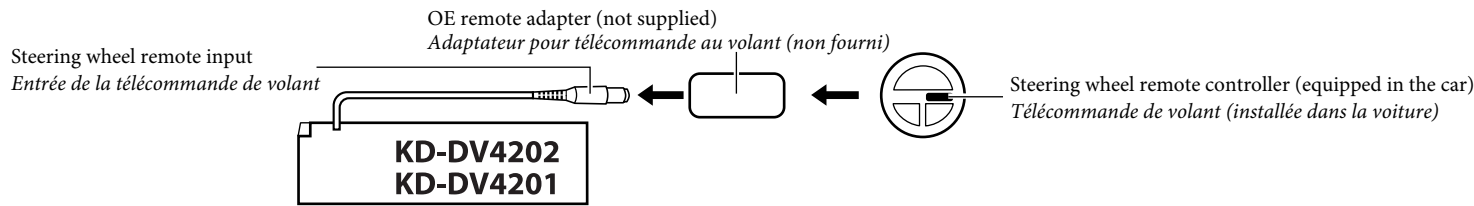
E Required connections for DVD playback / Connexions requises pour la lecture de DVD



F Connecting to the steering wheel remote controller / Connexion de la télécommande de volant

If your car is equipped with the steering wheel remote controller, you can operate this unit using the controller. To do it, a JVC's OE remote adapter (not supplied) which matches with your car is required. Consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer for details.

Si votre voiture est munie d'une télécommande de volant, vous pouvez commander cet autoradio en utilisant la télécommande. Pour le faire, un adaptateur pour télécommande au volant JVC (non fourni) correspondant à votre voiture est nécessaire. Consultez votre revendeur d'autoradio JVC pour les détails.



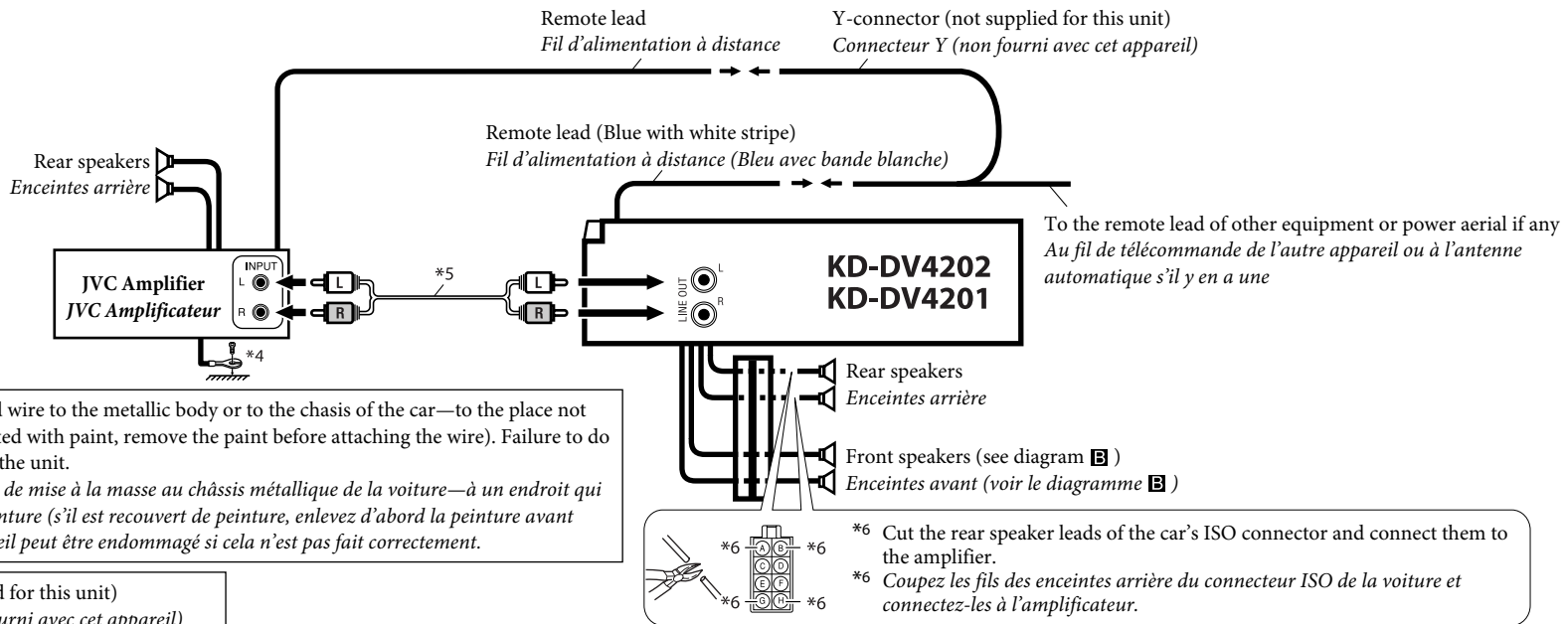
G Connecting the external amplifier / Connexion d'un amplificateur extérieur

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

Vous pouvez connecter un amplificateur pour améliorer votre système autoradio.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

- Connectez le fil de commande à distance (bleu avec bande blanche) au fil de commande à distance de l'autre appareil de façon qu'il puisse être commandé via cet appareil.
- **Déconnectez les enceintes de cet appareil et connectez-les à l'amplificateur. Laissez les fils d'enceintes de cet appareil inutilisés.**



*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place not coated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.
*4 Attachez solidement le fil de mise à la masse au châssis métallique de la voiture—à un endroit qui n'est pas recouvert de peinture (s'il est recouvert de peinture, enlevez d'abord la peinture avant d'attacher le fil). L'appareil peut être endommagé si cela n'est pas fait correctement.

*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)
*5 Cordon de signal (non fourni avec cet appareil)

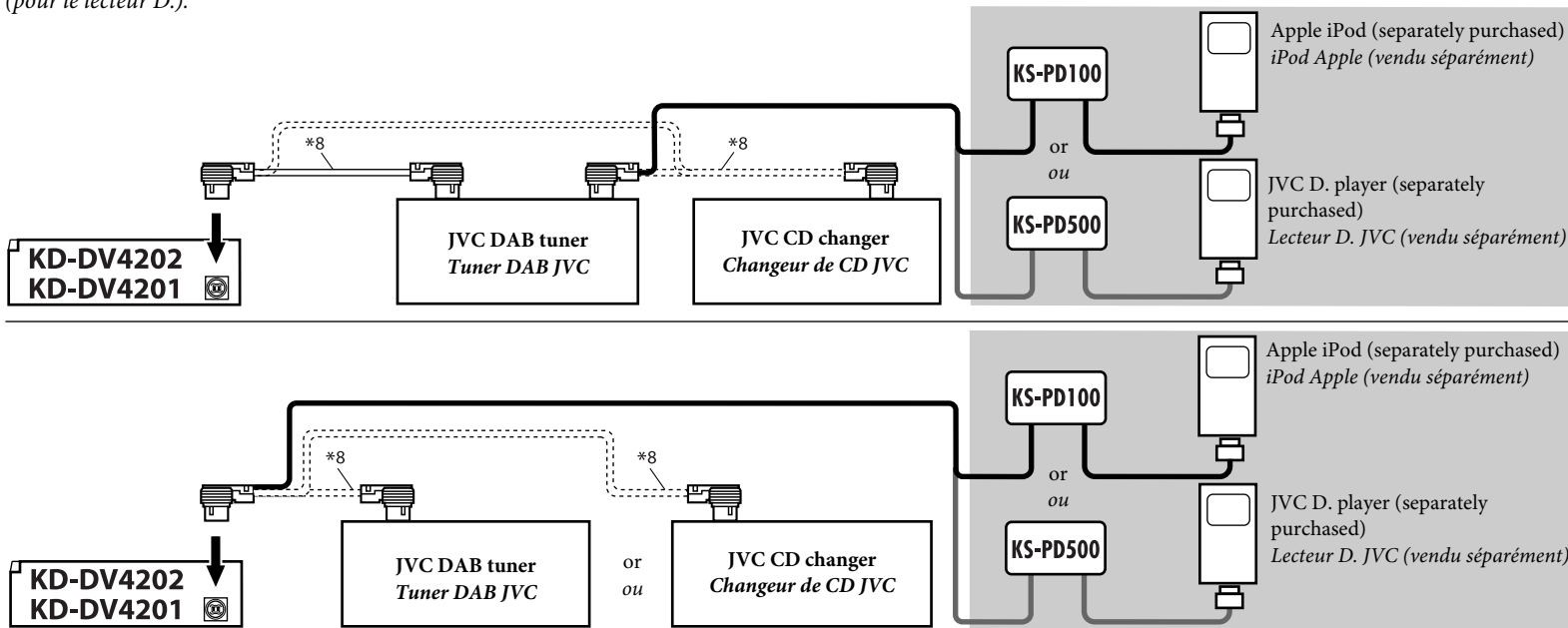
*6 Cut the rear speaker leads of the car's ISO connector and connect them to the amplifier.
*6 Coupez les fils des enceintes arrière du connecteur ISO de la voiture et connectez-les à l'amplificateur.

H Connecting the external components / Connexion des appareils extérieurs

CD changer, DAB tuner, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / Changeur de CD, tuner DAB, iPod, Apple® ou lecteur D. JVC

• Set "CHANGER" for the external input setting (See page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Choisissez "CHANGER" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieure (Voir page 24 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)

You can connect these components in series as illustrated below. The iPod*7 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).
Vous pouvez connecter ces appareils en série comme montrée sur l'illustration. Le iPod*7 ou le lecteur D. peut être connecté en utilisant un adaptateur d'interface (non fourni)—KS-PD100 (pour iPod) ou KS-PD500 (pour le lecteur D.).



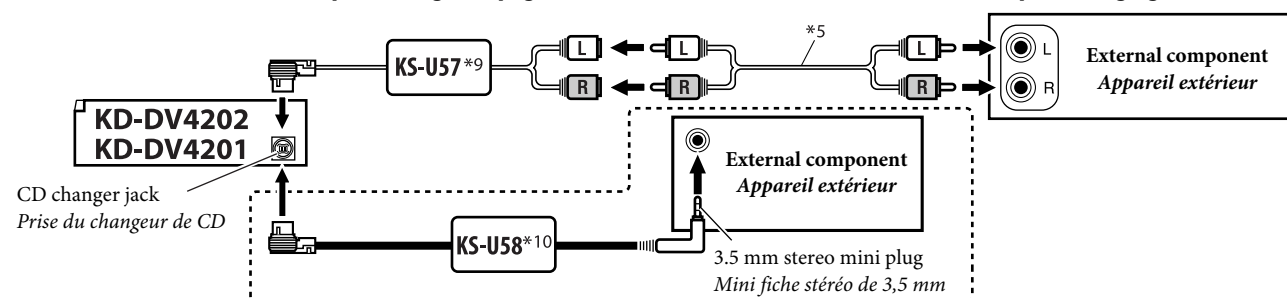
CAUTION / PRECAUTION:
Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
Avant de connecter les appareils extérieurs, assurez-vous que l'appareil est hors tension.

*7 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
*7 iPod est une marque de commerce d'Apple Computer, Inc., enregistrée aux États-Unis et dans les autres pays.

*8 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer or DAB tuner
*8 Cordon de connexion fourni avec votre changeur de CD ou tuner DAB

Other external component / Autre appareil extérieur

• Set "EXT IN" for the external input setting (See page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Choisissez "EXT IN" pour le réglage de l'entrée extérieure (Voir page 24 du MANUAL D'INSTRUCTIONS.)



*9 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*9 Adaptateur d'entrée de ligne KS-U57 (non fourni avec cet appareil)

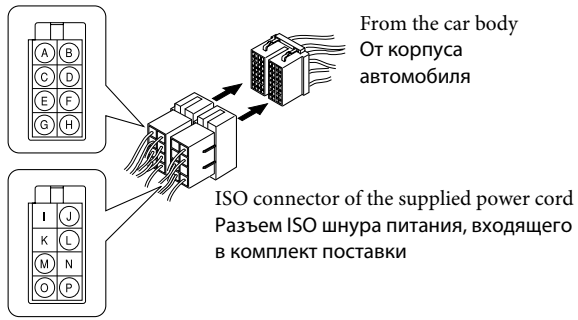
*10 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)
*10 Adaptateur d'entrée AUX KS-U58 (non fourni avec cet appareil)

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

ЭЛЕКТРИЧЕСКИЕ ПОДКЛЮЧЕНИЯ

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Если автомобиль оснащен разъемом ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Подключите разъемы ISO, как показано на рисунке.



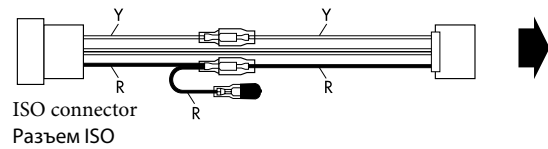
View from the lead side
Вид со стороны выводов

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile / Для некоторых автомобилей VW/Audi или Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

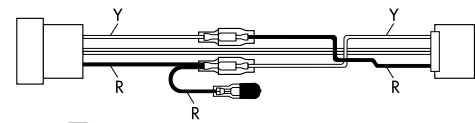
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.
- Возможно, потребуется изменить схему соединений для прилагаемого шнура питания, как показано на рисунке.
- Перед установкой приемника обратитесь к авторизованному агенту по продажам автомобильных систем.

Original wiring / Исходная схема соединений



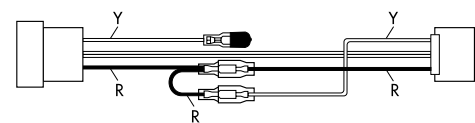
Y: Yellow / Желтый
R: Red / Красный

Modified wiring 1 / Преобразованная схема соединений 1



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Если приемник не включается, используйте преобразованную схему соединений 2.

Modified wiring 2 / Преобразованная схема соединений 2



B Connections without using the ISO connectors / Подключение без использования разъемов ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.

The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

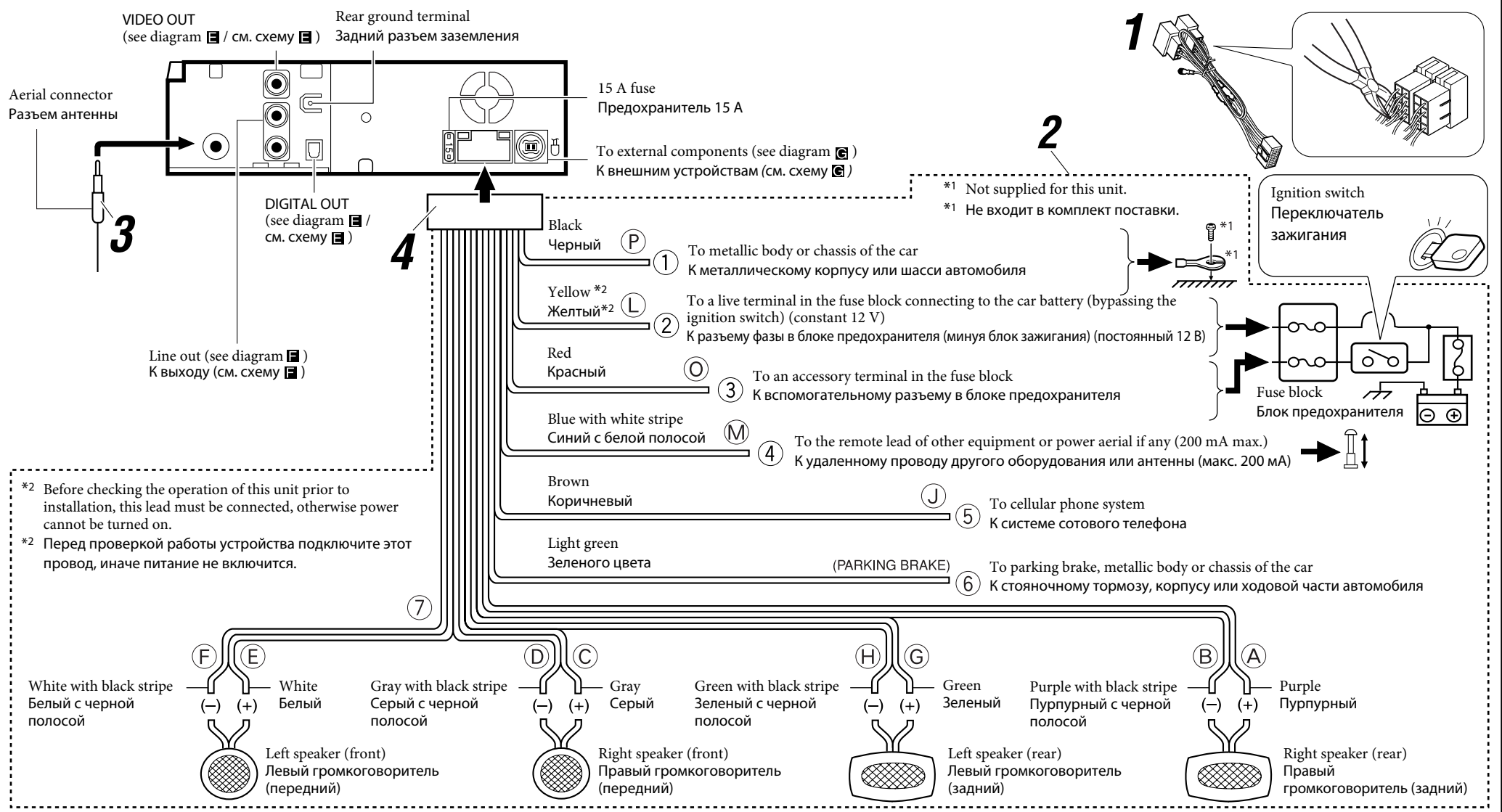
- 1 Cut the ISO connector.
- 2 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 3 Connect the aerial cord.
- 4 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Перед началом подключений: Тщательно проверьте проводку в автомобиле.

Неправильное подключение может привести к серьезному повреждению устройства.

Жилы силового кабеля и жилы соединителя от кузова автомобиля могут быть разного цвета.

- 1 Обрежьте разъем ISO.
- 2 Подсоедините цветные провода шнура питания в указанном ниже порядке.
- 3 Подключите кабель антенны.
- 4 В последнюю очередь подключите электропроводку к устройству.

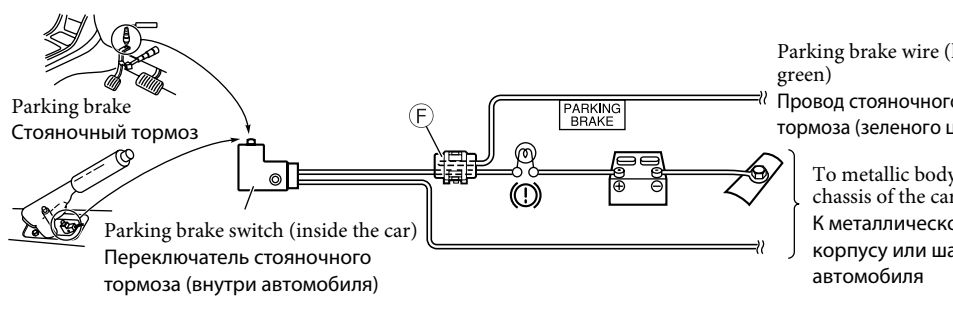


*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.
*2 Перед проверкой работы устройства подключите этот провод, иначе питание не включится.

*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*1 Не входит в комплект поставки.

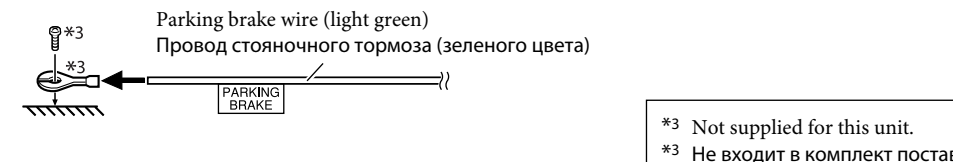
C Connecting the parking brake wire / Подключение провода стояночного тормоза

When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver
При установке монитора в месте, видимом водителю



When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver
При установке монитора в месте, не видимом водителем

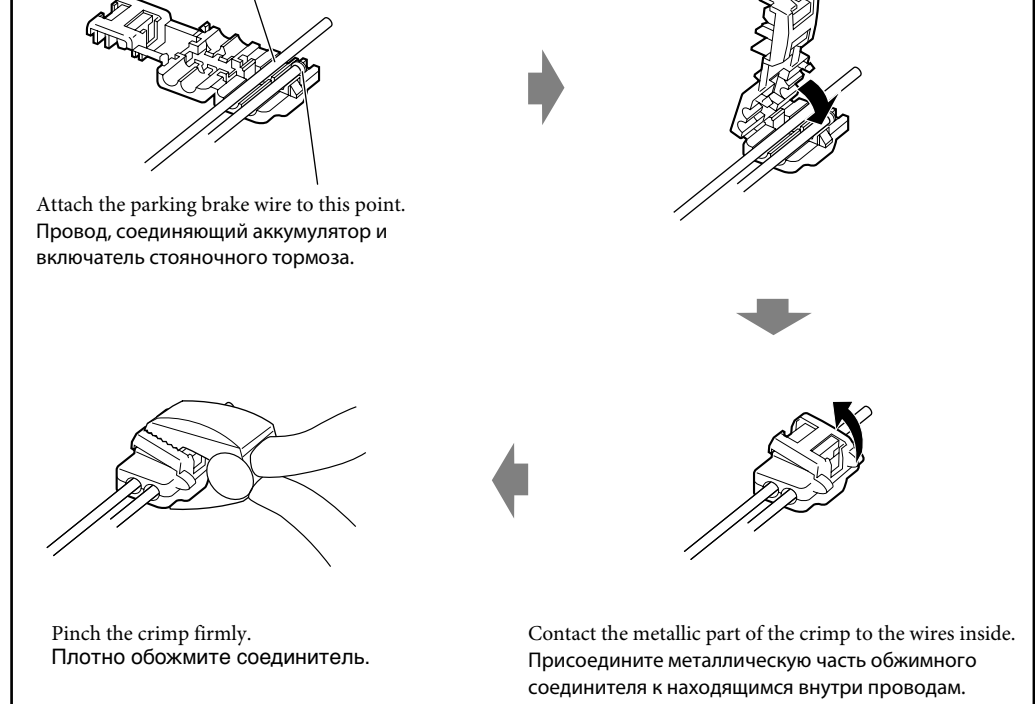
Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis of the car.
Подключить провод стояночного тормоза к металлу корпуса или ходовой части автомобиля.



*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 Не входит в комплект поставки.

D Connecting the crimp connector / Подключение обжимного разъема

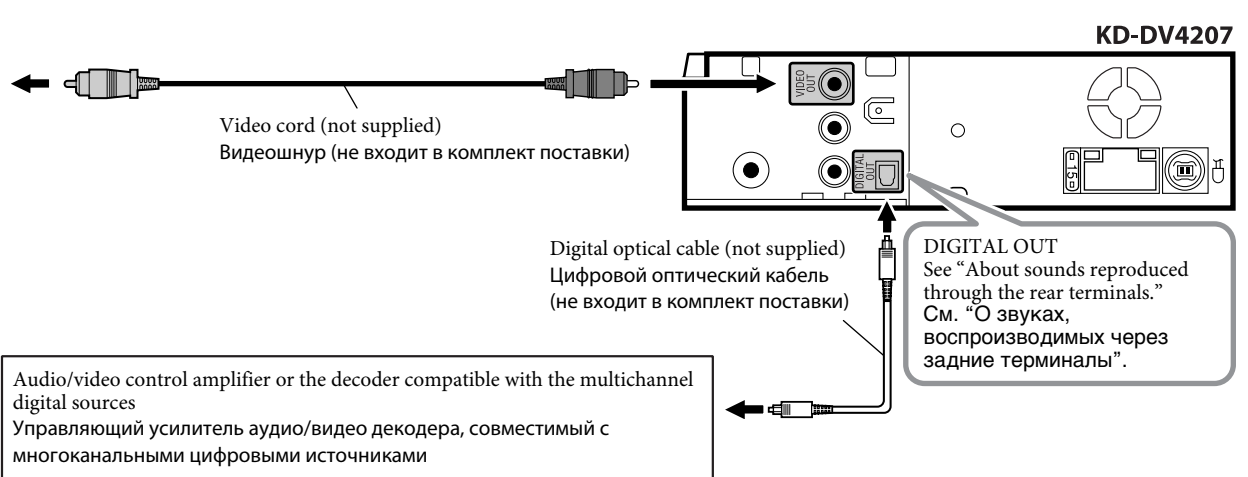
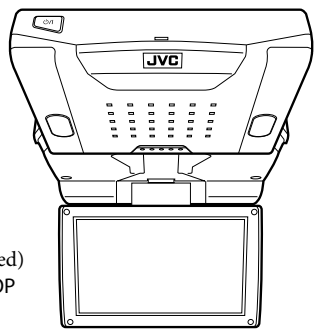
Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
Подключить провод стояночного тормоза к этой точке.



E Required connections for DVD playback / Необходимые подключения для воспроизведения DVD

KV-MR9010

9-INCH WIDESCREEN MONITOR (not supplied)
9-ДЮЙМОВЫЙ ШИРОКОЭКРАННЫЙ МОНИТОР
(не входит в комплект поставки)



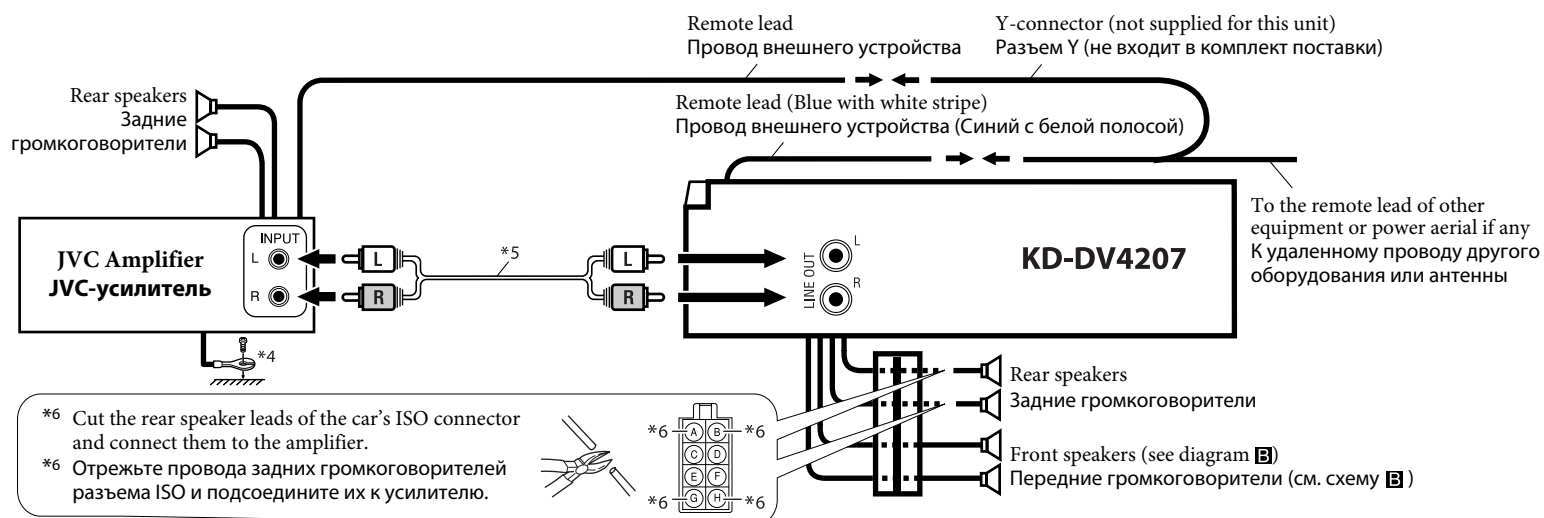
F Connecting the external amplifier / Подключение внешних усилителей

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Можно подключить усилители для обновления автомобильной стереосистемы.

- Подсоедините провод внешнего устройства (синий с белой полосой) к проводу внешнего устройства другого оборудования так, чтобы им можно было управлять с этого устройства.
- **Отсоедините громкоговорители от данного устройства, подключите их к усилителю. Оставьте провода громкоговорителей данного устройства неиспользованными.**



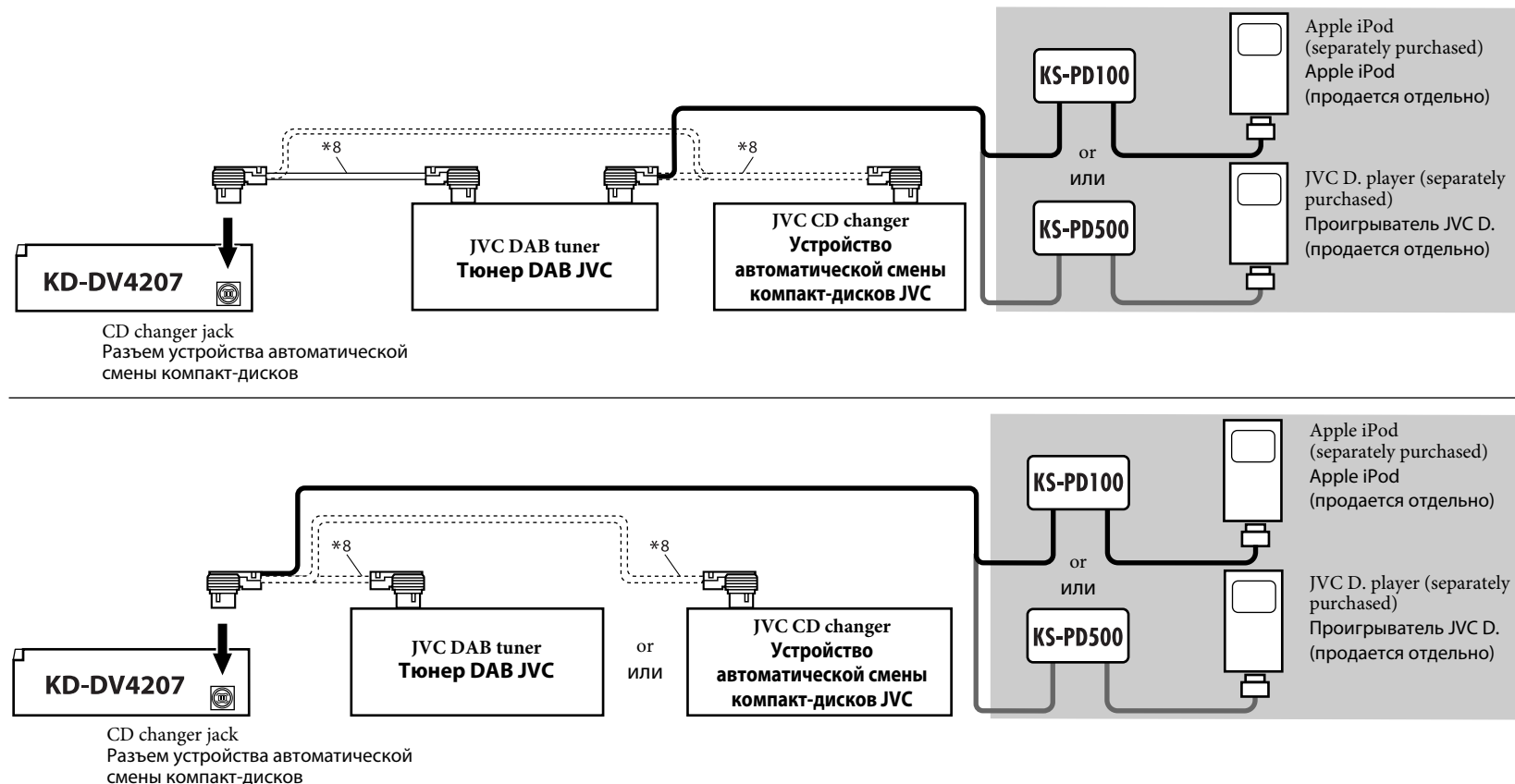
G Connecting other external components / Подключение внешних устройств

CD changer, DAB tuner, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / Устройство автоматической смены компакт-дисков, тюнер DAB, Apple iPod® или проигрыватель JVC D.

- Set "CHANGER" for the external input setting (See page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Установите для внешнего входа значение "CHANGER" (См. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 24.)

You can connect these components in series as illustrated below. The iPod*7 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

Эти внешние устройства можно подключать параллельно, как показано на рисунке. Проигрыватель iPod*7 или D. можно подключить с помощью интерфейсного адаптера (не входит в комплект поставки)—KS-PD100 (для iPod) или KS-PD500 (для проигрывателя D.).



CAUTION / ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЕ:

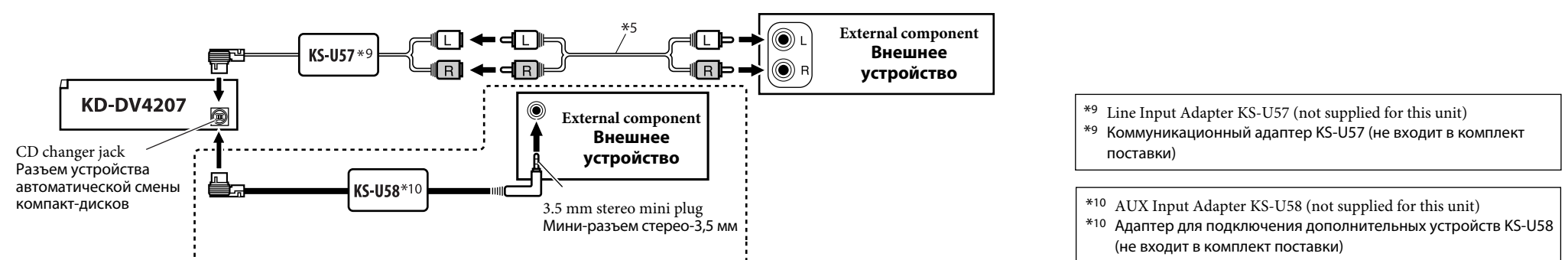
- Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
- Перед подключением внешних компонентов убедитесь в том, что устройство выключено.

*7 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

*7 iPod является торговой маркой Apple Computer, Inc., зарегистрированной в США и других странах.

Other external component / Подключение внешних устройств

- Set "EXT IN" for the external input setting (See page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Установите для внешнего входа значение "EXT IN" (См. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 24.)

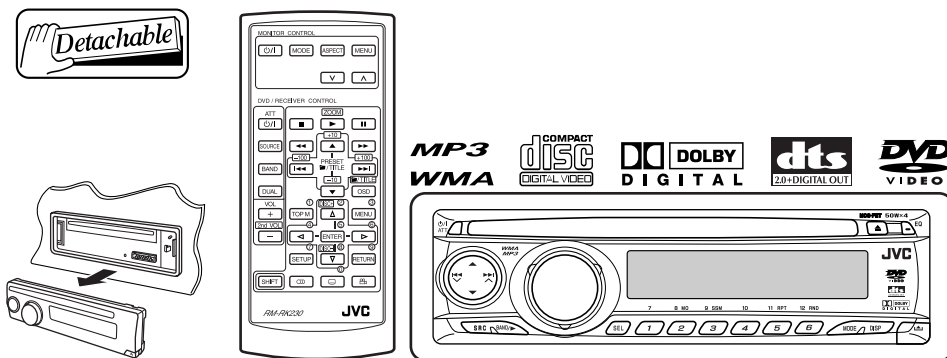


JVC



DVD/CD RECEIVER

KD-DV4204/KD-DV4203



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 5.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

INSTRUCTIONS

GET0370-001A
[U]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

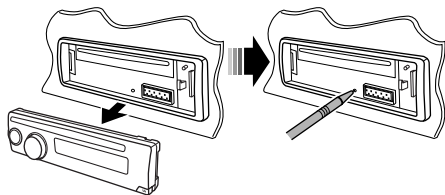
IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	ADVARSEL: Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	WARNING: Synlig och osynlig laserstråling när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)	VARO: Avaruudessa ja suoja-alkutuksessa chittettuna tai viallisena olot altistaa näkövälle ja näkömättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteien kohdistamista suoraan itseesi. (t)
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

How to reset your unit



- Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

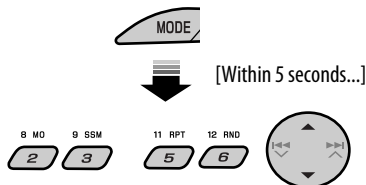
How to forcibly eject a disc



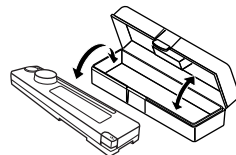
- If this does not work, reset your unit.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

How to use functions mode

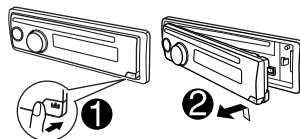
If you press MODE, the unit goes into functions mode, then the number buttons and ▲/▼ buttons work as different function buttons.



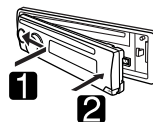
How to detach/attach the control panel



Detaching...



Attaching...



WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- **DO NOT** install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate the unit while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.





Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

<i>Introduction</i>	4
■ OPERATIONS	
<i>Basic operations</i>	
• <i>Control panel</i>	6
• <i>Remote controller (RM-RK230)</i>	7
<i>Listening to the radio</i>	9
<i>Disc operations</i>	10
■ EXTERNAL DEVICES	
<i>Listening to the CD changer</i>	16
<i>Listening to the iPod®/D. player</i>	17
<i>Listening to the other external components</i>	18
■ SETTINGS	
<i>Selecting a preset sound mode—C-EQ</i>	19
<i>General settings—PSM</i>	20
<i>DVD setup menu</i>	21
<i>Assigning names to the stations</i>	24
<i>Maintenance</i>	25
<i>More about this unit</i>	26
<i>Troubleshooting</i>	29
<i>Specifications</i>	32

Introduction

Disc type	✓ OK Playable	✗ NO Unplayable
 DVD	DVD Video, Dual Disc (DVD side only), DVD-R*/-RW, +R/+RW • Recorded in DVD-Video format only and in PAL/NTSC color system	DVD Audio, Dual Disc (non-DVD side), DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM, DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW • Recorded in DVD-VR format
 VCD	Video CD CD-R/-RW	SVCD (Super Video CD)
 MP3/WMA	DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW, DVD-ROM • Compliant to UDF bridge format	—
	CD-R/-RW • Compliant to ISO 9660 level 1, ISO 9660 level 2, Romeo, Joliet	—
 CD	Audio CD, CD Text CD-R/-RW • Compliant to CD-DA format	CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD

• It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video mode only) discs. However, the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.

* DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “5.”

Examples:

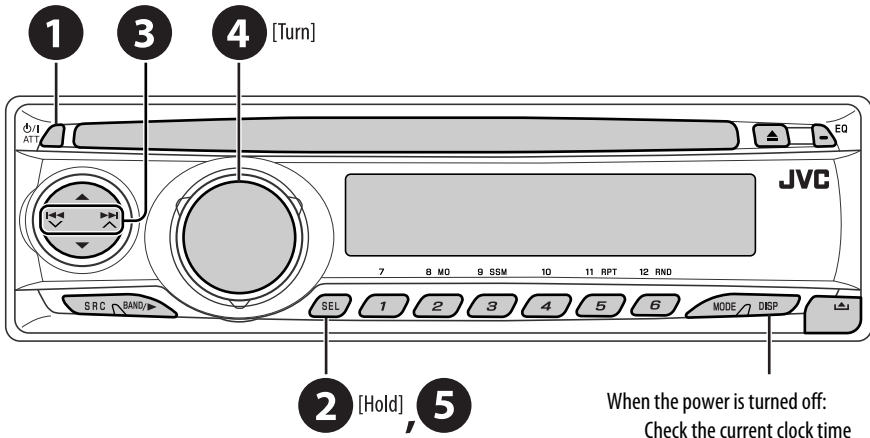


If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“REGION CODE ERROR!” appears on the monitor.

Before operating the unit — Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

• See also page 20.



When the power is turned off:
Check the current clock time
When the power is turned on:
Change the display information

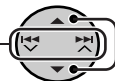
- 1** Turn on the power.
- 2** Enter the PSM settings.
- 3** ⇒ **4** **Cancel the display demonstrations**
Select “DEMO,” then “DEMO OFF.”

Set the clock
Select “CLOCK H” (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select “CLOCK M” (minute), then adjust the minute.

- 5** **Finish the procedure.**

Basic operations — Control panel

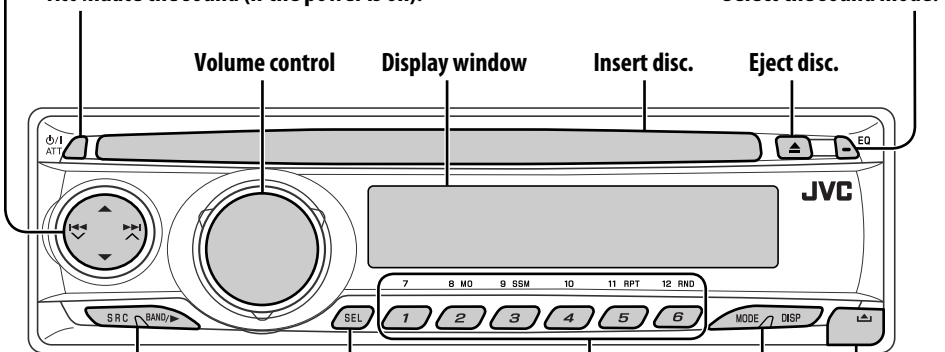
- **FM/AM:** Search for station.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/track.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Select track.



- **FM/AM:** Select preset station.
- **DISC:** Select folder.
Also functions as +10/-10 buttons after pressing MODE to skip 10 chapters/tracks at a time.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Enter the main menu/Pause or stop playback/Confirm selection.

- Turn on the power.
- Turn off the power [Hold].
- Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

Select the sound mode.



Adjust the sound mode.
Hold to enter the PSM settings.

Detach the panel.

- **FM/AM:** Select preset station.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/title/folder/track/disc (for CD changer).



Select the source.

FM/AM → **DISC*** → **CD-CH*/IPOD*/D.PLAYER*** (or **EXT IN**) → (back to the beginning)

* You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.



- **FM/AM:** Select the bands.
- **DISC:** Start playback.



Enter functions mode.

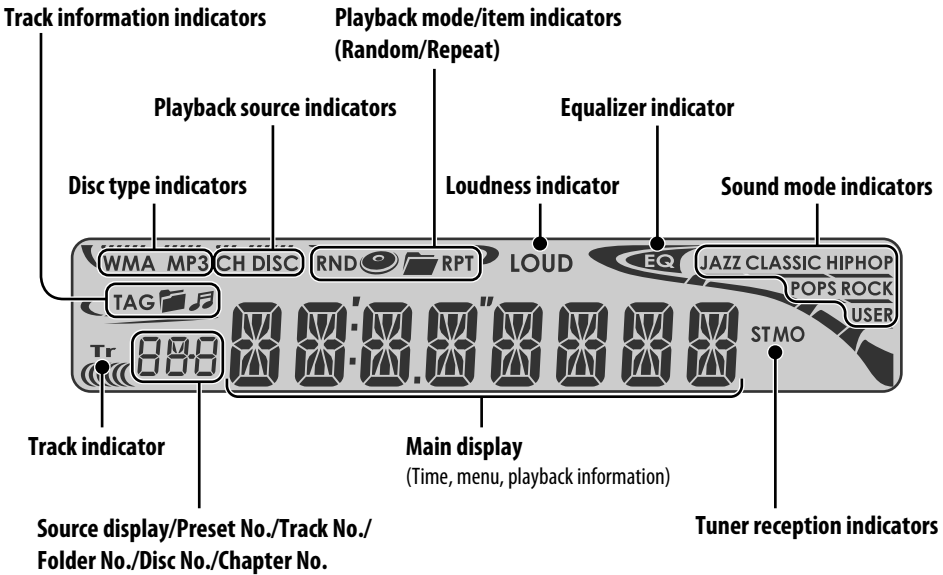
Press MODE, then one of the following buttons (within 5 seconds)...

- MO:** Turn on/off monaural reception.
- SSM:** Automatic station presetting.
- RPT:** Select repeat play.
- RND:** Select random play.



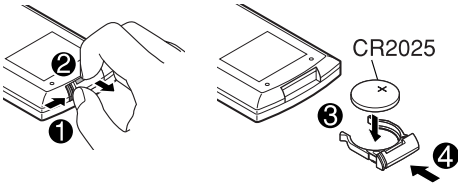
Change the display information.

Display window



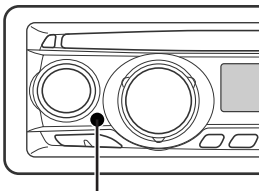
Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK230)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

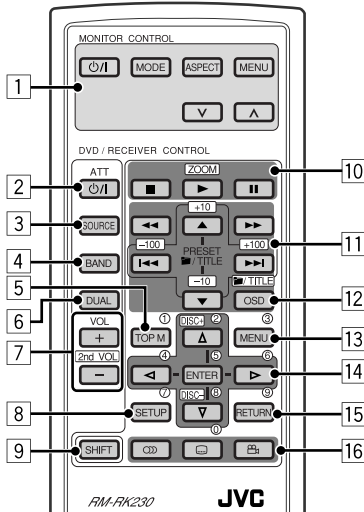


Remote sensor

Warning: To prevent accidents and damage

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Continued on the next page



MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons
- Used for a JVC monitor—KV-MR9010, KV-MH6510, KV-M706, or KV-M705.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 Turns on/off the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- 3 Selects the source.
- 4 Selects the FM/AM bands.
- 5*1
- DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 6 Not applicable for this unit.
- 7 Adjusts the volume level.
- 2nd VOL: Not applicable for this unit.
- 8*1 Enters DVD setup menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10
- (stop), (play), (pause)
 - (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button (see page 12).
 - Not applicable for CD changer/iPod/D. player operations.

11*2 **For advanced disc operations:**

- (stop)/TITLE (up) / (down) DVD: Selects the titles. MP3/WMA: Selects the folders if included.
- (left) / (right): Reverse skip/forward skip.
- (left) / (right): Reverse search/forward search (not applicable for CD changer operations).

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- PRESET (up) / (down) Changes the preset stations.
- (left) / (right)
 - Searches for the stations if pressed briefly.
 - Manual searches if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- (up) / (down)
 - (down): Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
 - (up): Enters the main menu. (Now (up)/(down)/(left)/(right) work as the menu selecting buttons.)*3
- (left) / (right) (in menu selecting mode)
 - Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press (down) to confirm the selection.)
 - Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

- 12
- Shows the on-screen bar.
 - Also function as the (stop)/TITLE button when pressed with SHIFT button (see pages 12 and 13).
- 13*1
- DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 14*1
- Makes selection/settings.
 - DISC +/- buttons: Changes discs when the source is “CD-CH.”
- 15*1 RETURN button
- 16
- DVD: Selects audio language ((O)), subtitles ((...)), angle ((O)).
 - VCD: Selects audio channel ((O)).

*1 Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

– FM/AM: Selects preset stations.

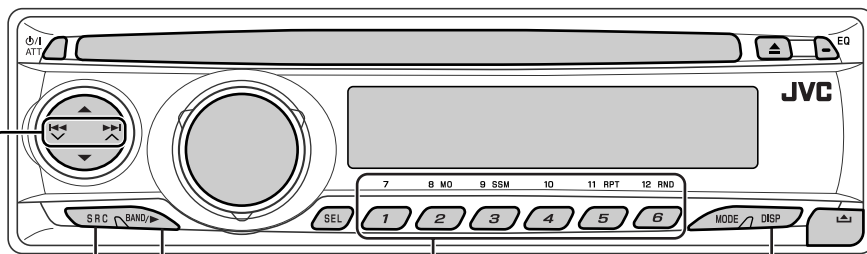
– DISC: Selects chapter/title/folder/track.

*2 Functions as +10/-10/+100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 (up): Returns to the previous menu.

(down): Confirms the selection.

Listening to the radio



3

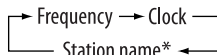
1

2

Select preset station.

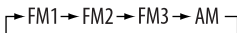
Change the display information

* If no name is assigned to a station, "NO NAME" appears. To assign a name, see page 24.



1 Select "FM/AM."

2 Select the bands.



3 Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.

- Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2 → MONO OFF (Canceled)

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

- MO indicator lights up.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset six stations for each band.

1

2

3 [Hold]



Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1

2

3 [Hold]

Disc operations

Before performing any operations...

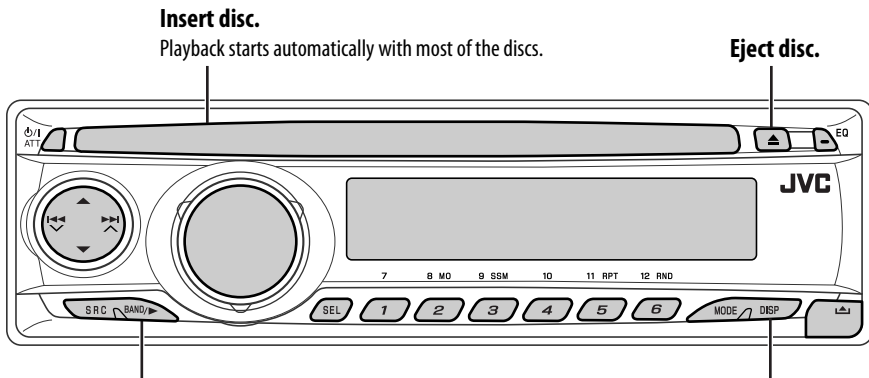
Turn on the monitor for playing a DVD or VCD. If you turn on the monitor, you can also control playback of other discs by referring to the monitor screen. (See pages 13 – 15.)

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc does not have any disc menu (when playback stops), all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If “⊘” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing “⊘,” operations will not be accepted.



Start playback if necessary.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

*1 If the file does not have Tag information or "TAG DISP" is set to "TAG OFF" (see page 20), folder name and file name appear. TAG indicator will not light up.

*2 "NO NAME" appears for an audio CD.

Change the display information



Elapsed playing time → Clock → Current title and chapter number



Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number





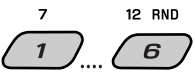




Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number
Track title (file name*1) ← Album name/performer (folder name*1)




Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number
Track title*2 ← Disc title/performer*2








Operations using the control panel

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

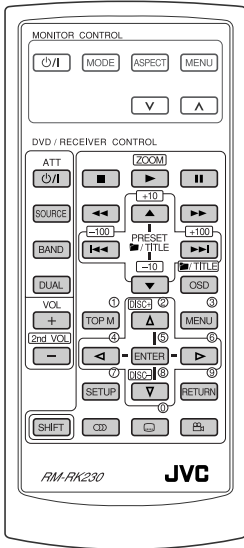
Disc type			 (Number buttons)
 DVD	<i>Press:</i> Select chapter <i>Hold:</i> Reverse/fast-forward chapter*	—	During stop: Locate title During play/pause: Locate chapter
 VCD	<i>Press:</i> Select track <i>Hold:</i> Reverse/fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Select track	Select folder	Locate particular folder directly
 CD	<i>Press:</i> Select track <i>Hold:</i> Reverse/fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly

* Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Leftrightarrow \times 10$ on the monitor.

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

Disc type			
 DVD	Skip 10 chapters (during play or pause)	CHP RPT: Repeat current chapter TIT RPT: Repeat current title	—
 VCD	Skip 10 tracks (PBC not in use)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track (PBC not in use)	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Skip 10 tracks (within the same folder)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: Repeat current folder	FLDR RND: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks
 CD	Skip 10 tracks	TRK RPT: Repeat current track	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks

• To cancel repeat play or random play, select “RPT OFF” or “RND OFF.”



- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play (10-second review if pressed during play.)
- : Reverse/forward chapter search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
- : *Press:* Select chapter (during play or pause)
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter search
- : Select title
- : Select audio language
- : Select subtitle language
- : Select view angle



Using menu driven features...

- 1 /
- 2 Select an item you want to start play.
- 3

While holding ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select chapter (during play or pause)
- : Select title (when stop)
- , then ①...⑨ : Select title directly

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.
- 2 Move the enlarged portion.
 - To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."

- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
 - Reverse slow motion does not work.
- : *Press:* Select track
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search
- : Select audio channel (ST: stereo, L: left, R: Right)

While holding ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select track (For VCD with PBC, a list of items is shown on the disc menu.)
 - To return to the previous menus, press .

Canceling the PBC playback...

- 1
- 2 While holding , press ①...⑨*3 to start the desired track.
 - To resume PBC, press / .

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.
- 2 Move the enlarged portion.
 - To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."



MP3/WMA

- : Stop play
- ⏸ : Pause
- ▶ : Start play (Playback starts from the beginning of the track.)
- ⏮ ⏭ : Select track
- ▲ ▼ : Select folder

While holding **SHIFT** ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select track (within the same folder)
- /TITLE
- OSD , then ①...⑨ : Select folder directly*4

CD

- : Stop play
- ⏸ : Pause
- ▶ : Start play
- ⏮ ⏭ : Reverse/forward track search
- ⏮ ⏭ : Press: Select tracks
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search

While holding **SHIFT** ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select track directly

*1 Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Rightarrow \times 5 \Rightarrow \times 10 \Rightarrow \times 20 \Rightarrow \times 60$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.

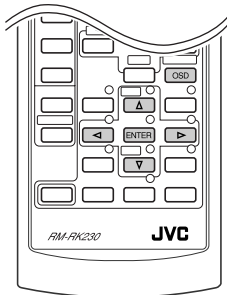
*2 Slow motion speed changes to $\text{▶}1/32 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/16 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/8 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/4 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/2$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.

*3 For selecting numbers greater than 9 or 99, press $+10$ or $+100$, then follow by ①...⑨.

*4 To use direct folder access on MP3/WMA discs, it is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Show the on-screen bar (see page 14).

OSD (once) for MP3/WMA/CD
(twice) for DVD/VCD

2 Select an item.

◀ ▶ → ENTER

3 Make a selection.

ENTER

If pop-up menu appears...

▲ ▼ → ENTER

• For entering time/numbers, see the following.

4 Remove the on-screen bar.

OSD

Entering time/numbers

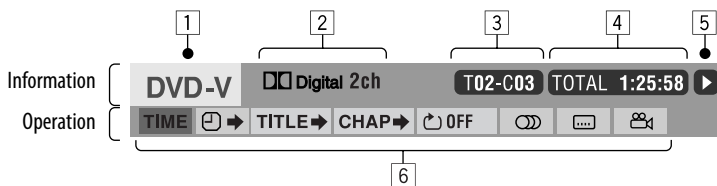
- To select numbers 0 – 9:
While holding **SHIFT**, press ①...⑨.
- To select numbers greater than 9:
While holding **SHIFT**, press $+10$. Then, press ①...⑨.
- After entering the numbers, press **ENTER**.
- To reduce numbers, use -10 .
- To correct a misentry, use \leftarrow .

Ex.: Time search

- DVD: $_:_:_$
To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
- VCD (PBC not in use): $_:_:_$
To enter 64 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 6, 4, 0, then 0.

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar



- 1 Disc type
- 2 DVD/DTS audio CD: Audio signal format type
VCD: PBC
- 3 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
TRACK 01 Current track
- 4 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD, elapsed playing time of the current title.)
T. REM DVD: Remaining title time
VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track
- 5 Playback status
 Play
 Forward/reverse search
 Forward/reverse slow-motion
 Pause
 Stop
- 6 Operation icons
TIME Change the time indication (see 4)
 Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE Title Search (by its number)
CHAP Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK Track Search (by its number)
 Change the audio language or audio channel
 Change the subtitle language
 Change the view angle
 DVD: Repeat play
REPEAT VCD/MP3/WMA/CD: Repeat play
INTRO Intro play
RANDOM Random play



Repeat play*1 : → →



(PBC not in use)

Repeat play*1 : → (Canceled)

Random play*1 : → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 : → (Canceled)



Repeat play*1 :

→ → (Canceled)

Random play*1 :

→ → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 :

→ → (Canceled)



Repeat play*1 : → (Canceled)

Random play*1 : → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 : → (Canceled)

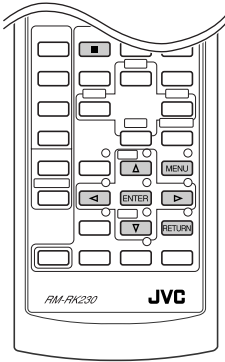
*1 For repeat play/random play, see also page 11.

*2 Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...

INTRO TRACK (INTRO): All tracks of the current disc.

INTRO FOLDER: First tracks of all folders of the current disc.

Operations using the control/list screen (MP3/WMA/CD)



These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

- Folder selection/information is only for MP3/WMA discs.

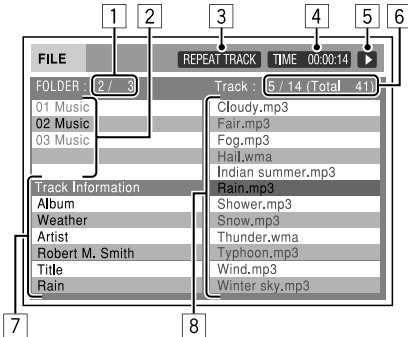
Control screen

The control screen automatically appears when you insert a disc.

- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track to start playback.



Ex.: MP3/WMA disc

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Folder list with the current folder selected
- 3 Selected playback mode
- 4 Elapsed playing time of the current track
- 5 Operation mode icon (▶, ■, ||, ▶▶, ◀◀)
- 6 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
- 7 Track information
- 8 Track list with the current track selected

Folder/track list screen

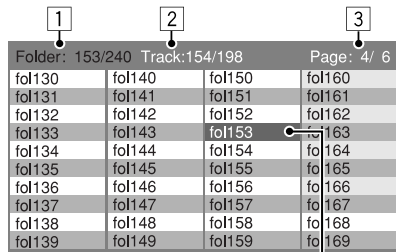
Before playing, you can display the folder list/track list to confirm the contents and start playing a track.

- 1 Display the folder/track list while stop.



- 2 Select an item from the list.

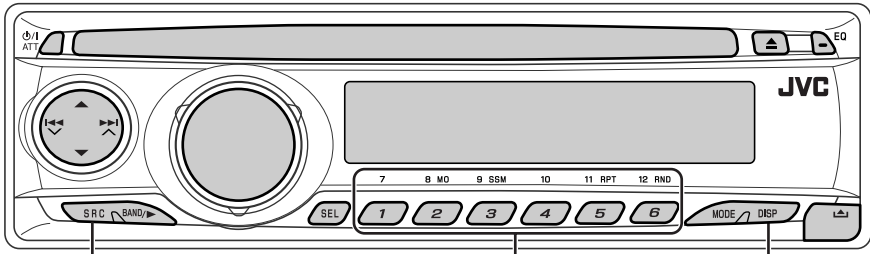
- MP3/WMA: Track list of the selected folder appears.
- To go back to the previous screen, press **RETURN**.



Ex.: Folder list

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder or in disc (CD)
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

Listening to the CD changer



1

2

Change the display information
(see page 10)

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can only play conventional CD (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

1 Select "CD-CH."

2 Select a disc to start playing.

Press: For selecting disc number 1 – 6.

Hold: For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

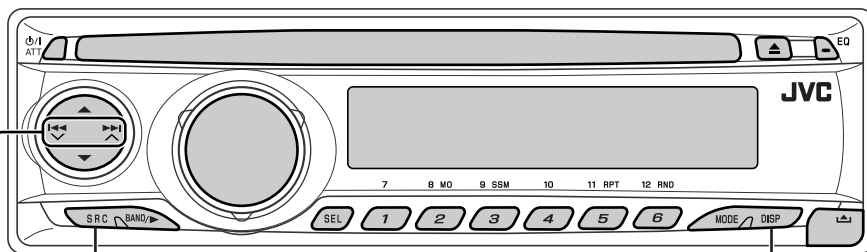
	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track
	MP3: Select folders

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks (MP3: within the same folder)
11 RPT 	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder DISC RPT: Repeat all tracks of the current disc
12 RND 	FLDR RND: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks of current disc MAG RND: Randomly play all tracks of the inserted discs

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

Listening to the iPod®/D. player



Change the display information

Before operating, connect the interface adapter (KS-PD100 or KS-PD500) to the CD changer jack of this unit.

Preparations:

Make sure "CHANGER" is selected for the external input setting, see page 20.

- 1 Select "IPOD" or "D. PLAYER."
- 2 Select a song to start playing.

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.



- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Select the desired menu.



For iPod:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS
↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSER ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTIST ↔ ALBUM ↔
GENRE ↔ TRACK ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Confirm the selection.



- To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- Holding ▼ ◀◀/▶▶ ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.




Pause/stop playback

- To resume playback, press it again.



Press: Select tracks

Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

11 RPT

 5

ONE RPT:

Functions the same as "Repeat One" or "Repeat Mode → One."

ALL RPT:

Functions the same as "Repeat All" or "Repeat Mode → All."

12 RND

 6

ALBM RND*:

Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod.

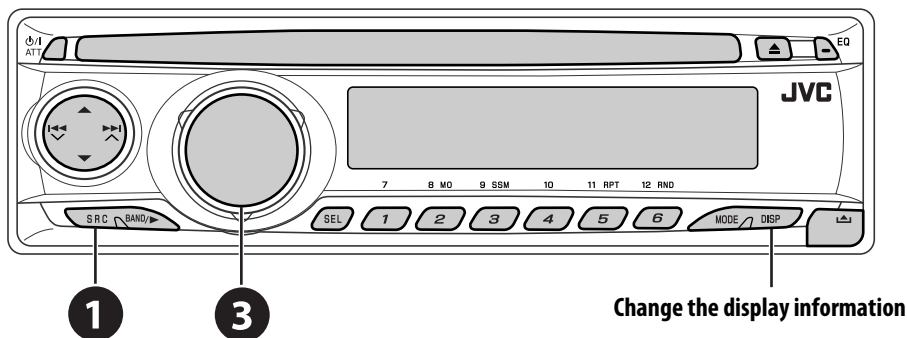
SONG RND/RND ON:

Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" or "Random Play → On."

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

* iPod: Only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."

Listening to the other external components



You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

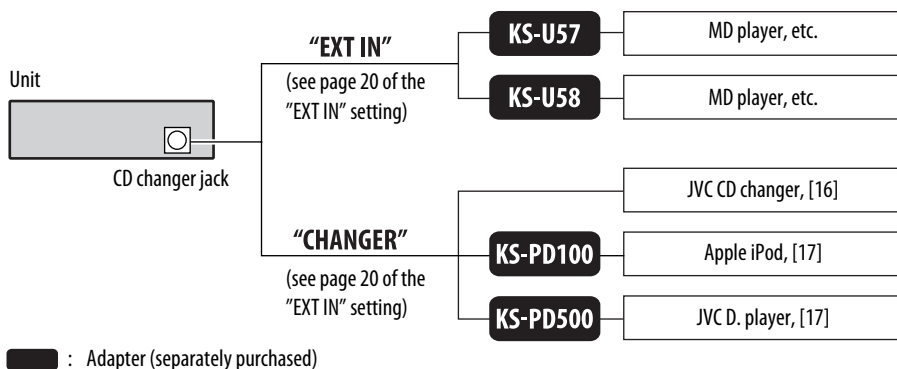
Preparations:

Make sure “EXT IN” is selected for the external input setting, see page 20.

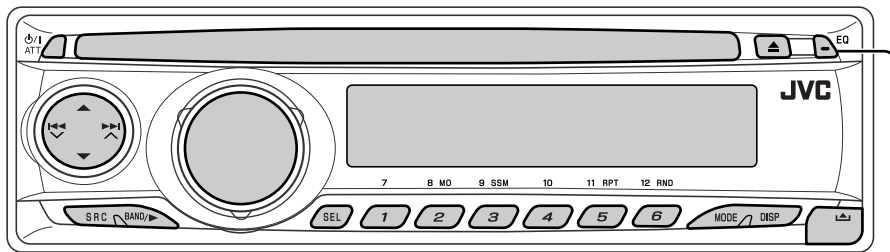
- 1 Select “EXT IN.”
- 2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.
- 3 Adjust the volume.
- 4 Adjust the sound as you want (see page 19).

Concept diagram of the external device connection

- For connection, see Installation/Connection manual (separate volume).



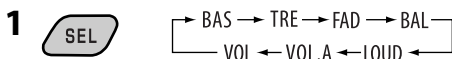
Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ



Indication (For)	BAS (bass)	TRE (treble)	LOUD (loudness)
USER (Flat sound)	00	00	OFF
ROCK (Rock or disco music)	+03	+01	ON
CLASSIC (Classical music)	+01	-02	OFF
POPS (Light music)	+04	+01	OFF
HIP HOP (Funk or rap music)	+02	00	ON
JAZZ (Jazz music)	+02	+03	OFF

BAS * ¹ (bass) Adjust the bass.	-06 to +06
TRE * ¹ (treble) Adjust the treble.	-06 to +06
FAD * ² (fader) Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 to F06
BAL (balance) Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 to R06
LOUD * ¹ (loudness) Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.	LOUD ON or LOUD OFF
VOL.A * ³ (volume adjust) Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level.	-05 to +05
VOL (volume) Adjust the volume.	00 to 30 (or 50)* ⁴

Adjusting the sound



2 Adjust the level.



*¹ When you adjust the bass, treble, or loudness, the adjustment you have made is stored for the currently selected sound mode (C-EQ) including "USER."

*² If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."

*³ You cannot make an adjustment for FM. "FIX" appears.

*⁴ Depending on the amplifier gain control setting. (See page 21 for details.)

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM settings.



2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.



4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.


5 Finish the procedure.



Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
DEMO Display demonstration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DEMO ON [Initial] • DEMO OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [5]. : Cancels.
CLOCK H Hour adjustment	1 – 12 [Initial: 1 (1:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLOCK M Minute adjustment	00 – 59 [Initial: 00 (1:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
DIMMER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Dims the display illumination. : Cancels.
SCROLL *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ONCE [Initial] • AUTO • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
EXT IN *2 External input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHANGER [Initial] • EXT IN 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : To use a JVC CD changer, [16], or an Apple iPod/a JVC D. player, [17]. : To use any other external component than the above, [18].
TAG DISP Tag display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TAG ON [Initial] • TAG OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
NTSC/PAL Video format	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PAL [Initial] • NTSC 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Select this if your monitor is of the PAL color system. : Select this if your monitor is of the NTSC color system.

*1 Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.

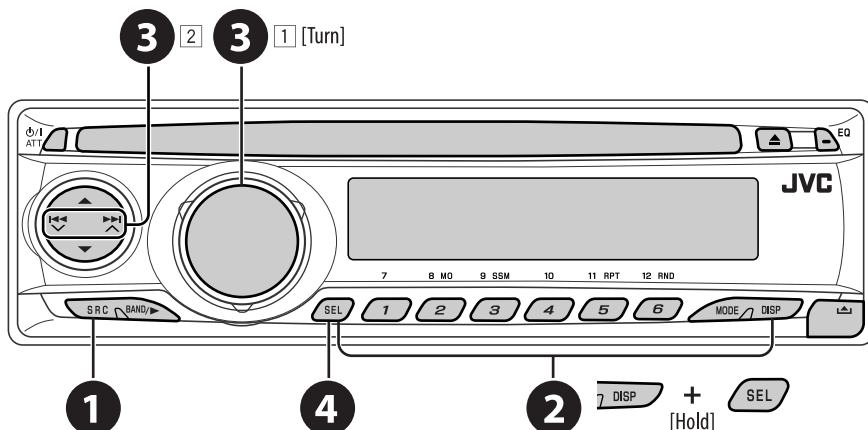
*2 Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, or DISC.

Menu	Item	Setting
LANGUAGE	MENU LANGUAGE	Select the initial disc menu language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	AUDIO LANGUAGE	Select the initial audio language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	SUBTITLE	Select the initial subtitle language or remove the subtitle (OFF). Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select the language for the on screen display.
PICTURE	MONITOR TYPE	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. 16:9 4:3 LETTER BOX 4:3 PAN SCAN 
	OSD POSITION	Select the on-screen bar position on the monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Higher position • 2: Lower position (Guidance below the DVD setup menu will disappear.)
AUDIO	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Select the signal format to be emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (Optical) terminal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PCM ONLY: Select for an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio, or connecting to a recording device. • DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. • STREAM/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio.
	DOWN MIX	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks (and through the DIGITAL OUT terminal when "PCM ONLY" is selected for "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT"). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DOLBY SURROUND: Select to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. • STEREO: Normally select this.
	D. RANGE COMPRESSION	You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software). • ON: Select to always use this function.

Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KY	Kirghiz	PT	Portuguese	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	LA	Latin	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LN	Lingala	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LO	Laothian	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LT	Lithuanian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LV	Latvian, Lettish	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	MG	Malagasy	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MI	Maori	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MK	Macedonian	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	ML	Malayalam	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	MN	Mongolian	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MO	Moldavian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MR	Marathi	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MS	Malay (MAY)	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MT	Maltese	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Assigning names to the stations



You can assign names to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) and up to 8 characters for each station name.

- 1 Select "FM/AM."
- 2 Show the title entry screen.
- 3 Assign a title.
 - 1 Select a character.
 - 2 Move to the next (or previous) character position.
 - 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering the title.
- 4 Finish the procedure.

To erase the entire title

In step 2 above...



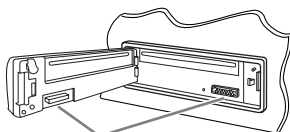
Available characters

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	-	/	<	>	space	

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors. To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



Warped disc



Sticker

Sticker residue



Stick-on label

More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

FM/AM

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing stations, the previously preset stations are erased and stations are stored newly.

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3/WMA files and their file names.
- This unit can also playback 8 cm discs.
- This unit can only playback audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- This unit can recognize a total of 3 500 files (250 folder per disc; 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for the files.
- This unit may be unable to play back some discs or files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 64 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATAC3, etc.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play starts from where it has been stopped previously.
For MP3/WMA disc, playback starts from the beginning of the last playing track.

iPod® or D. player

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 8 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 20). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

General settings—PSM

- If you change the “AMP GAIN” setting from “HIGH PWR” to “LOW PWR” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30.”

DVD setup menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PAN SCAN” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LETTER BOX” for some DVDs.




Title assignment







- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, “NAMEFULL” appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

On-screen guide icons

During playback, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

DVD: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing:

-  : Multi-subtitle languages
-  : Multi-audio languages
-  : Multi-angle views

-  : Playback
-  : Pause
-  : DVD/VCD: Forward slow motion
-  : DVD: Reverse slow motion
-  : Forward search
-  : Reverse search

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):** 2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 22.)
- **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):** Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see table below.)
To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” correctly. (See page 22.)

Output signals through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Output signals are different depending on the “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” setting on the setup menu (see page 22).

DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Output Signals		
	STREAM/PCM	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	PCM ONLY
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
	96 kHz, Linear PCM		
	with DTS	DTS bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital bitstream	
	with MPEG Audio	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM
Audio CD, Video CD	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM/48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS	DTS bitstream	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
MP3/WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound cannot be heard from the speakers. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The unit does not work at all. 	Reset the unit (see page 2).
FM/AM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSM automatic presetting does not work. 	Store stations manually.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static noise while listening to the radio. 	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc can be neither played back nor ejected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unlock the disc (see page 10). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be recognized. 	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "NO DISC" appears on the display. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No playback picture (DVD/VCD) appears on the monitor. 	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. (See Installation/Connection Manual.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No picture appears on the monitor at all. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The monitor shows black and white wavy pictures (DVD/VCD). 	Use a disc recorded in NTSC color system and change the video format to NTSC (see page 20).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the monitor. 	Select "4:3 LETTER BOX" (see page 22).

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the disc. • Record tracks using a compliant application in the appropriate discs (see page 4). • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3/WMA tracks.)
	• Longer readout time is required.	Readout time varies due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration. Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks cannot playback as you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• “NO FILES” appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains tracks of appropriate formats.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
CD changer	• “NO DISC” appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• “NO MAG” appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• “RESET 8” appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• “RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
iPod/D. player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Change the battery. Update the firmware version.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Buttons do not work as intended. 	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press MODE before performing the operation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sound is distorted. 	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "NO IPOD" or "NO DP" appears on the display. 	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback stops. 	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 17).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. "ERROR 01" appears on the display when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "NO FILES" or "NO TRACK" appears on the display. 	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display. 	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "RESET 8" appears on the display. 	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod's or D. player's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	Reset the iPod or D. player.	

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass/Treble:	± 10 dB at 100 Hz/ ± 10 dB at 10 kHz
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical):	Signal wave length: 660 nm Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm
		Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.0 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 k Ω
	Color System:		PAL/NTSC
Video Output (composite):		1 Vp-p/75 Ω	
Other Terminal:		CD changer	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μ V/35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)		
	Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)		
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz	
		DVD, fs=96 kHz:	16 Hz to 44 000 Hz	
		VCD/CD/MP3/WMA:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz	
	Dynamic Range:	96 dB		
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB		
	Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit		
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps	
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz	
WMA:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 192 kbps		
	Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz		
		MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz		

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)	
	Grounding System:	Negative ground		
	Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C		
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm	
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm	
	Mass (approx.):	1.6 kg (excluding accessories)		

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS 2.0 + Digital Out” are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

JVC



EN

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1205DTSMDTJEIN

JVC KD-DV4204/KD-DV4203

Installation/Connection Manual

GET0370-002A
[U]

1205DTSMDTJEIN
EN

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent accidents and damage:

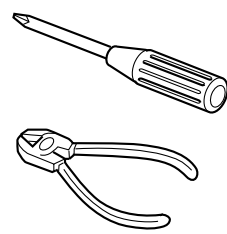
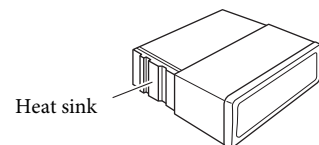
- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where:**
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT operate the unit while driving.**
- **If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
- **If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

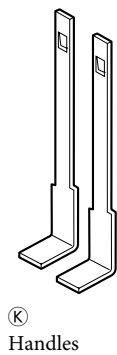
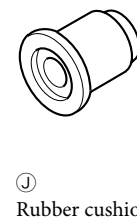
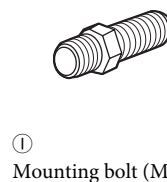
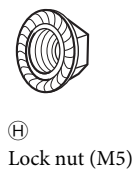
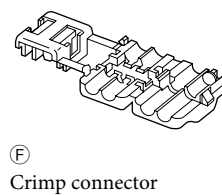
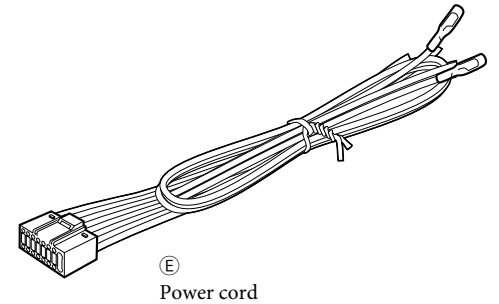
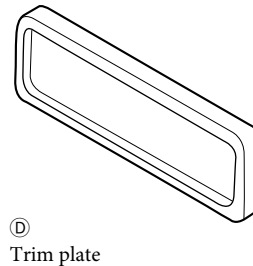
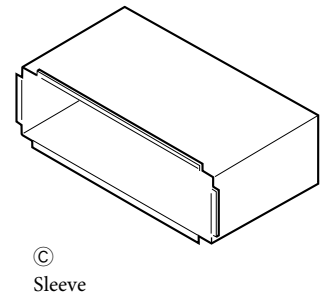
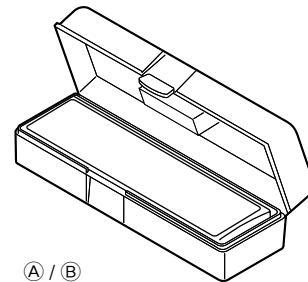
Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



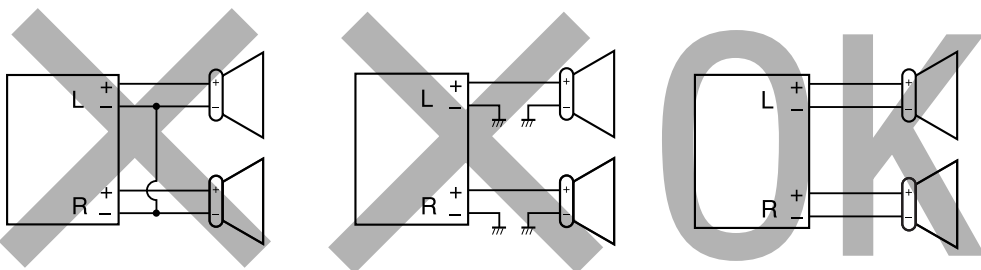
Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.



PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):

2-channel signal is emitted.

When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 28 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" correctly. (See page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

*1 Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" and "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

TROUBLESHOOTING

The fuse blows.

- * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

Power cannot be turned on.

- * Is the yellow lead connected?

No sound from the speakers.

- * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

Sound is distorted.

- * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
- * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

Noise interfere with sounds.

- * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

Unit becomes hot.

- * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
- * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

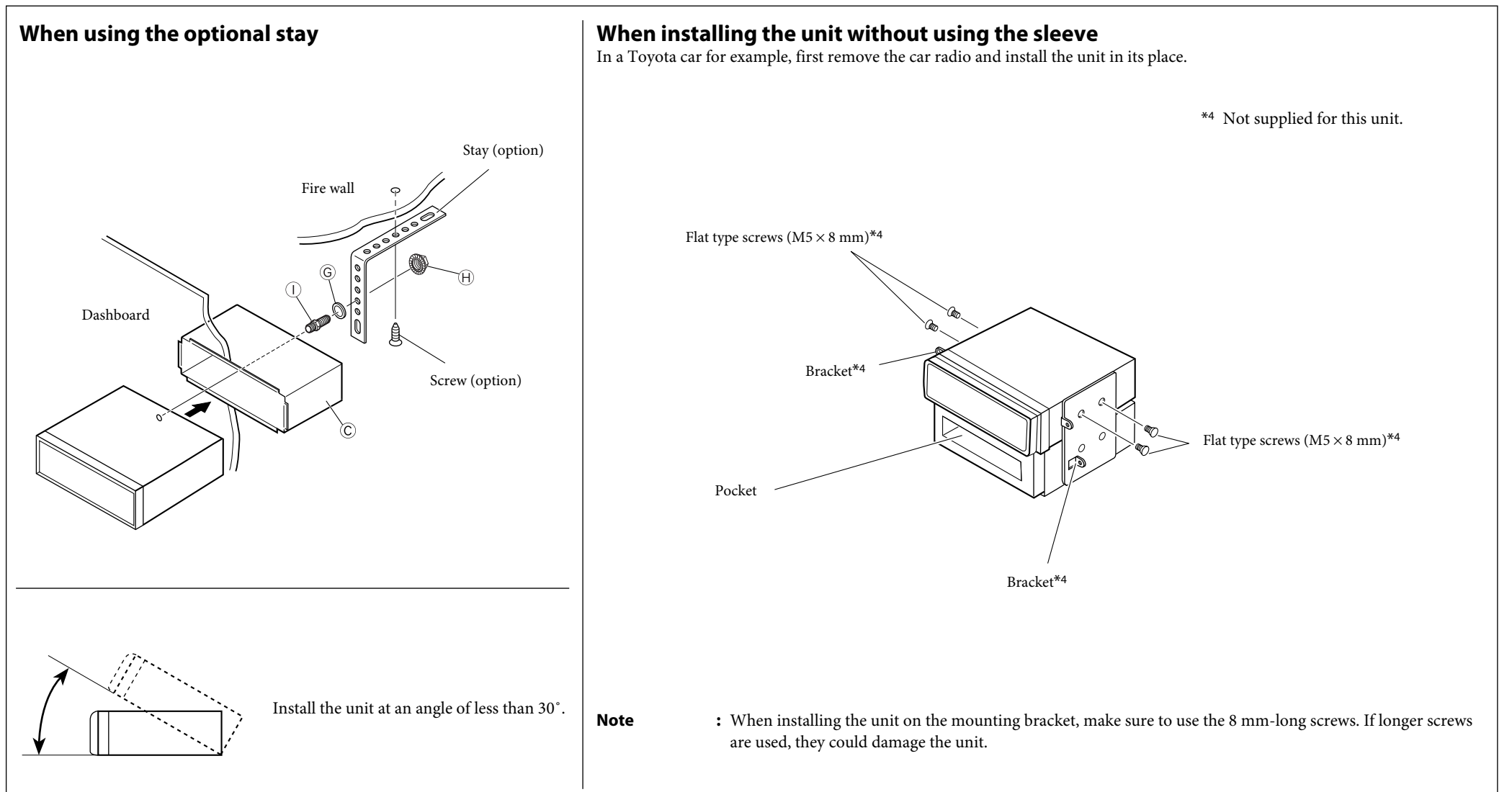
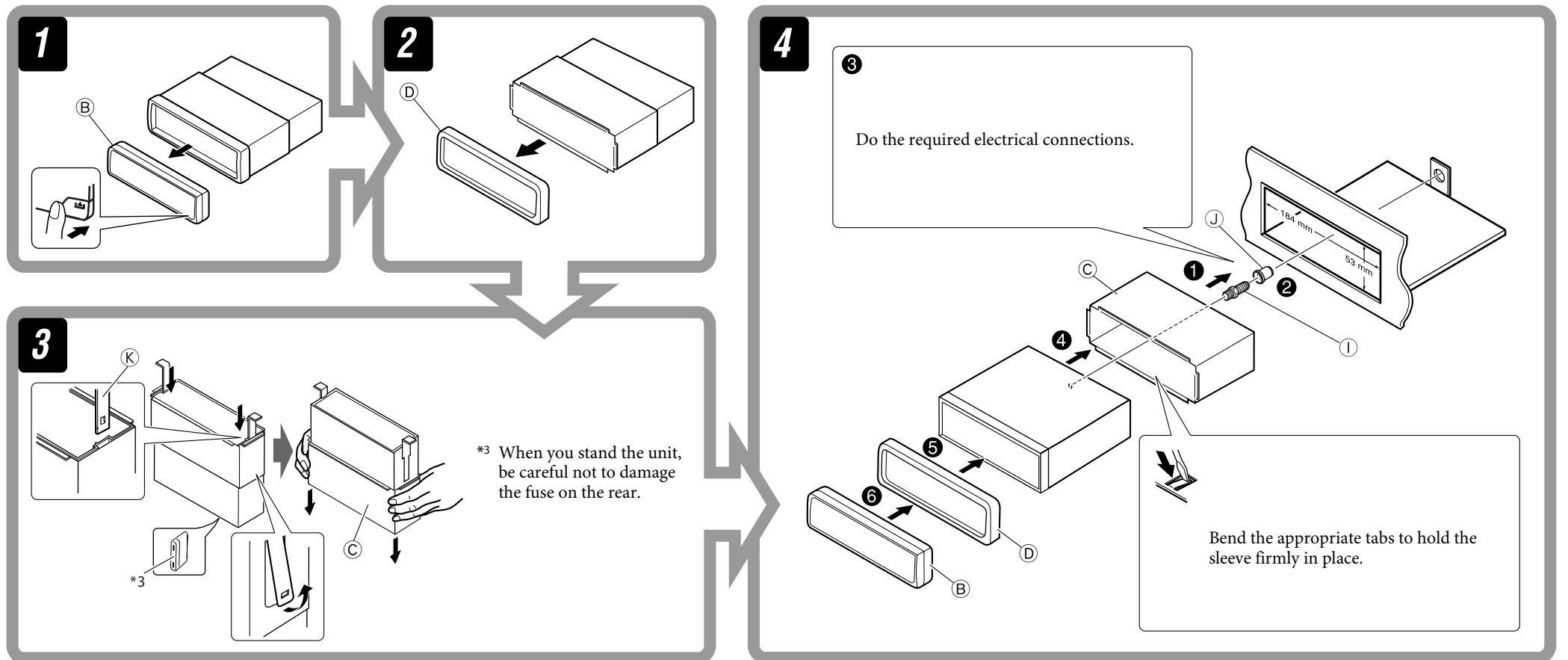
This unit does not work at all.

- * Have you reset your unit?

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

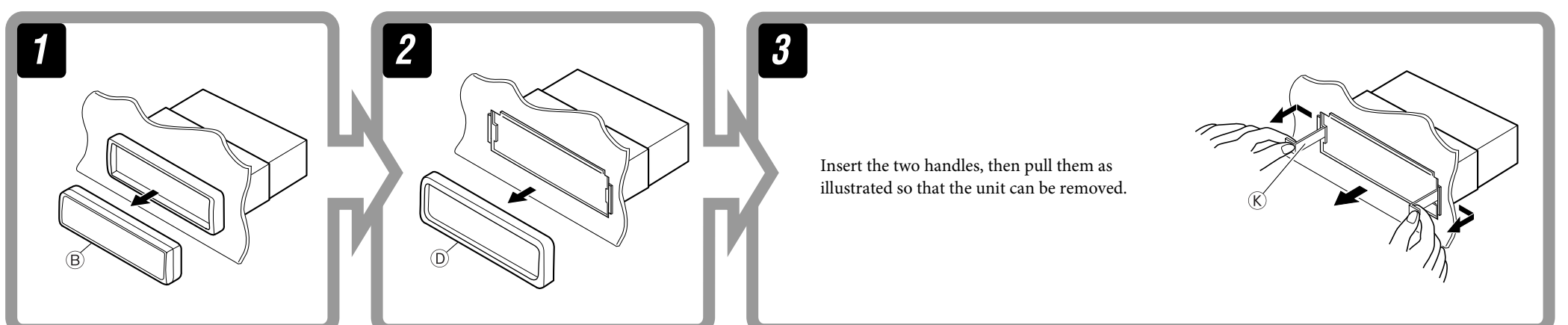
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.



Removing the unit

Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

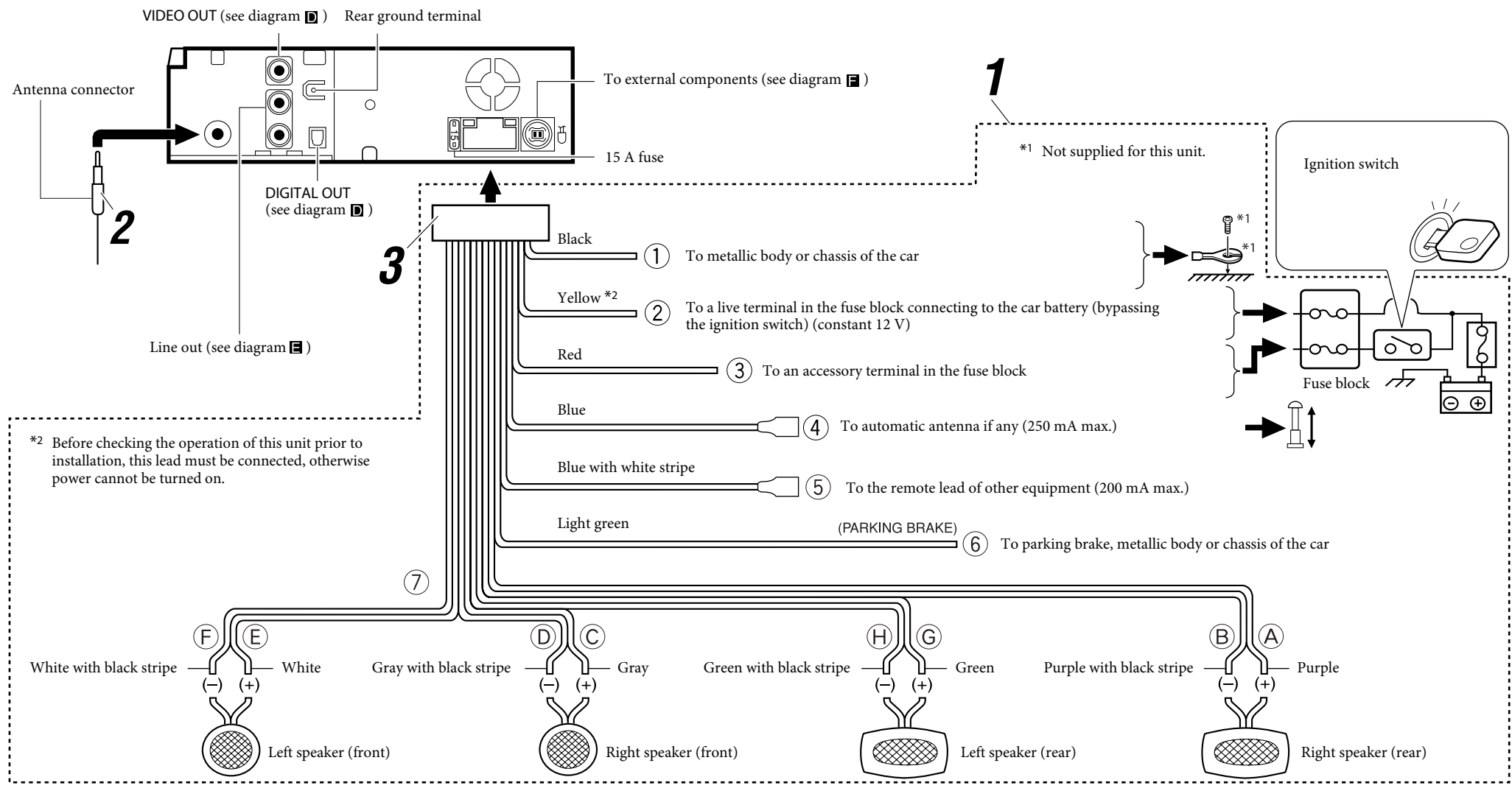


ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A Typical connections

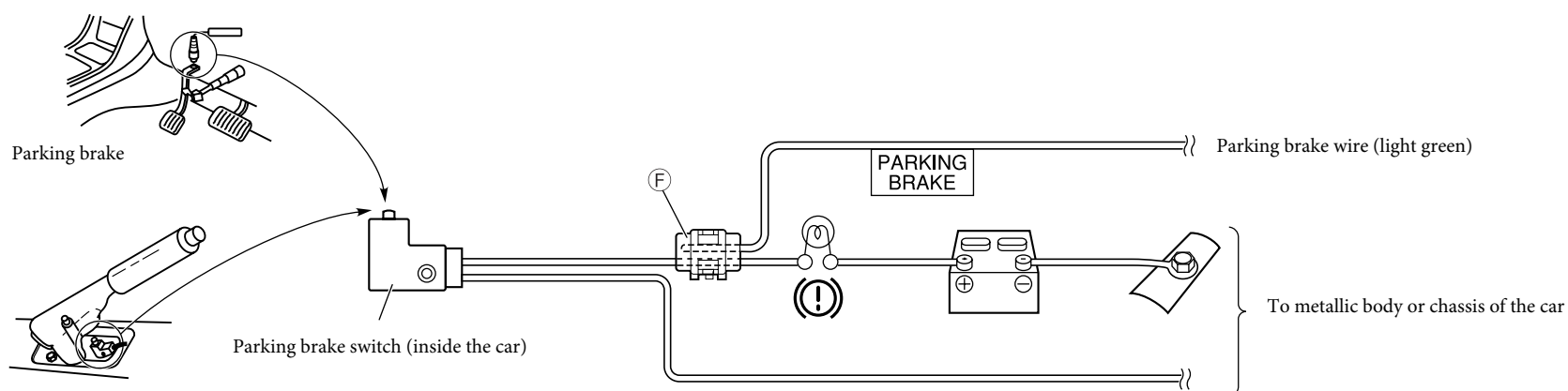
Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit. The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

- 1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 2 Connect the antenna cord.
- 3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.



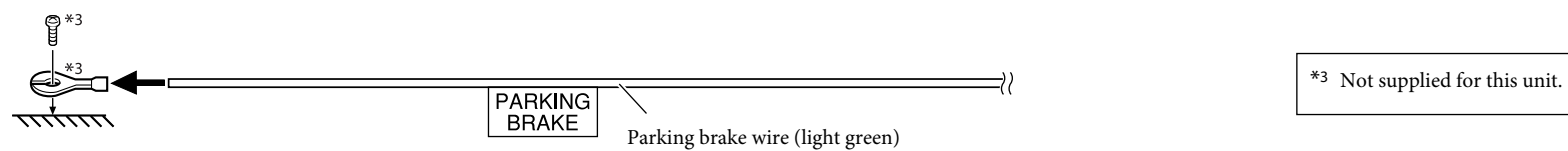
B Connecting the parking brake wire

When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver



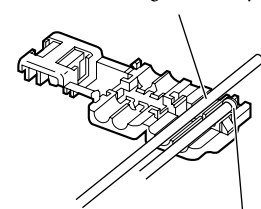
When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver

Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis of the car.

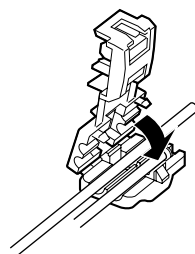


C Connecting the crimp connector

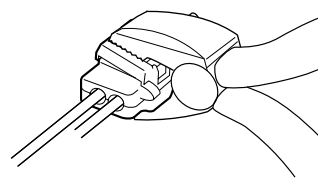
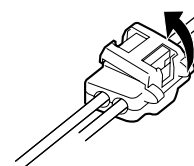
Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.



Attach the parking brake wire to this point.

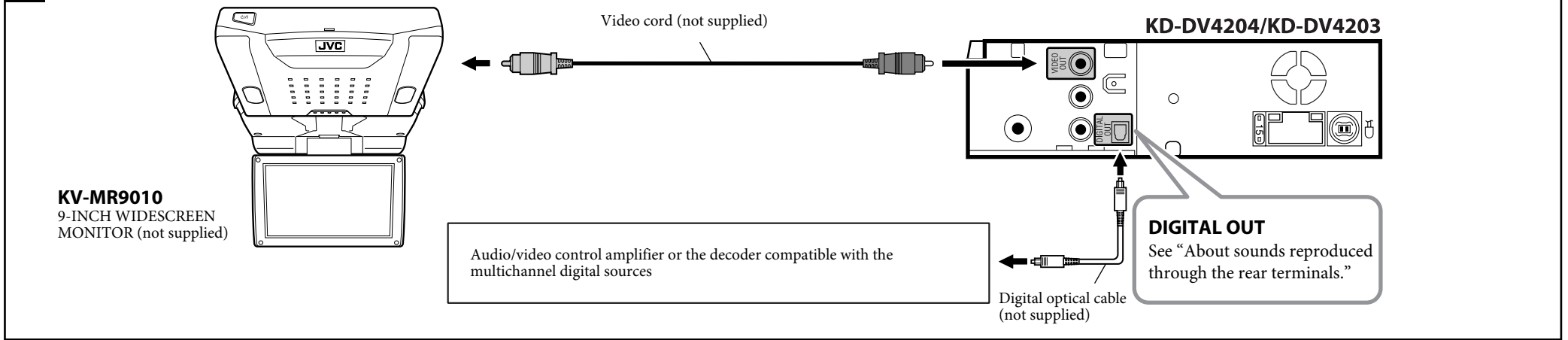


Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.



Pinch the crimp firmly.

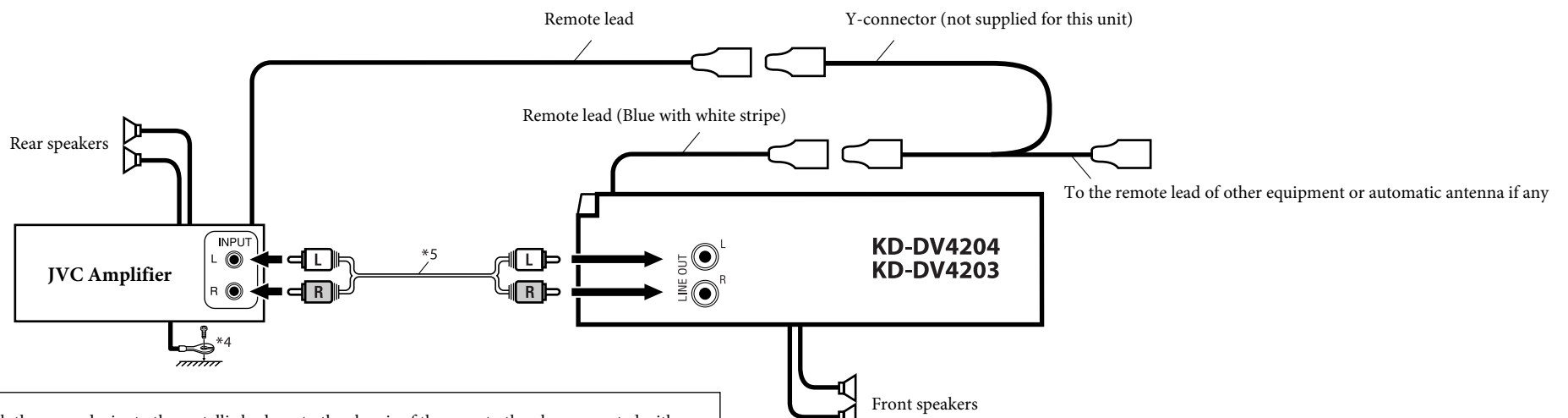
D Required connections for DVD playback



E Connecting the external amplifier

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**



*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

F Connecting the external components

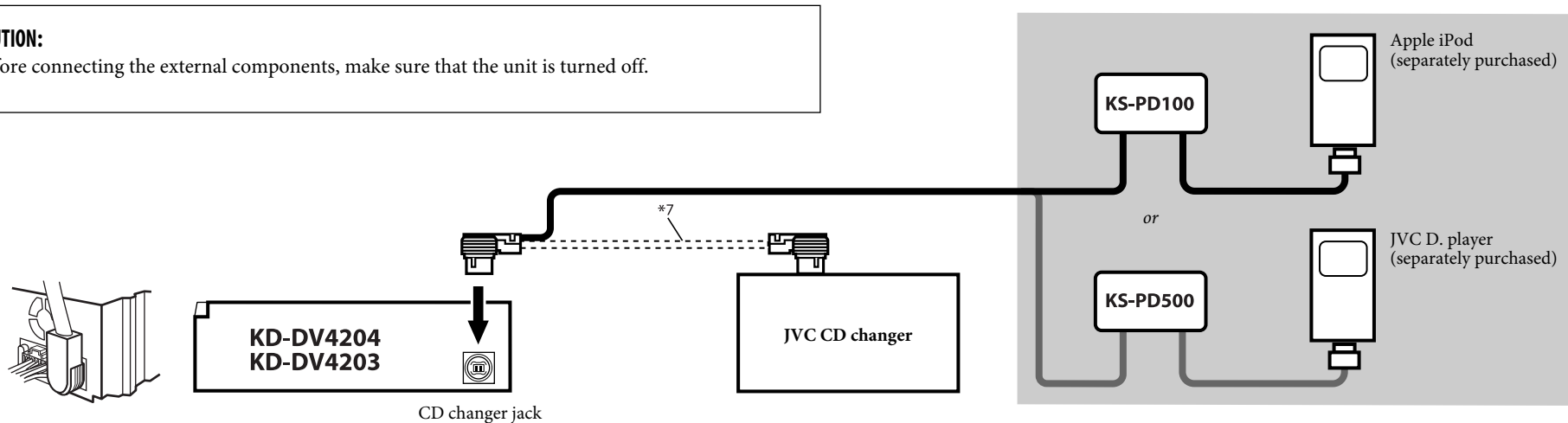
CD changer, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player

- Set "CHANGER" for the external input setting (See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

You can connect these components as illustrated below. The iPod*6 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

CAUTION:

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.

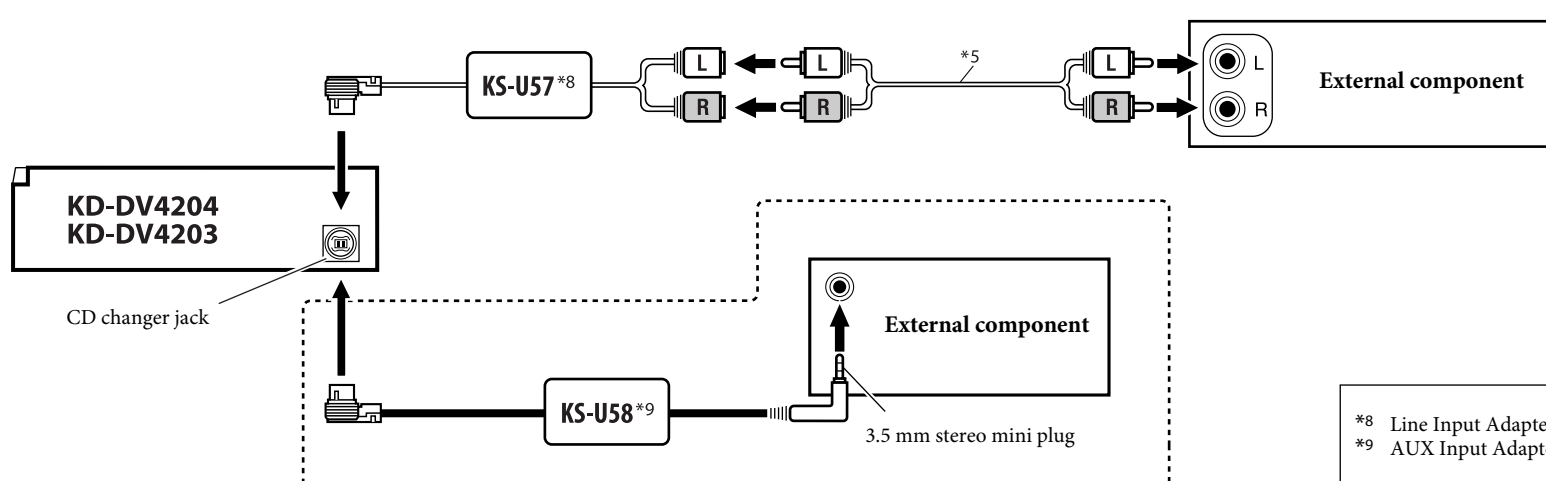


*6 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

*7 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer

Other external component

- Set "EXT IN" for the external input setting (See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)



*8 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*9 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)

JVC



ENGLISH

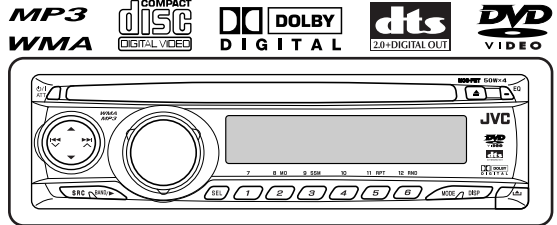
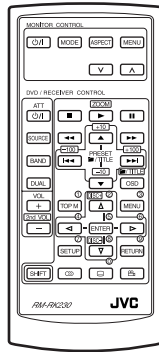
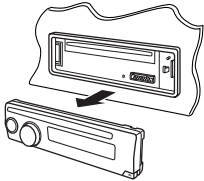
DVD/CD RECEIVER

KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205

中
文

DVD/CD 收音組合機

KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 5.

取消屏幕演示功能，參閱第 5 頁。

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

有關安裝和連接方法，分別參閱操作手冊。

INSTRUCTIONS 使用說明書

GET0369-001A

[U]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

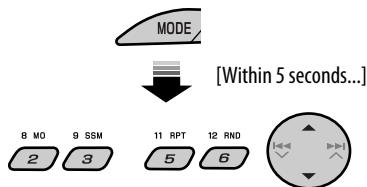
1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.	ADVARSEL: Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åpen eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering for stråling.	WARNING: Synlig och osynlig laserstråling när den öppnas och spårnen är urkopplad. Beträkta strålen.	VARO: Avatessa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet älännä näkövälille ja näkömäärällöle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan ilseesi. (f)
----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

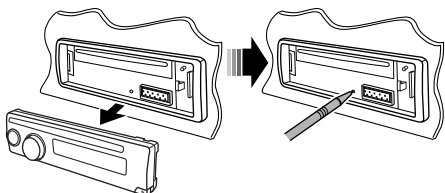
This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

How to use functions mode

If you press MODE, the unit goes into functions mode, then the number buttons and ▲/▼ buttons work as different function buttons.



How to reset your unit



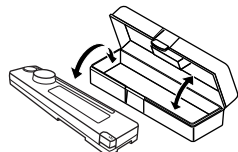
• Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

How to forcibly eject a disc

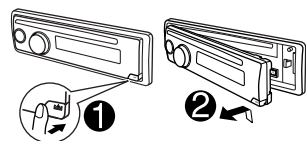


- If this does not work, reset your unit.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

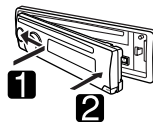
How to detach/attach the control panel



Detaching...



Attaching...



WARNINGS:

To prevent accidents and damage

- **DO NOT** install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate the unit while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
 If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.





Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

<i>Introduction</i>	4
■ OPERATIONS	
<i>Basic operations</i>	
• <i>Control panel</i>	6
• <i>Remote controller (RM-RK230)</i>	7
<i>Listening to the radio</i>	9
<i>Disc operations</i>	10
■ EXTERNAL DEVICES	
<i>Listening to the CD changer</i>	16
<i>Listening to the iPod®/D. player</i>	17
<i>Listening to the other external components</i>	18
■ SETTINGS	
<i>Selecting a preset sound mode—C-EQ</i>	19
<i>General settings—PSM</i>	20
<i>DVD setup menu</i>	21
<i>Assigning names to the stations</i>	24
<i>Maintenance</i>	25
<i>More about this unit</i>	26
<i>Troubleshooting</i>	29
<i>Specifications</i>	32

Introduction

Disc type	✓ OK Playable	✗ NO Unplayable
 <p>DVD Video, Dual Disc (DVD side only), DVD-R*/-RW, +R/+RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recorded in DVD-Video format only and in PAL/NTSC color system 	<p>DVD Audio, Dual Disc (non-DVD side), DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM, DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recorded in DVD-VR format 	
 <p>VCD CD-R/-RW</p>	<p>Video CD CD-R/-RW</p>	<p>SVCD (Super Video CD)</p>
 <p>MP3/WMA</p>	<p>DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW, DVD-ROM</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to UDF bridge format 	<p>—</p>
	<p>CD-R/-RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to ISO 9660 level 1, ISO 9660 level 2, Romeo, Joliet 	<p>—</p>
 <p>CD</p>	<p>Audio CD, CD Text CD-R/-RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to CD-DA format 	<p>CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD</p>

• It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video mode only) discs. However, the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.

* DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “3.”

Examples:

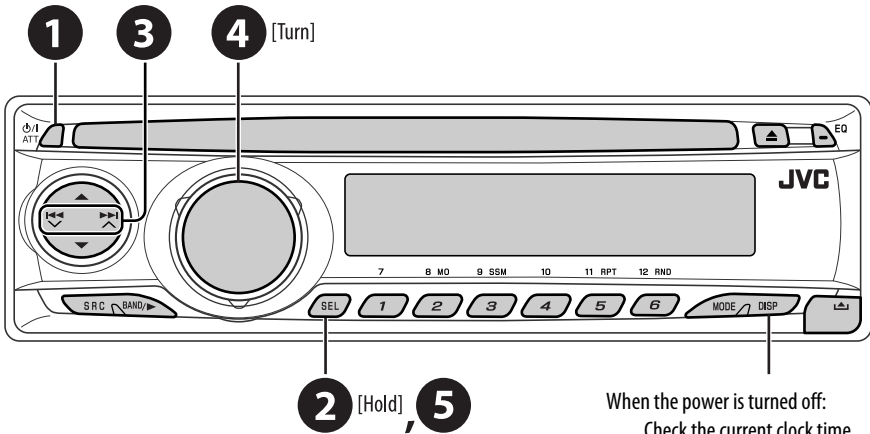


If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“REGION CODE ERROR!” appears on the monitor.

Before operating the unit — Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

- See also page 20.



- 1 **Turn on the power.**
- 2 **Enter the PSM settings.**
- 3 ⇒ 4 **Cancel the display demonstrations**
Select “DEMO,” then “DEMO OFF.”

Set the clock

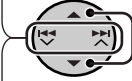
Select “CLOCK H” (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select “CLOCK M” (minute), then adjust the minute.

- 5 **Finish the procedure.**

When the power is turned off:
Check the current clock time
When the power is turned on:
Change the display information

Basic operations — Control panel

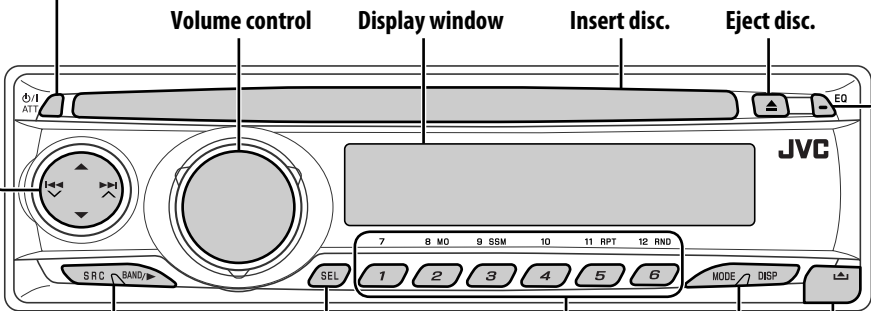
- **FM/AM:** Search for station.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/track.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Select track.



- **FM/AM:** Select preset station.
- **DISC:** Select folder.
Also functions as +10/-10 buttons after pressing MODE to skip 10 chapters/tracks at a time.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Enter the main menu/Pause or stop playback/Confirm selection.

- Turn on the power.
- Turn off the power [Hold].
- Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

Select the sound mode.



Adjust the sound mode.
Hold to enter the PSM settings.

Detach the panel.

- **FM/AM:** Select preset station.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/title/folder/track/disc (for CD changer).

SRC

Select the source.

FM/AM → DISC* → CD-CH*/IPOD*/D.PLAYER* (or EXT IN) → (back to the beginning)

* You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.

BAND

- **FM/AM:** Select the bands.
- **DISC:** Start playback.

MODE

Enter functions mode.

Press MODE, then one of the following buttons (within 5 seconds)...

MO: Turn on/off monaural reception.

SSM: Automatic station presetting.

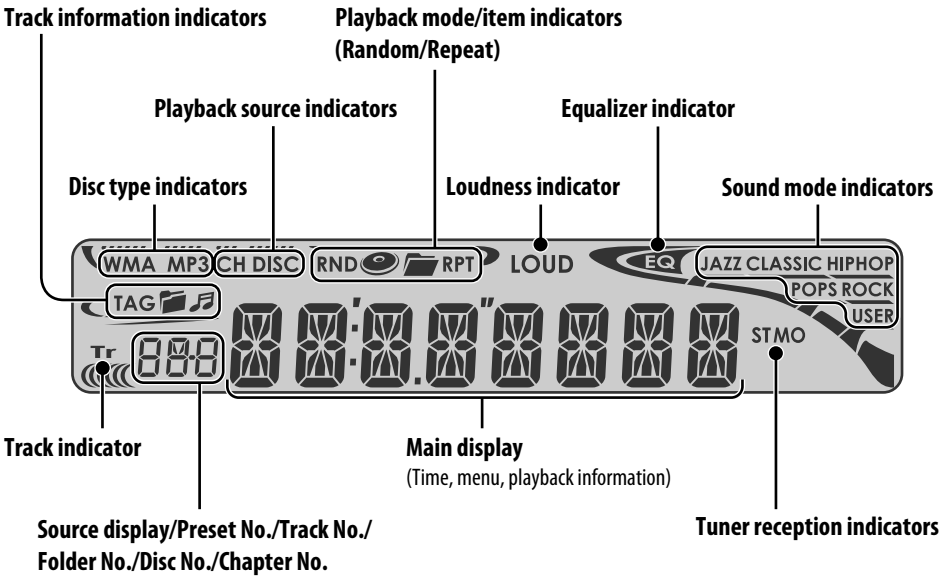
RPT: Select repeat play.

RND: Select random play.

DISP

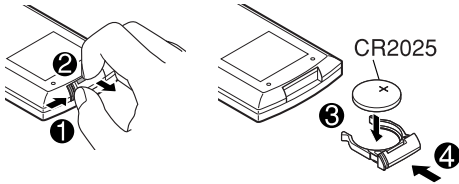
Change the display information.

Display window



Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK230)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)

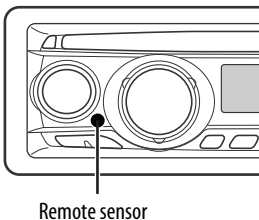


Warning:
To prevent accidents and damage

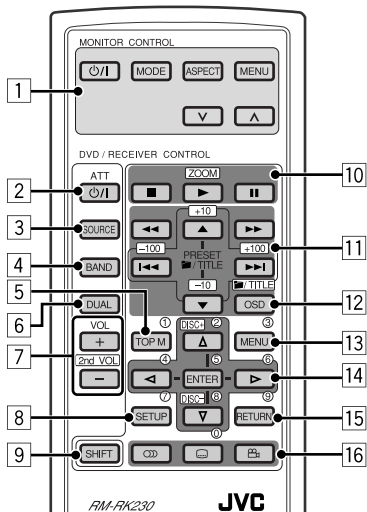
- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Continued on the next page



MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons
 - Used for a JVC monitor—KV-MR9010, KV-MH6510, KV-M706, or KV-M705.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 Turns on/off the power.
 - Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- 3 Selects the source.
- 4 Selects the FM/AM bands.
- 5*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 6 Not applicable for this unit.
- 7 Adjusts the volume level.
 - 2nd VOL: Not applicable for this unit.
- 8*1 Enters DVD setup menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10
 - (stop), ► (play), || (pause)
 - ► (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button (see page 12).
 - Not applicable for CD changer/iPod/D. player operations.

11*2 For advanced disc operations:

- / TITLE ▲ / ▼
DVD: Selects the titles.
MP3/WMA: Selects the folders if included.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse skip/forward skip.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse search/forward search (not applicable for CD changer operations).

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- PRESET ▲ / ▼
Changes the preset stations.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶
– Searches for the stations if pressed briefly.
– Manual searches if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
▲: Enters the main menu.
(Now ▲/▼/◀◀ / ▶▶ work as the menu selecting buttons.)*3
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (in menu selecting mode)
– Selects an item if pressed briefly.
(Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
– Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

- 12
 - Shows the on-screen bar.
 - Also function as the / TITLE button when pressed with SHIFT button (see pages 12 and 13).
- 13*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 14*1
 - Makes selection/settings.
 - DISC +/- buttons: Changes discs when the source is “CD-CH.”
- 15*1 RETURN button
- 16
 - DVD: Selects audio language (○○○), subtitles (□□□), angle (□□□).
 - VCD: Selects audio channel (○○○).

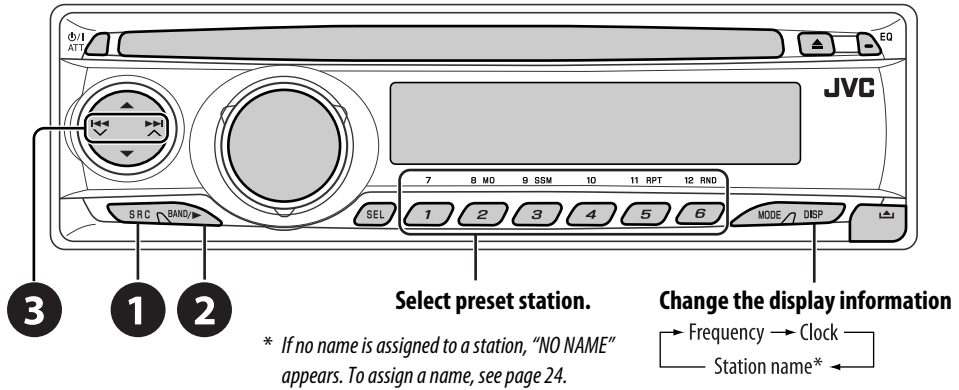
*1 Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

- FM/AM: Selects preset stations.
- DISC: Selects chapter/title/folder/track.

*2 Functions as +10/-10/+100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

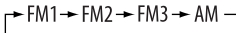
*3 ▲ : Returns to the previous menu.
▼ : Confirms the selection.

Listening to the radio



1 Select "FM/AM."

2 Select the bands.



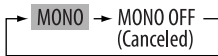
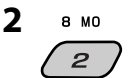
3 Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.

- Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive



Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

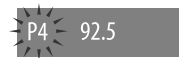
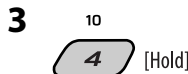
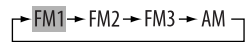
- MO indicator lights up.



Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

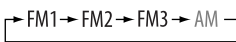
Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.



FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset six stations for each band.



Disc operations

Before performing any operations...

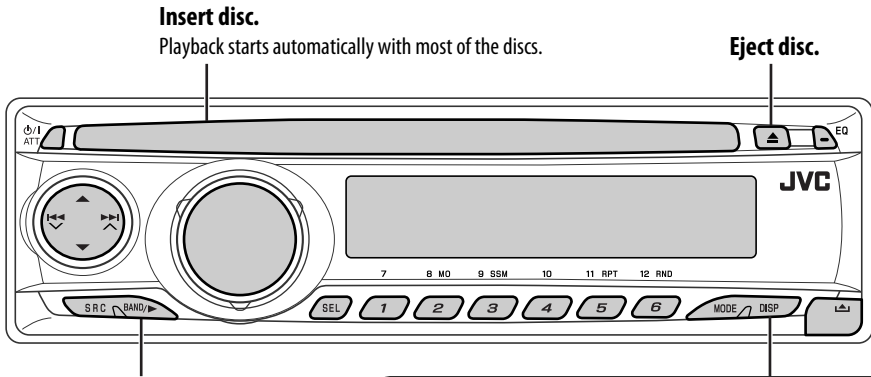
Turn on the monitor for playing a DVD or VCD. If you turn on the monitor, you can also control playback of other discs by referring to the monitor screen. (See pages 13 – 15.)

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc does not have any disc menu (when playback stops), all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If “⊘” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing “⊘,” operations will not be accepted.



Start playback if necessary.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

*1 If the file does not have Tag information or "TAG DISP" is set to "TAG OFF" (see page 20), folder name and file name appear. TAG indicator will not light up.

*2 "NO NAME" appears for an audio CD.

Change the display information



→ Elapsed playing time → Clock → Current title and chapter number



→ Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number










→ Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number
 Track title ← Album name/performer (file name*1) ← (folder name*1)




→ Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number
 Track title*2 ← Disc title/performer*2








Operations using the control panel

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

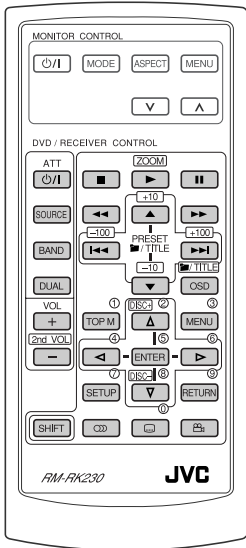
Disc type			 (Number buttons)
 DVD	Press: Select chapter Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter*	—	During stop: Locate title During play/pause: Locate chapter
 VCD	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Select track	Select folder	Locate particular folder directly
 CD	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly

* Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Leftrightarrow \times 10$ on the monitor.

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

Disc type			
 DVD	Skip 10 chapters (during play or pause)	CHP RPT: Repeat current chapter TIT RPT: Repeat current title	—
 VCD	Skip 10 tracks (PBC not in use)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track (PBC not in use)	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Skip 10 tracks (within the same folder)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: Repeat current folder	FLDR RND: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks
 CD	Skip 10 tracks	TRK RPT: Repeat current track	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks

• To cancel repeat play or random play, select “RPT OFF” or “RND OFF.”



- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play (10-second review if pressed during play.)
- : Reverse/forward chapter search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
- : *Press:* Select chapter (during play or pause)
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter search
- : Select title
- : Select audio language
- : Select subtitle language
- : Select view angle



Using menu driven features...

- 1 TOP M / MENU
- 2 Select an item you want to start play.
- 3 ENTER

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding SHIFT, press ZOOM repeatedly.
-

While holding SHIFT ...*3

- ... : Select chapter (during play or pause)
- : Select title (when stop)
- , then ... : Select title directly

- 2 Move the enlarged portion.

• To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."

- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
 - Reverse slow motion does not work.
- : *Press:* Select track
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search
- : Select audio channel (ST: stereo, L: left, R: Right)

While holding SHIFT ...*3

- ... : Select track (For VCD with PBC, a list of items is shown on the disc menu.)
 - To return to the previous menus, press RETURN.

Canceling the PBC playback...

- 1
- 2 While holding SHIFT, press ...*3 to start the desired track.
 - To resume PBC, press TOP M / MENU.

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding SHIFT, press ZOOM repeatedly.
-
- 2 Move the enlarged portion.

• To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."



MP3/WMA

- : Stop play
- ⏸ : Pause
- ▶ : Start play (Playback starts from the beginning of the track.)
- ⏮ : Select track
- ⏭ : Select folder

While holding **[SHIFT]** ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select track (within the same folder)
- [TITLE]**
- [OSD]**, then ①...⑨ : Select folder directly*4

CD

- : Stop play
- ⏸ : Pause
- ▶ : Start play
- ⏮ : Reverse/forward track search
- ⏭ : Press: Select tracks
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search

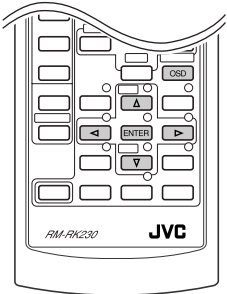
While holding **[SHIFT]** ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select track directly

*1 Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Rightarrow \times 5 \Rightarrow \times 10 \Rightarrow \times 20 \Rightarrow \times 60$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.
 *2 Slow motion speed changes to $\blacktriangleright 1/32 \Rightarrow \blacktriangleright 1/16 \Rightarrow \blacktriangleright 1/8 \Rightarrow \blacktriangleright 1/4 \Rightarrow \blacktriangleright 1/2$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.
 *3 For selecting numbers greater than 9 or 99, press **[+10]** or **[+100]**, then follow by ①...⑨.
 *4 To use direct folder access on MP3/WMA discs, it is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Show the on-screen bar (see page 14).

[OSD] (once) for MP3/WMA/CD
(twice) for DVD/VCD

2 Select an item.

[Left Arrow] [Right Arrow] [ENTER]

3 Make a selection.

[ENTER]

If pop-up menu appears...

[Up Arrow] [Down Arrow] [ENTER]

• For entering time/numbers, see the following.

4 Remove the on-screen bar.

[OSD]

Entering time/numbers

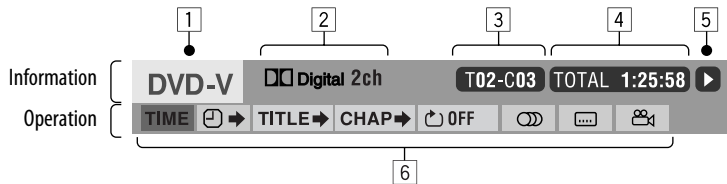
- To select numbers 0 – 9:
While holding **[SHIFT]**, press ①...⑨.
- To select numbers greater than 9:
While holding **[SHIFT]**, press **[+10]**. Then, press ①...⑨.
- After entering the numbers, press **[ENTER]**.
- To reduce numbers, use **[−10]**.
- To correct a misentry, use **[Left Arrow]**.

Ex.: Time search

- DVD: **:_: _:**
To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
- VCD (PBC not in use): **:_: _:**
To enter 64 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 6, 4, 0, then 0.

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar



- 1 Disc type
- 2 DVD/DTS audio CD: Audio signal format type
VCD: PBC
- 3 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
TRACK 01 Current track
- 4 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD, elapsed playing time of the current title.)
T. REM DVD: Remaining title time
 VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track
- 5 Playback status
 Play
 Forward/reverse search
 Forward/reverse slow-motion
 Pause
 Stop

- 6 Operation icons
TIME Change the time indication (see 4)
 Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE Title Search (by its number)
CHAP Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK Track Search (by its number)
 Change the audio language or audio channel
 Change the subtitle language
 Change the view angle
 DVD: Repeat play
REPEAT VCD/MP3/WMA/CD: Repeat play
INTRO Intro play
RANDOM Random play



Repeat play*1 : → →



(PBC not in use)

Repeat play*1 : → (Canceled)

Random play*1 : → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 : → (Canceled)



Repeat play*1 : → → (Canceled)

Random play*1 : → → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 : → → (Canceled)



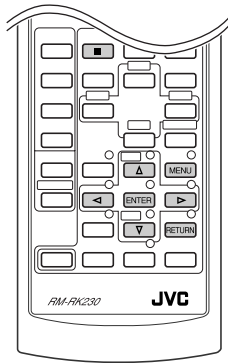
Repeat play*1 : → (Canceled)

Random play*1 : → (Canceled)

Intro play*2 : → (Canceled)

*1 For repeat play/random play, see also page 11.
 *2 Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...
INTRO TRACK (INTRO): All tracks of the current disc.
INTRO FOLDER: First tracks of all folders of the current disc.

Operations using the control/list screen (MP3/WMA/CD)



These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

- Folder selection/information is only for MP3/WMA discs.

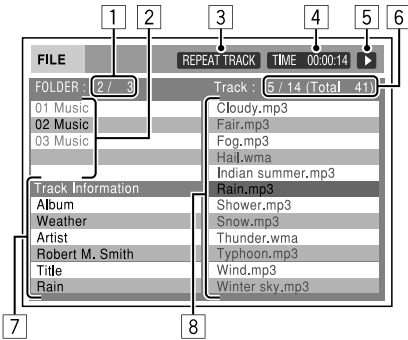
Control screen

The control screen automatically appears when you insert a disc.

- Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- Select a folder or track to start playback.



Ex.: MP3/WMA disc

- Current folder number/total folder number
- Folder list with the current folder selected
- Selected playback mode
- Elapsed playing time of the current track
- Operation mode icon (▶, ■, ||, ▶▶, ◀◀)
- Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
- Track information
- Track list with the current track selected

Folder/track list screen

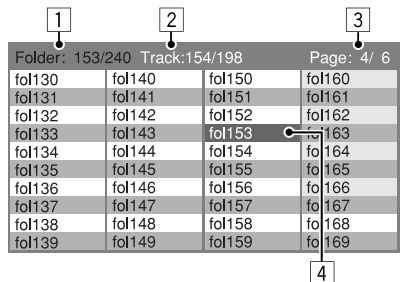
Before playing, you can display the folder list/track list to confirm the contents and start playing a track.

- Display the folder/track list while stop.



- Select an item from the list.

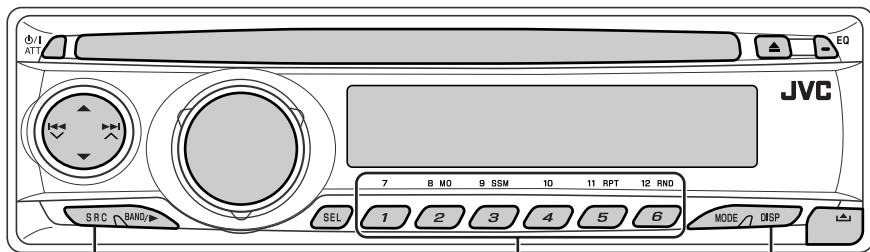
- MP3/WMA: Track list of the selected folder appears.
- To go back to the previous screen, press RETURN.



Ex.: Folder list

- Current folder number/total folder number
- Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder or in disc (CD)
- Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

Listening to the CD changer



1

2

Change the display information
(see page 10)

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can only play conventional CD (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

1 Select "CD-CH."

2 Select a disc to start playing.

Press: For selecting disc number 1 – 6.

Hold: For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

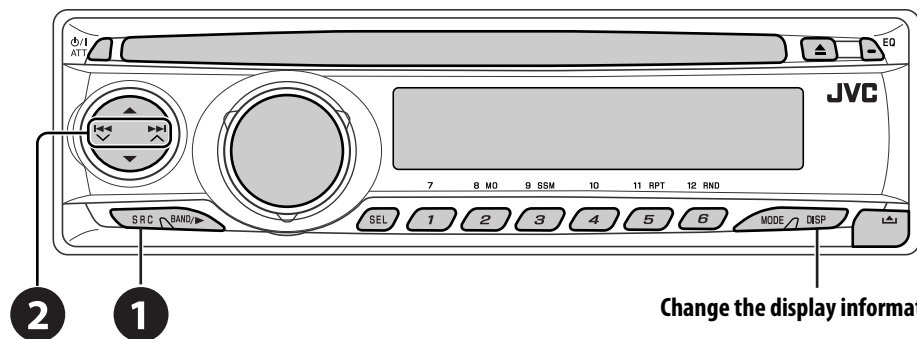
	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track
	MP3: Select folders

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks (MP3: within the same folder)
	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder DISC RPT: Repeat all tracks of the current disc
	FLDR RND: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks of current disc MAG RND: Randomly play all tracks of the inserted discs

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

Listening to the iPod®/D. player



Change the display information

Before operating, connect the interface adapter (KS-PD100 or KS-PD500) to the CD changer jack of this unit.

Preparations:

Make sure "CHANGER" is selected for the external input setting, see page 20.

- 1 Select "IPOD" or "D. PLAYER."
- 2 Select a song to start playing.

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.



- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Select the desired menu.



For iPod:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS
 ↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSER ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTIST ↔ ALBUM ↔
 GENRE ↔ TRACK ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Confirm the selection.



- To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- Holding ▼|◀◀/▶▶|▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

	Pause/stop playback • To resume playback, press it again.
	Press: Select tracks Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track

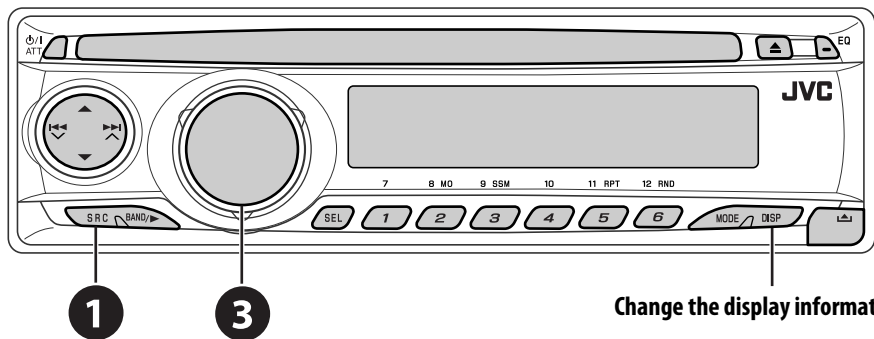
After pressing , press the following buttons to...

11 RPT 	ONE RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat One" or "Repeat Mode → One." ALL RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat All" or "Repeat Mode → All."
12 RND 	ALBM RND*: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod. SONG RND/RND ON: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" or "Random Play → On."

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

* iPod: Only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."

Listening to the other external components



You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

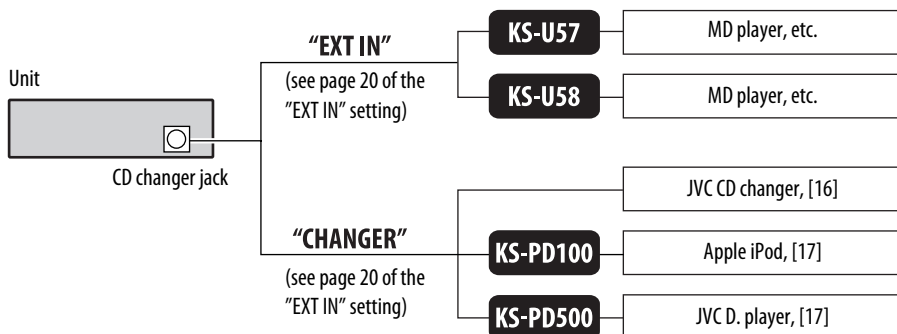
Preparations:

Make sure “EXT IN” is selected for the external input setting, see page 20.

- 1 Select “EXT IN.”
- 2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.
- 3 Adjust the volume.
- 4 Adjust the sound as you want (see page 19).

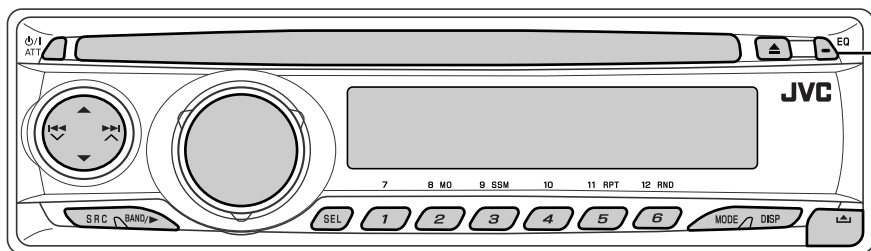
Concept diagram of the external device connection

- For connection, see Installation/Connection manual (separate volume).



KS-XXXX : Adapter (separately purchased)

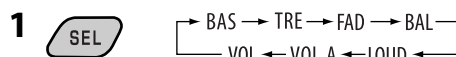
Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ



Indication (For)	BAS (bass)	TRE (treble)	LOUD (loudness)
USER (Flat sound)	00	00	OFF
ROCK (Rock or disco music)	+03	+01	ON
CLASSIC (Classical music)	+01	-02	OFF
POPS (Light music)	+04	+01	OFF
HIP HOP (Funk or rap music)	+02	00	ON
JAZZ (Jazz music)	+02	+03	OFF

BAS * ¹ (bass) Adjust the bass.	-06 to +06
TRE * ¹ (treble) Adjust the treble.	-06 to +06
FAD * ² (fader) Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 to F06
BAL (balance) Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 to R06
LOUD * ¹ (loudness) Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.	LOUD ON or LOUD OFF
VOL.A * ³ (volume adjust) Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level.	-05 to +05
VOL (volume) Adjust the volume.	00 to 30 (or 50)* ⁴

Adjusting the sound



2 Adjust the level.



*¹ When you adjust the bass, treble, or loudness, the adjustment you have made is stored for the currently selected sound mode (C-EQ) including "USER."

*² If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."

*³ You cannot make an adjustment for FM. "FIX" appears.

*⁴ Depending on the amplifier gain control setting. (See page 21 for details.)

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM settings.



2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.



4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
DEMO Display demonstration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DEMO ON [Initial] • DEMO OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [5]. : Cancels.
CLOCK H Hour adjustment	1 – 12 [Initial: 1 (1:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLOCK M Minute adjustment	00 – 59 [Initial: 00 (1:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
DIMMER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Dims the display illumination. : Cancels.
SCROLL *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ONCE [Initial] • AUTO • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
EXT IN *2 External input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHANGER [Initial] • EXT IN 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : To use a JVC CD changer, [16], or an Apple iPod/a JVC D. player, [17]. : To use any other external component than the above, [18].
TAG DISP Tag display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TAG ON [Initial] • TAG OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
NTSC/PAL Video format	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PAL [Initial] • NTSC 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Select this if your monitor is of the PAL color system. : Select this if your monitor is of the NTSC color system.

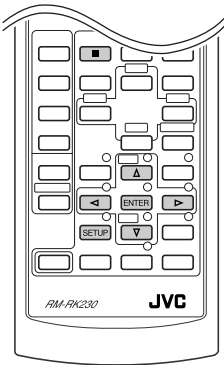
*1 Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.

*2 Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, or DISC.

Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
AMP GAIN Amplifier gain control	• LOW PWR	: VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.)
	• HIGH PWR [Initial]	: VOL 00 – VOL 50
IF BAND Intermediate frequency filter	• AUTO [Initial]	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)
	• WIDE	: Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.

DVD setup menu

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Enter the DVD setup menu while stop.



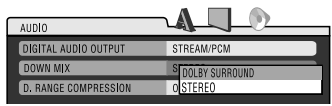
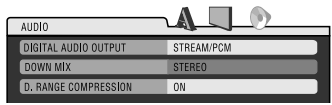
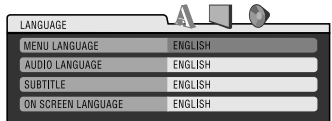
2 Select a menu.



3 Select an item you want to set up.




4 Select an option.



To return to normal screen



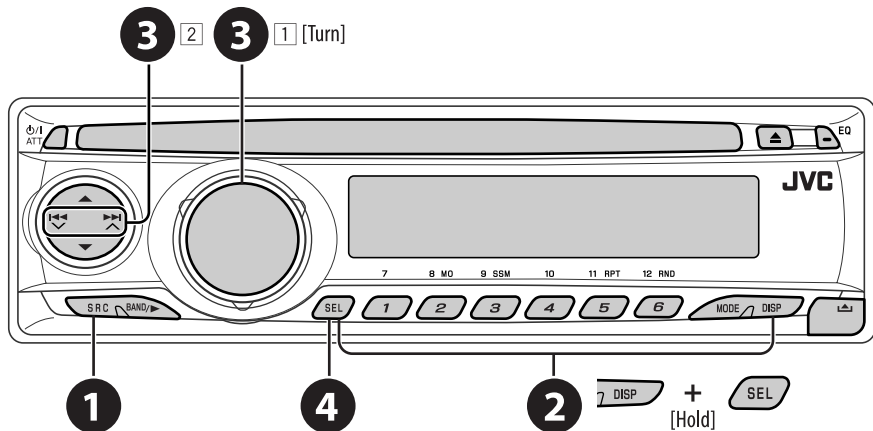
Continued on the next page

Menu	Item	Setting
LANGUAGE	MENU LANGUAGE	Select the initial disc menu language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	AUDIO LANGUAGE	Select the initial audio language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	SUBTITLE	Select the initial subtitle language or remove the subtitle (OFF). Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select the language for the on screen display.
PICTURE	MONITOR TYPE	<p>Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.</p> <p>16:9 4:3 LETTER BOX 4:3 PAN SCAN</p> 
	OSD POSITION	<p>Select the on-screen bar position on the monitor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Higher position • 2: Lower position (Guidance below the DVD setup menu will disappear.)
AUDIO	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	<p>Select the signal format to be emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (Optical) terminal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PCM ONLY: Select for an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio, or connecting to a recording device. • DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. • STREAM/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio.
	DOWN MIX	<p>When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks (and through the DIGITAL OUT terminal when "PCM ONLY" is selected for "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT").</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DOLBY SURROUND: Select to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. • STEREO: Normally select this.
	D. RANGE COMPRESSION	<p>You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software). • ON: Select to always use this function.

Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KY	Kirghiz	PT	Portuguese	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	LA	Latin	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LN	Lingala	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LO	Laothian	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LT	Lithuanian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LV	Latvian, Lettish	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	MG	Malagasy	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MI	Maori	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MK	Macedonian	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	ML	Malayalam	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	MN	Mongolian	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MO	Moldavian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MR	Marathi	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MS	Malay (MAY)	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MT	Maltese	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Assigning names to the stations



You can assign names to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) and up to 8 characters for each station name.

- 1 Select "FM/AM."
- 2 Show the title entry screen.
- 3 Assign a title.
 - 1 Select a character.
 - 2 Move to the next (or previous) character position.
 - 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering the title.
- 4 Finish the procedure.

To erase the entire title

In step 2 above...



Available characters

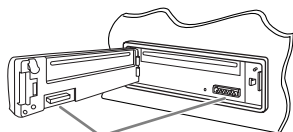
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	-	/	<	>	space	

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

Center holder



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

FM/AM

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing stations, the previously preset stations are erased and stations are stored newly.

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3/WMA files and their file names.
- This unit can also playback 8 cm discs.
- This unit can only playback audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- This unit can recognize a total of 3 500 files (250 folder per disc; 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for the files.
- This unit may be unable to play back some discs or files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 64 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate). Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - Files which have the data such as WAVE, AT-RAC3, etc.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play starts from where it has been stopped previously.
For MP3/WMA disc, playback starts from the beginning of the last playing track.

iPod® or D. player

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 8 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 20). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, “NAMEFULL” appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

General settings—PSM

- If you change the “AMP GAIN” setting from “HIGH PWR” to “LOW PWR” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30.”


DVD setup menu


- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial language settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PAN SCAN” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LETTER BOX” for some DVDs.


On-screen guide icons

During playback, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

DVD: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing:

 : Multi-subtitle languages

 : Multi-audio languages


 : Multi-angle views

 : Playback

 : Pause

 : DVD/VCD: Forward slow motion

 : DVD: Reverse slow motion

 : Forward search

 : Reverse search

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):** 2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 22.)

- **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):** Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see table below.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” correctly. (See page 22.)

Output signals through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Output signals are different depending on the “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” setting on the setup menu (see page 22).

DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Output Signals		
	STREAM/PCM	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	PCM ONLY
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
	96 kHz, Linear PCM		
	with DTS	DTS bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital bitstream	
	with MPEG Audio	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM
Audio CD, Video CD	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM/48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS	DTS bitstream	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
MP3/WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 10). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc cannot be recognized.	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• No playback picture (DVD/VCD) appears on the monitor.	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. (See Installation/Connection Manual.)
	• No picture appears on the monitor at all.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
	• The monitor shows black and white wavy pictures (DVD/VCD).	Use a disc recorded in NTSC color system and change the video format to NTSC (see page 20).
	• The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the monitor.	Select "4:3 LETTER BOX" (see page 22).

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the disc. • Record tracks using a compliant application in the appropriate discs (see page 4). • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3/WMA tracks.)
	• Longer readout time is required.	Readout time varies due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration. Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks cannot playback as you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• “NO FILES” appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains tracks of appropriate formats.
CD changer	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
	• “NO DISC” appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• “NO MAG” appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• “RESET 8” appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• “RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
iPod/D. player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Change the battery. Update the firmware version.
	Buttons do not work as intended.	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press MODE before performing the operation.
	The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod/D. player.
	“NO IPOD” or “NO DP” appears on the display.	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 17).
	No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. “ERROR 01” appears on the display when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	“NO FILES” or “NO TRACK” appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	“RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	“RESET 8” appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod or D. player.	

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass/Treble:	±10 dB at 100 Hz/±10 dB at 10 kHz
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical):	Signal wave length: 660 nm Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm
		Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		PAL/NTSC
	Video Output (composite):		1 V _{p-p} /75 Ω
	Other Terminal:		CD changer

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)		
	Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)		
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz	
		DVD, fs=96 kHz:	16 Hz to 44 000 Hz	
		VCD/CD/MP3/WMA:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz	
	Dynamic Range:	96 dB		
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB		
	Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit		
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps	
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz	
WMA:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 192 kbps		
	Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz		
		MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz		

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)	
	Grounding System:	Negative ground		
	Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C		
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm	
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm	
	Mass (approx.):	1.6 kg (excluding accessories)		

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS 2.0 + Digital Out” are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

在操作時遇到麻煩了？

請重設本機

參閱如何重設本機之頁

JVC



EN, CT

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

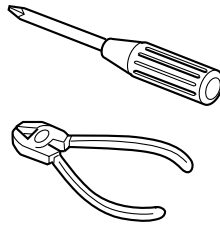
1205DTSMDTJEIN

JVC KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205

Installation/Connection Manual

安裝/連接手冊

GET0369-006A
[U/UT]



1205DTSMDTJEIN
EN, CT

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent accidents and damage:

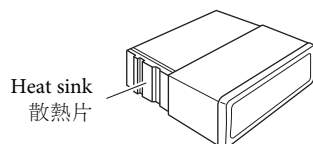
- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where;**
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT operate the unit while driving.**
- **If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



中文

本機僅可使用**直流 12 V、負極接地的電源系統**。如果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統，則需要一個電壓變換器，可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。

警告

為防止事故和損壞：

- 切勿將本機安裝在下述位置；
 - 可能會妨礙操作方向盤和變速排檔桿的位置。
 - 可能會妨礙操作安全裝置，如安全氣袋等的位置。
 - 可能會妨礙視野的位置。
- 切勿在駕駛過程中操作本機。
- 在駕駛過程中若需要操作本機，切記要密切注意前方。
- 駕駛員在駕駛過程中切勿觀看顯示器。
若手剎車未嚙合，"駕駛時，駕駛員請勿觀看顯示屏。"字樣在顯示器上出現，且無法播放圖像。
 - 僅當手剎車導線與汽車內置的手剎車系統相連接時此警告信息才會出現。

為防止短路，建議在安裝本機之前，斷開電池的負極，並把所有電路都連接好。

- **安裝完畢後務必將本機的地線重新接至車身。**

注意：

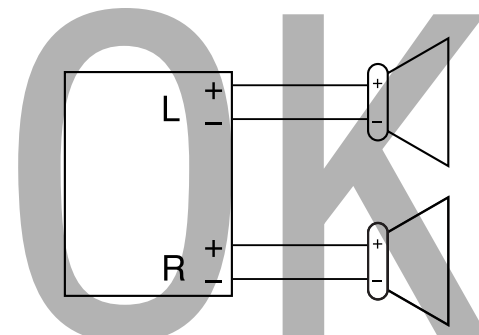
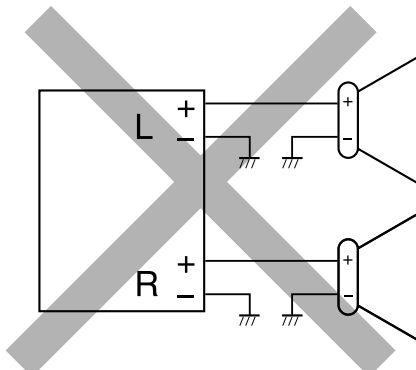
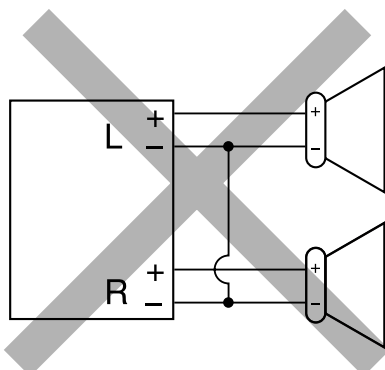
- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲經常燒壞，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- 後置和前置揚聲器的最大輸入功率應大於 50 W，其阻抗為 **4 Ω - 8 Ω**。如果最大功率小於 50 W，請調校 "AMP GAIN" 設定值，以防止揚聲器損壞。(參閱使用說明書的第 21 頁)。
- 為防止電源短路，請用絕緣帶包住**未使用**電線的端子。
- 本機使用後，散熱片會很熱。因此，在移出本機時，小心不要觸摸散熱片。

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

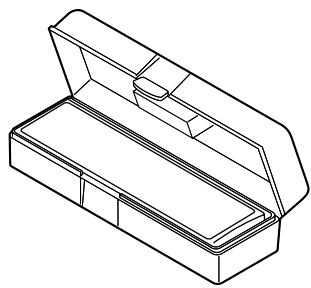
電源和揚聲器接線注意事項:

- 切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池，否則本機將會嚴重損壞。
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前，檢查您汽車上的揚聲器線路。

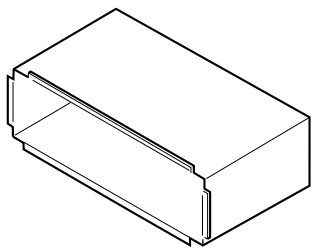


Parts list for installation and connection

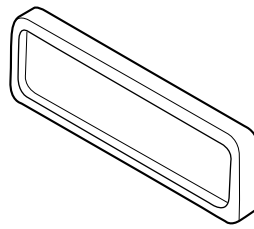
The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.



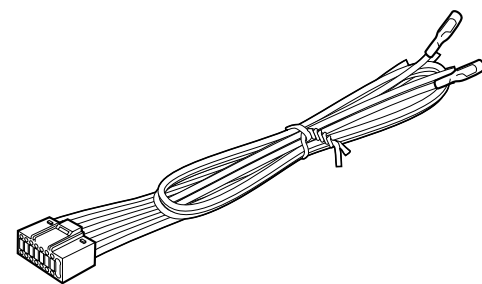
A / B
Hard case/Control panel
硬盒/控制面板



C
Sleeve
外套機殼

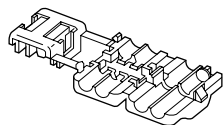


D
Trim plate
裝飾框



E
Power cord
電路連接用的配線束

F
Crimp connector
夾子接頭



G
Washer (ø5)
墊圈 (ø5)



H
Lock nut (M5)
鎖定螺母 (M5)



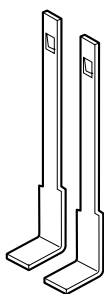
I
Mounting bolt (M5 × 20 mm)
緊固螺栓 (M5 × 20 mm)



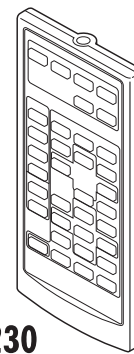
J
Rubber cushion
橡膠防震墊



K
Handles
板條型把手



L
Remote controller
遙控器



M
Battery
電池



CR2025

RM-RK230

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

• Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):

2-channel signal is emitted.

When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

• Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 28 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital*1 and DTS*2, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" correctly. (See page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

*1 Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" and "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

有關自後面板端子輸出的聲音

• 自模擬端子 (揚聲器輸出 / LINE OUT) :

輸出雙聲道信號。

當播放多聲道編碼的碟片時，多聲道信號會被下行混合處理。(音頻—下行混合: 參閱使用說明書的第 22 頁。)

• 自 DIGITAL OUT 輸出 (光學端子) :

此端子輸出數碼信號 (線性 PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, 音頻 MPEG)。

(詳情參閱使用說明書的第 28 頁。)
想要獲得多聲道音響效果，如 Dolby Digital*1 和 DTS*2 時，將與多聲道音響效果相兼容的功率放大器或解碼器連接至該端子，並正確設定 "數碼音頻輸出"。(參閱使用說明書的第 22 頁。)

*1 由 Dolby Laboratories 授權製造。

杜比、Dolby 與雙 D 記號是 Dolby Laboratories 的商標。

*2 "DTS" 和 "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" 是數碼影院系統公司的商標。

TROUBLESHOOTING

• The fuse blows.

* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

• Power cannot be turned on.

* Is the yellow lead connected?

• No sound from the speakers.

* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

• Sound is distorted.

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?

* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• Noise interfere with sounds.

* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

• Unit becomes hot.

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?

* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• This unit does not work at all.

* Have you reset your unit?

故障排除

• 保險絲燒斷。

* 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否接觸正確?

• 電源不能接通。

* 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上?

• 揚聲器沒有聲音。

* 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路?

• 聲音失真。

* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地?

* 檢查揚聲器的左 (L)、右 (R) 端子的負極 (-) 是否共同接地?

• 噪音干擾音響。

* 後接地端子與車身是否使用較短和較粗的電線連接?

• 本機發熱。

* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地?

* 檢查揚聲器的左 (L)、右 (R) 端子的負極 (-) 是否共同接地?

• 本機完全不能操作。

* 您是否已經重置您的機組?

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

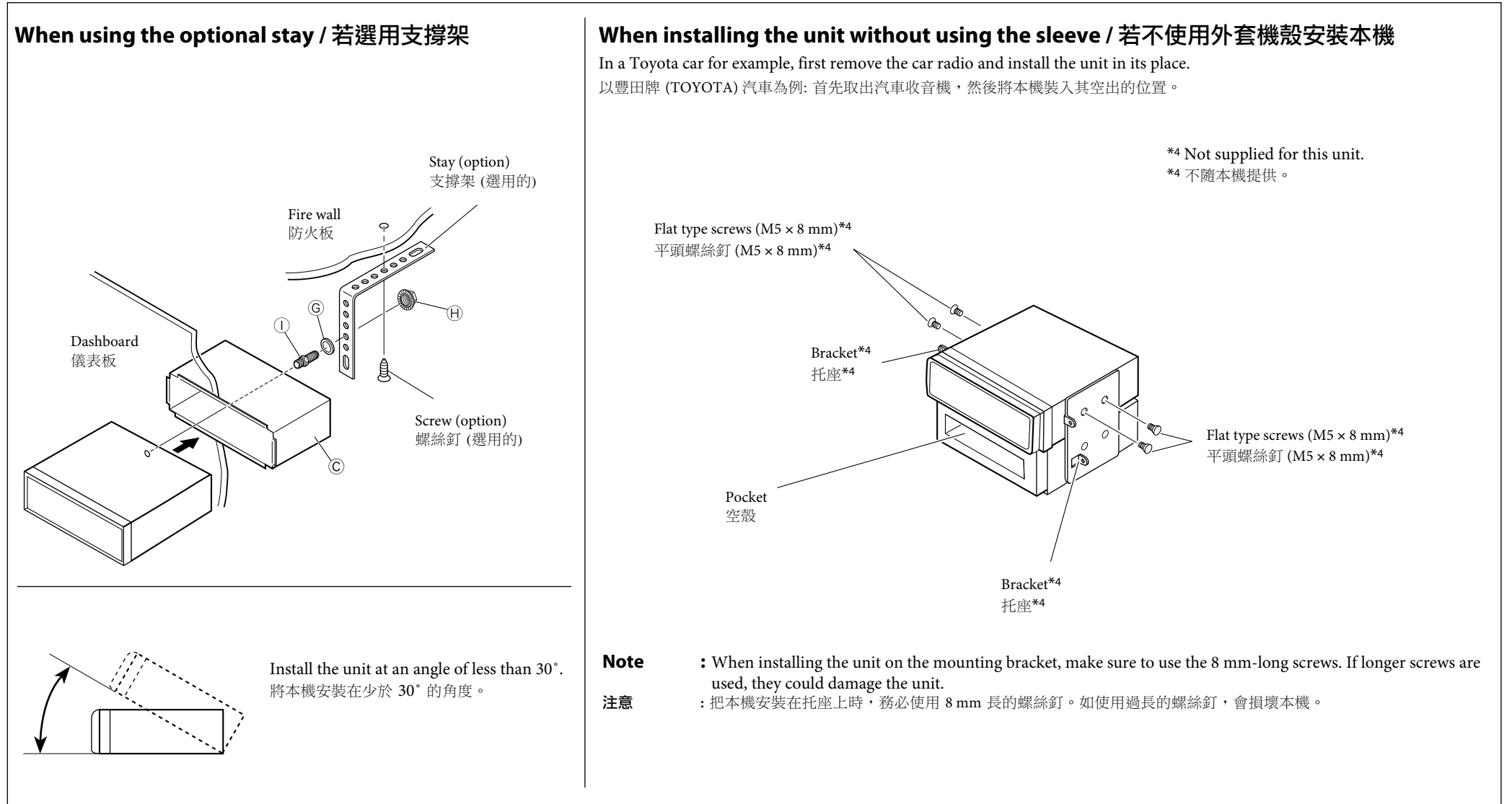
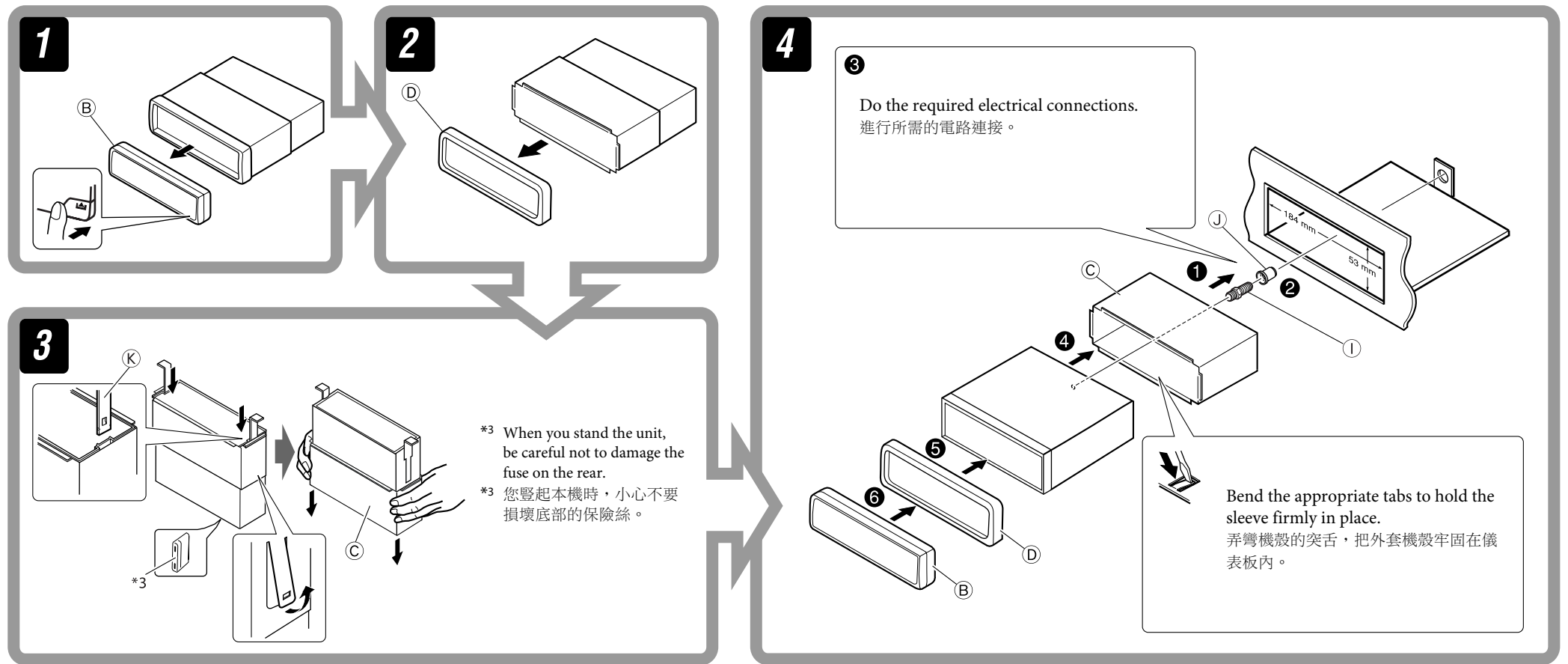
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

安裝 (裝設、固定在儀表板內)

下面的圖解表示了典型的安裝程序。如果您有問題，或需要有關配套元件的資料，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或配套元件供應公司詢問。

- 如果您不能確定如何正確地安裝本機，應請合格的技術人員來安裝。

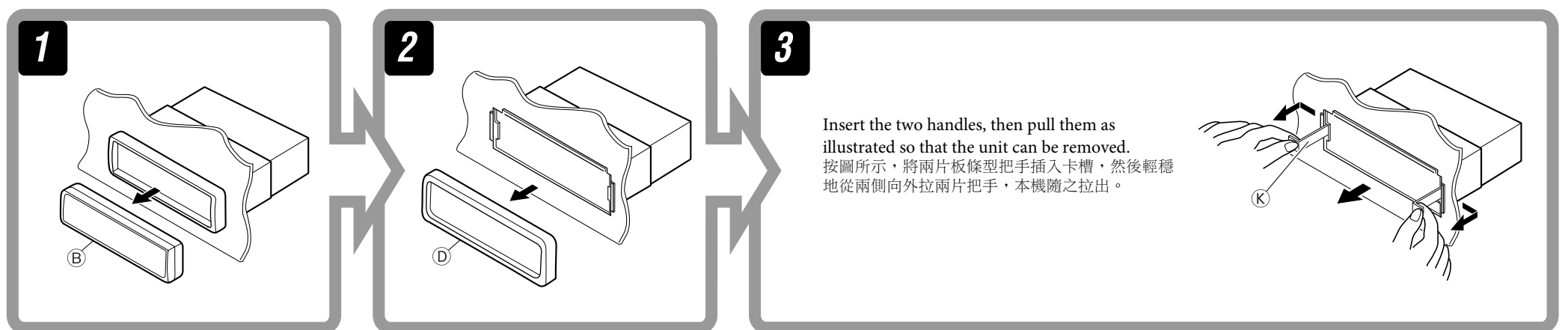


Removing the unit

Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

拆卸本機

在拆卸本機前，應將本機後部的固定和連接部分鬆開。



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

電路連接

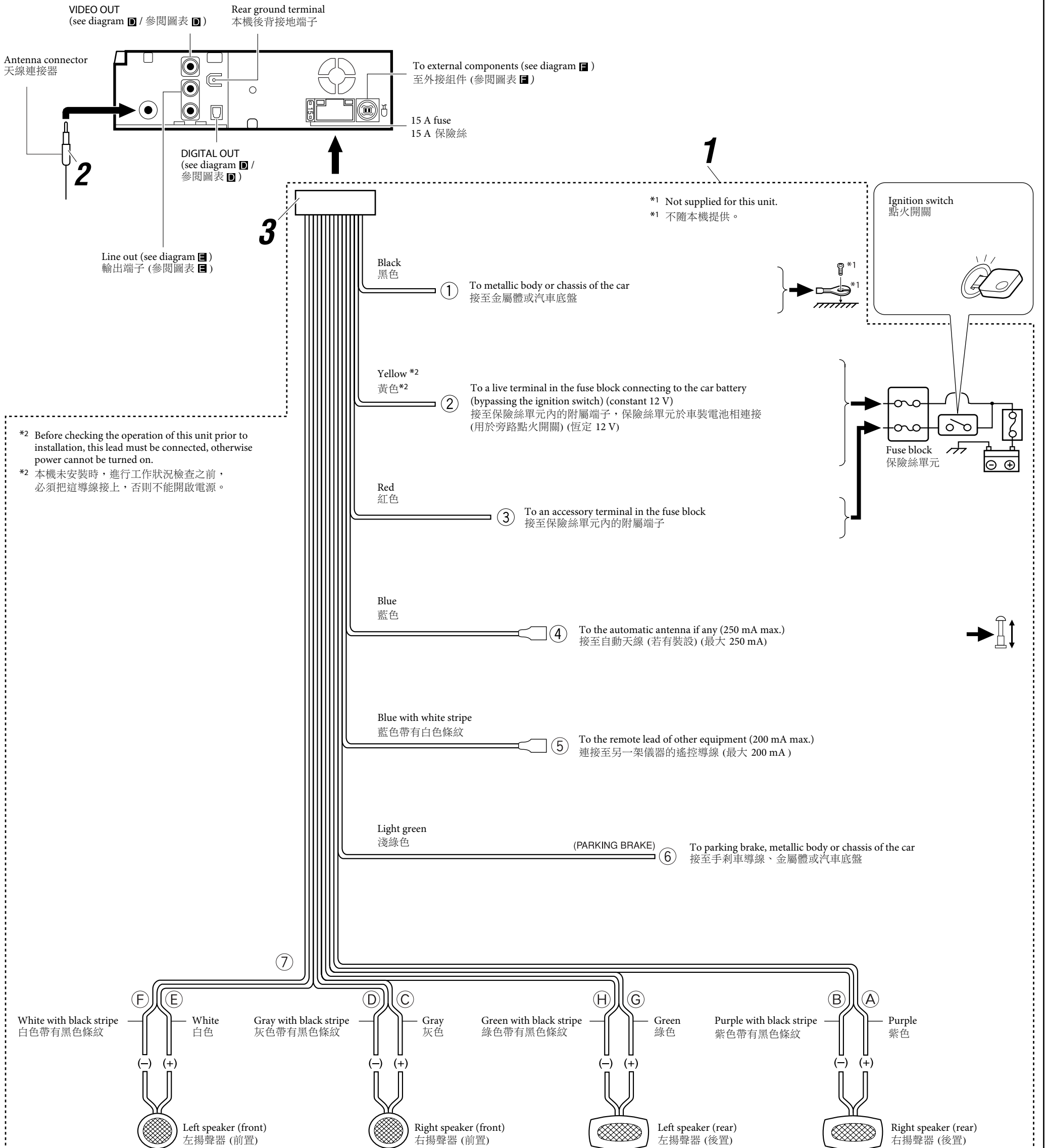
A Typical connections / 典型的接線方法

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

接線前: 仔細檢查汽車內的線路。不正確的接線會導致本機嚴重損壞。
電力線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能有所不同。

- 1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 2 Connect the antenna cord.
- 3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

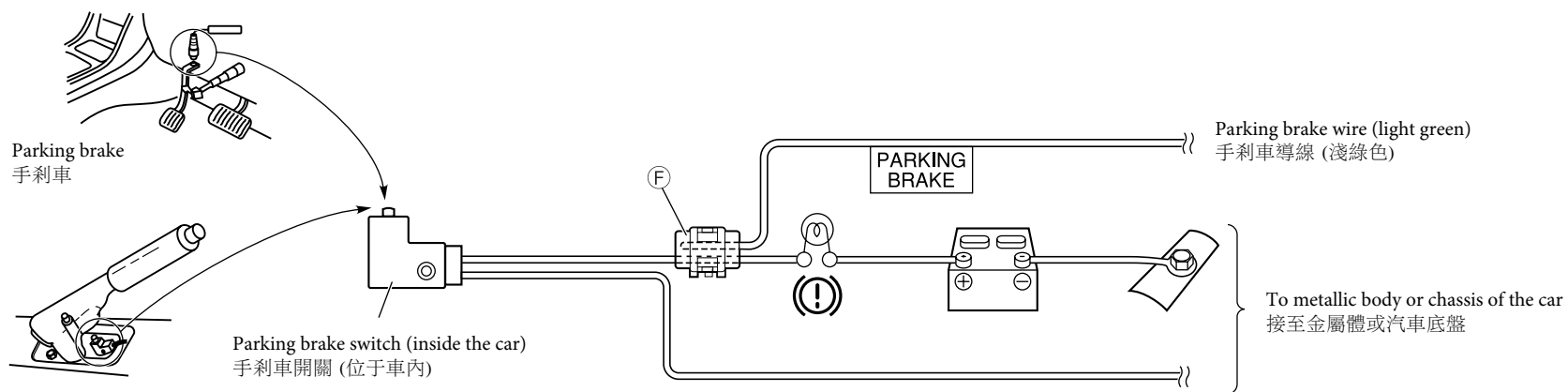
- 1 依照下圖所示之次序連接電源線的顏色導線。
- 2 將天線的電線連接起來。
- 3 最後，把配線束的插頭插在本機上。



B Connecting the parking brake wire / 連接至手剎車導線

When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver

將顯示器安裝在司機可以看到的位置時

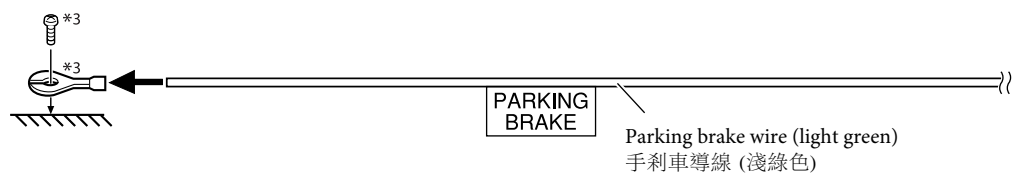


When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver

將顯示器安裝在司機看不到的位置時

Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis of the car.

將手剎車導線連接至金屬體或汽車底盤。

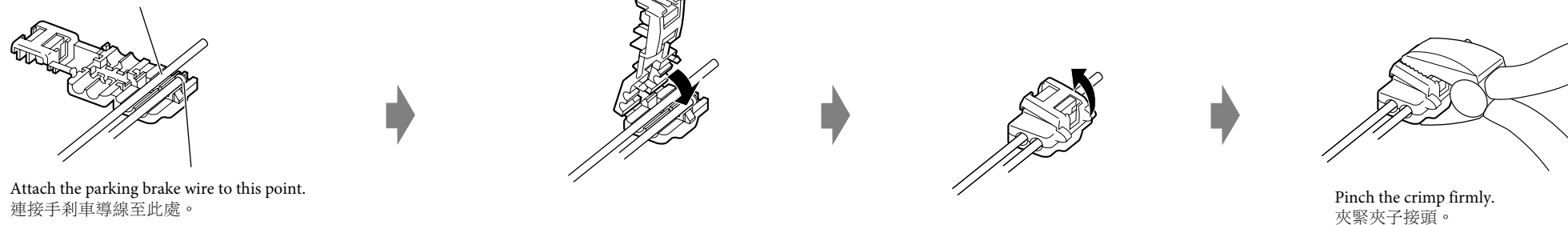


*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 不隨本機提供。

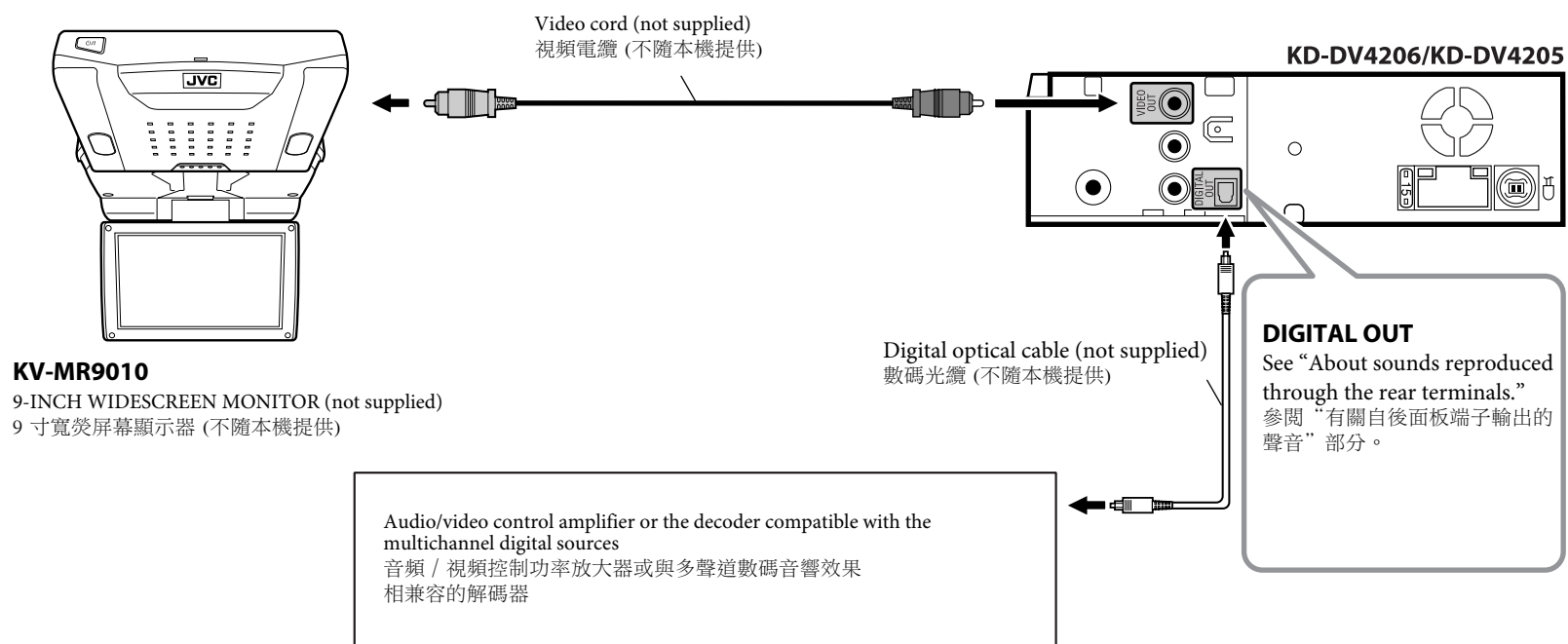
C Connecting the crimp connector / 連接至夾子接頭

Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
連接電池和手剎車開關的電線。

Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
使夾子接頭金屬部分和內部電線接觸。



D Required connections for DVD playback / 播放 DVD 所需的連接



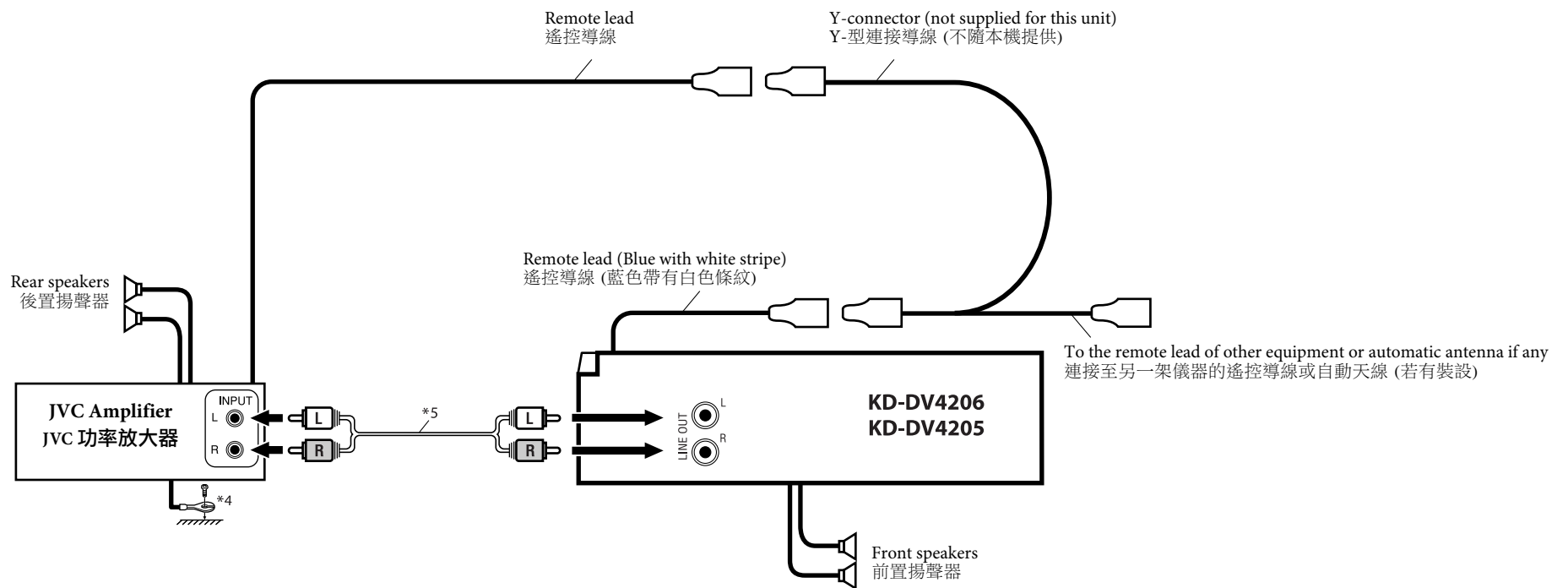
E Connecting the external amplifier / 連接至外部功率放大器

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

您可以連接放大器以升級您的汽車立體聲系統。

- 將遙控導線（藍色帶有白色條紋）和其他裝置上的遙控導線連接起來，以便可以通過本機進行遙控。
- 將揚聲器和本機斷開，再接上功率放大器。將本機的揚聲器接線放置不用。



*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*4 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接，連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋（如果已塗上油漆，在連接電線前，將油漆刮去）。如果不這樣做，可能會損壞本機。

*5 信號電纜（不隨本機提供）

F Connecting the external components / 連接其他外部組件

CD changer, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / CD 換碟器、Apple iPod® 或 JVC D. player

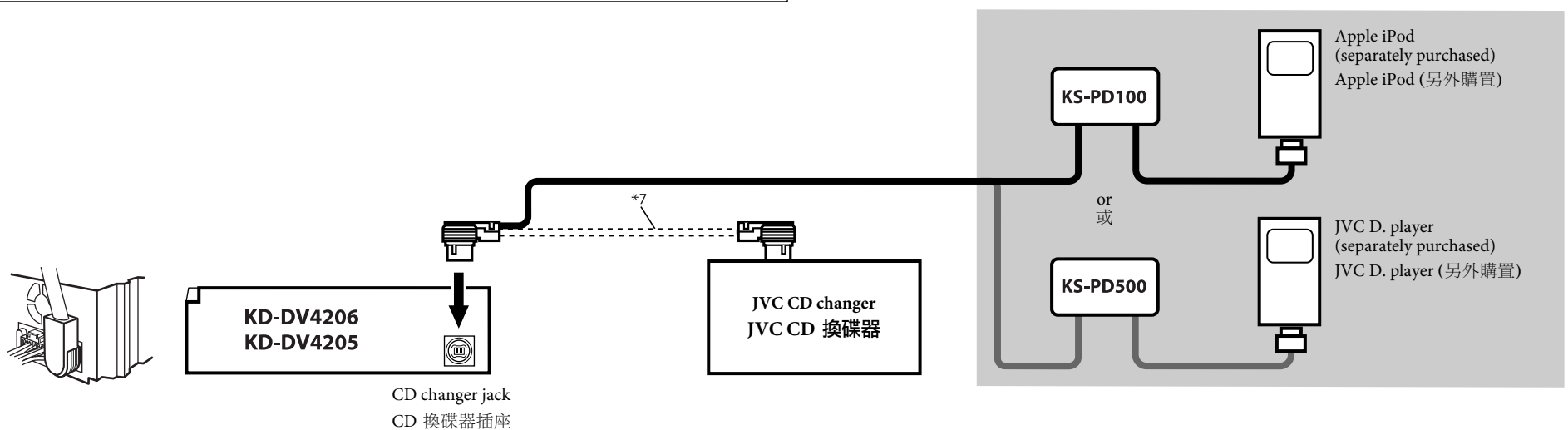
- Set "CHANGER" for the external input setting (See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / 將外部輸入設定設至 "CHANGER" (換碟器) (參閱使用說明書的第 20 頁。)

You can connect these components as illustrated below. The iPod*6 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

您可以將這組件如圖所示進行連接。您可以使用界面適配器（不配備）— KS-PD100 (iPod 用) 或 KS-PD500 (D. player 用) 連接 iPod*6 或 D. player。

CAUTION / 小心：

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
連接外部組件之前，先確定本機已經關閉。



*6 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

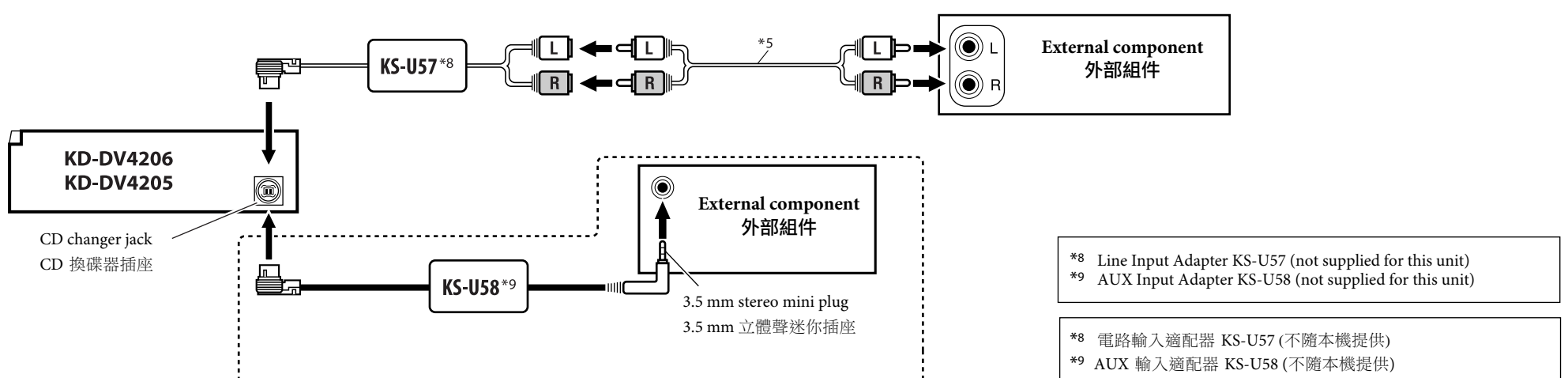
*7 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer

*6 iPod 是 Apple Computer, Inc. (蘋果電腦公司) 在美國及其他國家註冊的商標。

*7 您的 CD 換碟器配備的連接電纜

Other external component / 其他外部組件

- Set "EXT IN" for the external input setting (See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / 將外部輸入設定設至 "EXT IN" (外部輸入) (參閱使用說明書的第 20 頁。)



*8 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*9 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)

*8 電路輸入適配器 KS-U57 (不隨本機提供)
*9 AUX 輸入適配器 KS-U58 (不隨本機提供)

JVC



DVD/CD RECEIVER

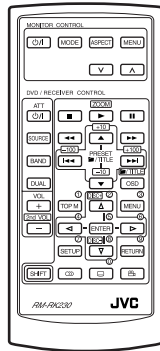
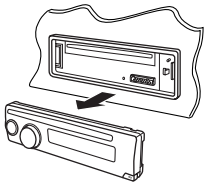
KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205

ENGLISH

INDONESIA

ALAT PENERIMA DVD/CD

KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205



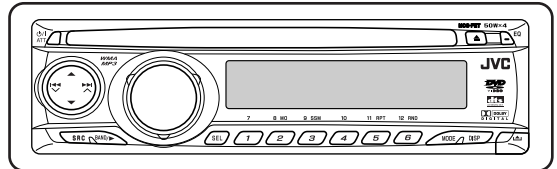
MP3
WMA

COMPACT
disc
DIGITAL VIDEO

DOLBY
DIGITAL

dts
20+DIGITAL OUT

DVD
VIDEO



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 5.
Untuk membatalkan tampilan demonstrasi, lihat halaman 5.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.
Untuk instalasi dan penyambungan, lihat buku pedoman terpisah.

INSTRUCTIONS BUKU PETUNJUK

GET0369-003A
[UN]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.	ADVARSEL: Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til strålingen.	WARNING: Synlig och osynlig laserstråling den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Beträkta ej strålen.	VARO: Avvattassa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alittina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan ihteeseen.
(e)	(d)	(s)	(f)

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

How to use functions mode

If you press MODE, the unit goes into functions mode, then the number buttons and ▲/▼ buttons work as different function buttons.

MODE

[Within 5 seconds...]

8 MO 9 SSM 11 RPT 12 RND

2 3 5 6

How to reset your unit

- Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

How to forcibly eject a disc

⏻/ATT + [Hold] ▲

- If this does not work, reset your unit.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

How to detach/attach the control panel

Detaching...

Attaching...

WARNINGS:

To prevent accidents and damage

- **DO NOT** install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate the unit while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
 If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.





Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

<i>Introduction</i>	4
■ OPERATIONS	
<i>Basic operations</i>	
• <i>Control panel</i>	6
• <i>Remote controller (RM-RK230)</i>	7
<i>Listening to the radio</i>	9
<i>Disc operations</i>	10
■ EXTERNAL DEVICES	
<i>Listening to the CD changer</i>	16
<i>Listening to the iPod®/D. player</i>	17
<i>Listening to the other external components</i>	18
■ SETTINGS	
<i>Selecting a preset sound mode—C-EQ</i>	19
<i>General settings—PSM</i>	20
<i>DVD setup menu</i>	21
<i>Assigning names to the stations</i>	24
 <i>Maintenance</i>	 25
<i>More about this unit</i>	26
<i>Troubleshooting</i>	29
<i>Specifications</i>	32

Introduction

Disc type	✓ OK Playable	✗ NO Unplayable
 DVD	DVD Video, Dual Disc (DVD side only), DVD-R*/-RW, +R/+RW • Recorded in DVD-Video format only and in PAL/NTSC color system	DVD Audio, Dual Disc (non-DVD side), DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM, DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW • Recorded in DVD-VR format
 VCD	Video CD CD-R/-RW	SVCD (Super Video CD)
 MP3/WMA	DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW, DVD-ROM • Compliant to UDF bridge format	—
	CD-R/-RW • Compliant to ISO 9660 level 1, ISO 9660 level 2, Romeo, Joliet	—
 CD	Audio CD, CD Text CD-R/-RW • Compliant to CD-DA format	CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD

• It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video mode only) discs. However, the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.

* DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “3.”

Examples:

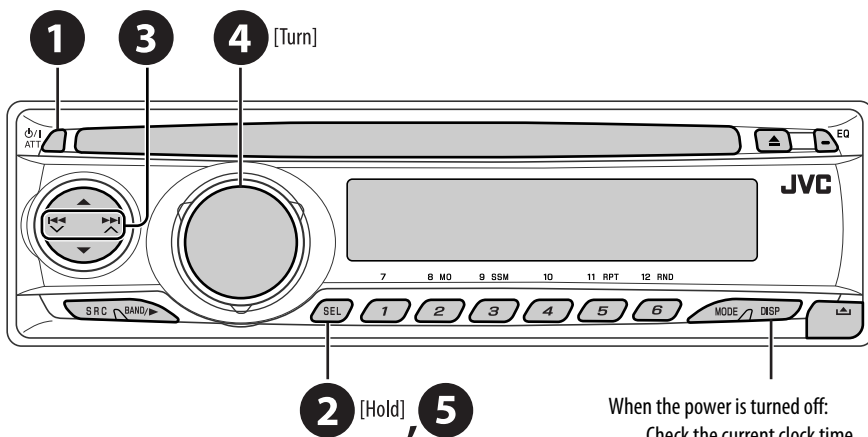


If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“REGION CODE ERROR!” appears on the monitor.

Before operating the unit — Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

• See also page 20.

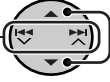


When the power is turned off:
Check the current clock time
When the power is turned on:
Change the display information

- 1 **Turn on the power.**
- 2 **Enter the PSM settings.**
- 3 ⇒ 4 **Cancel the display demonstrations**
Select “DEMO,” then “DEMO OFF.”
- Set the clock**
Select “CLOCK H” (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select “CLOCK M” (minute), then adjust the minute.
- 5 **Finish the procedure.**

Basic operations — Control panel

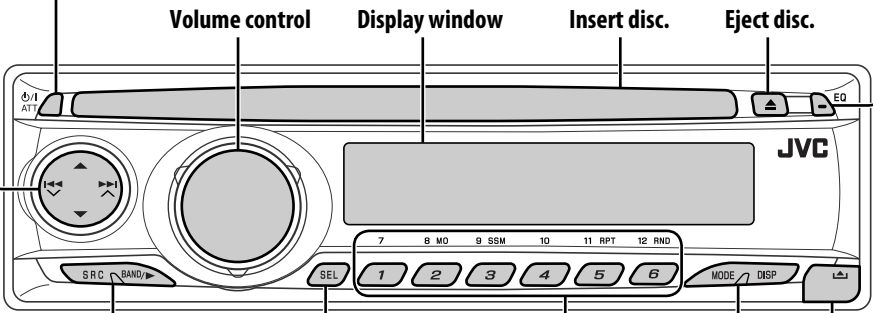
- **FM/AM:** Search for station.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/track.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Select track.



- **FM/AM:** Select preset station.
- **DISC:** Select folder.
Also functions as +10/-10 buttons after pressing MODE to skip 10 chapters/tracks at a time.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Enter the main menu/Pause or stop playback/Confirm selection.

- Turn on the power.
- Turn off the power [Hold].
- Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

Select the sound mode.



Adjust the sound mode.
Hold to enter the PSM settings.

Detach the panel.

- **FM/AM:** Select preset station.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/title/folder/track/disc (for CD changer).



Select the source.

FM/AM → **DISC*** → **CD-CH***/**IPOD***/**D.PLAYER*** (or **EXT IN**) → (back to the beginning)

* You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.



- **FM/AM:** Select the bands.
- **DISC:** Start playback.



Enter functions mode.

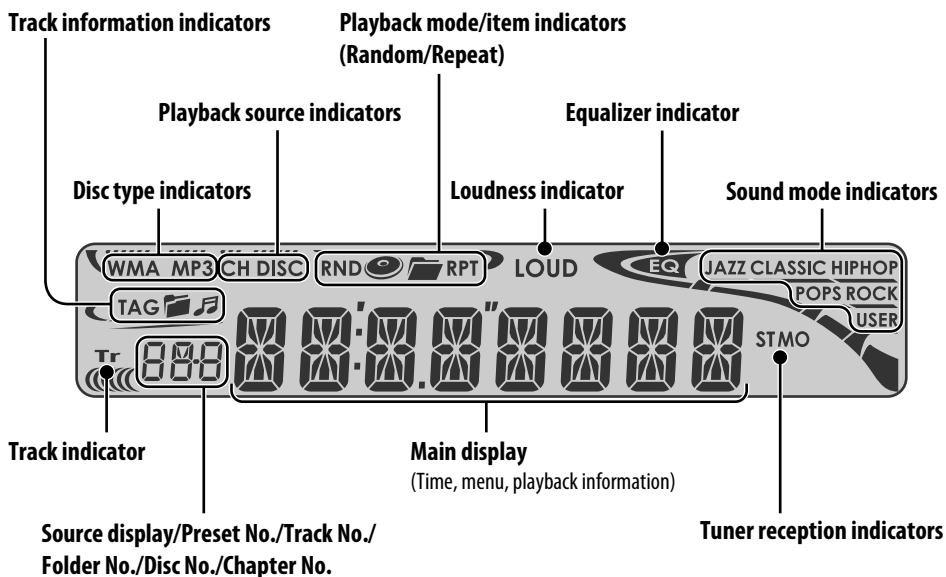
Press MODE, then one of the following buttons (within 5 seconds)...

- MO:** Turn on/off monaural reception.
- SSM:** Automatic station presetting.
- RPT:** Select repeat play.
- RND:** Select random play.



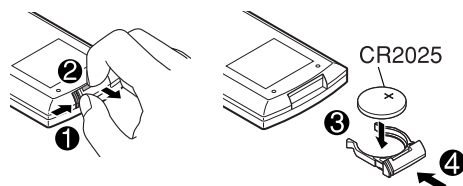
Change the display information.

Display window



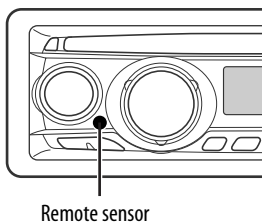
Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK230)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

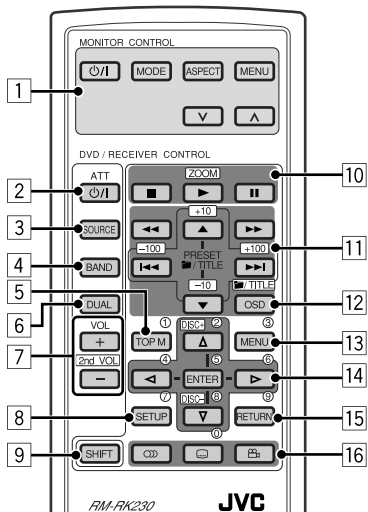
- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Warning: To prevent accidents and damage

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Continued on the next page



MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons
 - Used for a JVC monitor—KV-MR9010, KV-MH6510, KV-M706, or KV-M705.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 Turns on/off the power.
 - Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- 3 Selects the source.
- 4 Selects the FM/AM bands.
- 5*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 6 Not applicable for this unit.
- 7 Adjusts the volume level.
 - 2nd VOL: Not applicable for this unit.
- 8*1 Enters DVD setup menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10
 - (stop), ► (play), || (pause)
 - ► (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button (see page 12).
 - Not applicable for CD changer/iPod/D. player operations.

11*2 **For advanced disc operations:**

- ■/TITLE ▲ / ▼
 - DVD: Selects the titles.
 - MP3/WMA: Selects the folders if included.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse skip/forward skip.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse search/forward search (not applicable for CD changer operations).

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- PRESET ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset stations.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶
 - Searches for the stations if pressed briefly.
 - Manual searches if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - ▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
 - ▲: Enters the main menu.
 - (Now ▲/▼/◀◀ / ▶▶ work as the menu selecting buttons.)*3
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (in menu selecting mode)
 - Selects an item if pressed briefly.
 - (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
 - Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

- 12
 - Shows the on-screen bar.
 - Also function as the ■/TITLE button when pressed with SHIFT button (see pages 12 and 13).
- 13*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 14*1
 - Makes selection/settings.
 - DISC +/- buttons: Changes discs when the source is “CD-CH.”
- 15*1 RETURN button
- 16
 - DVD: Selects audio language (○○○), subtitles (□□□), angle (□□□).
 - VCD: Selects audio channel (○○○).

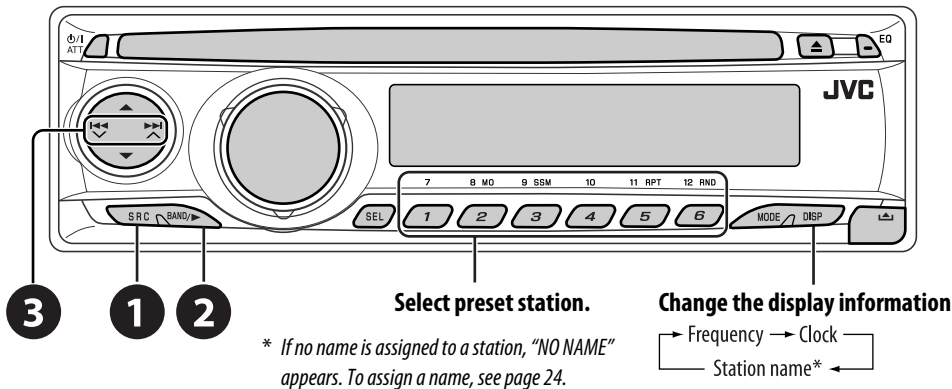
*1 Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

– FM/AM: Selects preset stations.
– DISC: Selects chapter/title/folder/track.

*2 Functions as +10/-10/+100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

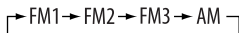
*3 ▲ : Returns to the previous menu.
▼ : Confirms the selection.

Listening to the radio



1 Select "FM/AM."

2 Select the bands.



3 Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.

- Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.

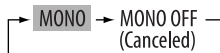


Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



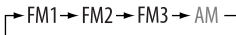
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

- MO indicator lights up.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset six stations for each band.

1



2

3 [Hold]

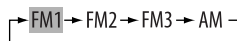


Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

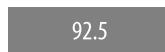
Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

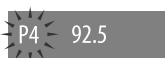
1



2



3 [Hold]



Disc operations

Before performing any operations...

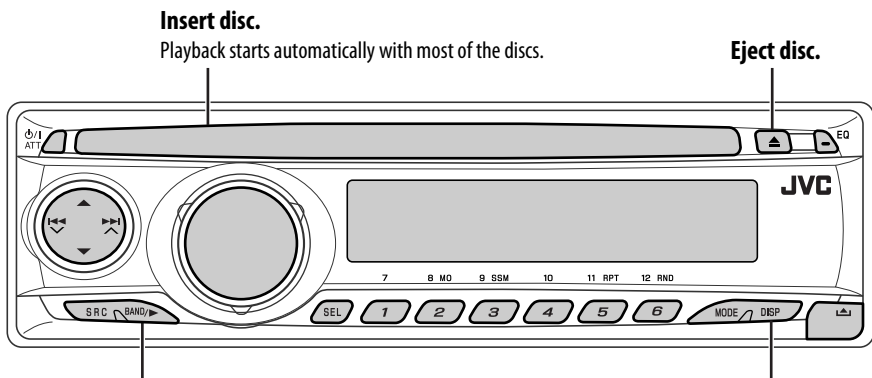
Turn on the monitor for playing a DVD or VCD. If you turn on the monitor, you can also control playback of other discs by referring to the monitor screen. (See pages 13 – 15.)

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc does not have any disc menu (when playback stops), all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If “⊘” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing “⊘,” operations will not be accepted.



Start playback if necessary.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

*1 If the file does not have Tag information or “TAG DISP” is set to “TAG OFF” (see page 20), folder name and file name appear. TAG indicator will not light up.

*2 “NO NAME” appears for an audio CD.

Change the display information



Elapsed playing time → Clock → Current title and chapter number



Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number










Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number
Track title ← Album name/performer (file name*1) (folder name*1)




Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number
Track title*2 ← Disc title/performer*2








Operations using the control panel

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

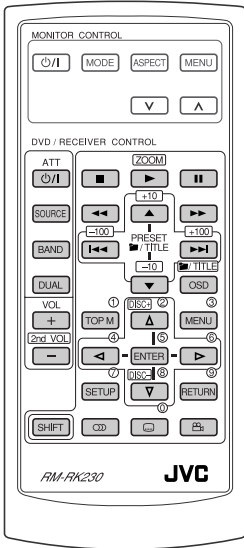
Disc type			 (Number buttons)
 DVD	<i>Press:</i> Select chapter <i>Hold:</i> Reverse/fast-forward chapter*	—	During stop: Locate title During play/pause: Locate chapter
 VCD	<i>Press:</i> Select track <i>Hold:</i> Reverse/fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Select track	Select folder	Locate particular folder directly
 CD	<i>Press:</i> Select track <i>Hold:</i> Reverse/fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly

* Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Rightarrow \times 10$ on the monitor.

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

Disc type			
 DVD	Skip 10 chapters (during play or pause)	CHP RPT: Repeat current chapter TIT RPT: Repeat current title	—
 VCD	Skip 10 tracks (PBC not in use)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track (PBC not in use)	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Skip 10 tracks (within the same folder)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: Repeat current folder	FLDR RND: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks
 CD	Skip 10 tracks	TRK RPT: Repeat current track	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks

• To cancel repeat play or random play, select “RPT OFF” or “RND OFF.”



- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play (10-second review if pressed during play.)
- : Reverse/forward chapter search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
- : *Press:* Select chapter (during play or pause)
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter search
- : Select title
- : Select audio language
- : Select subtitle language
- : Select view angle



Using menu driven features...

- 1 /
- 2 Select an item you want to start play.
- 3

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.
 ...
 - 2 Move the enlarged portion.
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."

While holding ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select chapter (during play or pause)
Select title (when stop)
- , then ①...⑨ :
Select title directly

- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
 - Reverse slow motion does not work.
- : *Press:* Select track
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search
- : Select audio channel (ST: stereo, L: left, R: Right)

While holding ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select track (For VCD with PBC, a list of items is shown on the disc menu.)
 - To return to the previous menus, press .

Canceling the PBC playback...

- 1
- 2 While holding , press ①...⑨ *3 to start the desired track.
• To resume PBC, press / .

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.
 ...
 - 2 Move the enlarged portion.
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."



MP3/WMA

- : Stop play
- ⏸ : Pause
- ▶ : Start play (Playback starts from the beginning of the track.)
- ◀◀ ▶▶ : Select track
- ▲ ▼ : Select folder

While holding **SHIFT** ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select track (within the same folder)
- TITLE** / **OSD** , then ①...⑨ : Select folder directly*4

CD

- : Stop play
- ⏸ : Pause
- ▶ : Start play
- ◀◀ ▶▶ : Reverse/forward track search
- ◀◀ ▶▶ : Press: Select tracks
- Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search

While holding **SHIFT** ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select track directly

*1 Search speed changes to ×2 ⇒ ×5 ⇒ ×10 ⇒ ×20 ⇒ ×60 on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.

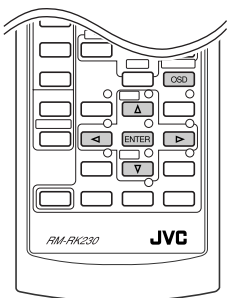
*2 Slow motion speed changes to ▶1/32 ⇒ ▶1/16 ⇒ ▶1/8 ⇒ ▶1/4 ⇒ ▶1/2 on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.

*3 For selecting numbers greater than 9 or 99, press [+10] or [+100], then follow by ①...⑨.

*4 To use direct folder access on MP3/WMA discs, it is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Show the on-screen bar (see page 14).

OSD (once) for MP3/WMA/CD
(twice) for DVD/VCD

2 Select an item.

◀ ▶ → **ENTER**

3 Make a selection.

ENTER

If pop-up menu appears...

▲ ▼ → **ENTER**

- For entering time/numbers, see the following.

4 Remove the on-screen bar.

OSD

Entering time/numbers

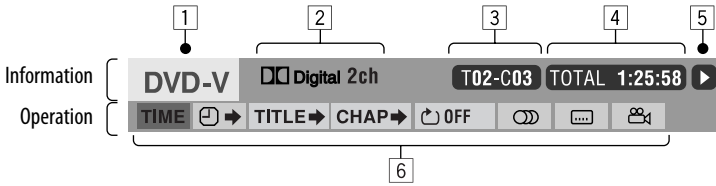
- To select numbers 0 – 9:
While holding **SHIFT** , press ①...⑨.
- To select numbers greater than 9:
While holding **SHIFT** , press [+10]. Then, press ①...⑨.
- After entering the numbers, press **ENTER**.
- To reduce numbers, use [-10].
- To correct a misentry, use ◀.

Ex.: Time search

- DVD: _: _: _
To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
- VCD (PBC not in use): _: _: _
To enter 64 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 6, 4, 0, then 0.

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar



- 1 Disc type
- 2 DVD/DTS audio CD: Audio signal format type
VCD: PBC
- 3 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
TRACK 01 Current track
- 4 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD, elapsed playing time of the current title.)
T. REM DVD: Remaining title time
VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track

- 5 Playback status
 Play
 Forward/reverse search
 Forward/reverse slow-motion
 Pause
 Stop

- 6 Operation icons
TIME Change the time indication (see 4.)
 Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE Title Search (by its number)
CHAP Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK Track Search (by its number)
 Change the audio language or audio channel
 Change the subtitle language
 Change the view angle
 DVD: Repeat play
REPEAT VCD/MP3/WMA/CD: Repeat play
INTRO Intro play
RANDOM Random play



Repeat play*1 :



(PBC not in use)

Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :



Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :



Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :

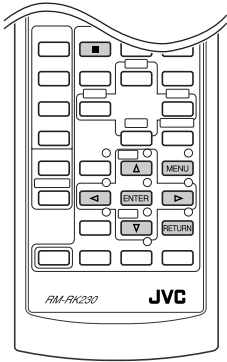
*1 For repeat play/random play, see also page 11.

*2 Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...

INTRO TRACK (INTRO): All tracks of the current disc.

INTRO FOLDER: First tracks of all folders of the current disc.

Operations using the control/list screen (MP3/WMA/CD)



These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

- Folder selection/information is only for MP3/WMA discs.

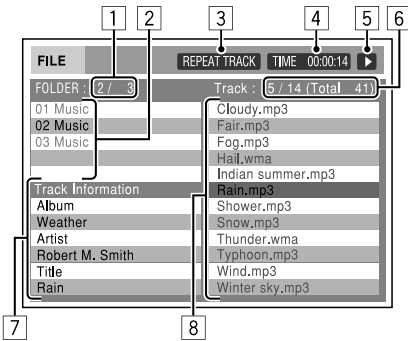
Control screen

The control screen automatically appears when you insert a disc.

- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track to start playback.



- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Folder list with the current folder selected
- 3 Selected playback mode
- 4 Elapsed playing time of the current track
- 5 Operation mode icon (▶, ■, ||, ▶▶, ◀◀)
- 6 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
- 7 Track information
- 8 Track list with the current track selected

Folder/track list screen

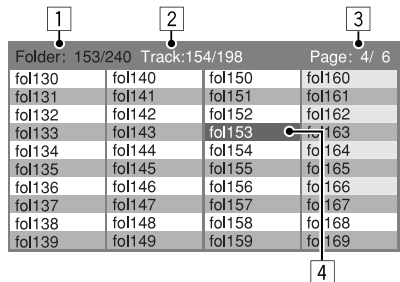
Before playing, you can display the folder list/track list to confirm the contents and start playing a track.

- 1 Display the folder/track list while stop.



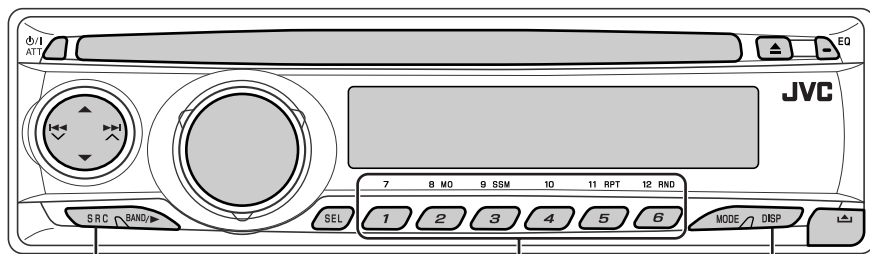
- 2 Select an item from the list.

- MP3/WMA: Track list of the selected folder appears.
- To go back to the previous screen, press RETURN.



- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder or in disc (CD)
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

Listening to the CD changer



1

2

Change the display information
(see page 10)

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can only play conventional CD (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

1 Select "CD-CH."

2 Select a disc to start playing.

Press: For selecting disc number 1 – 6.

Hold: For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

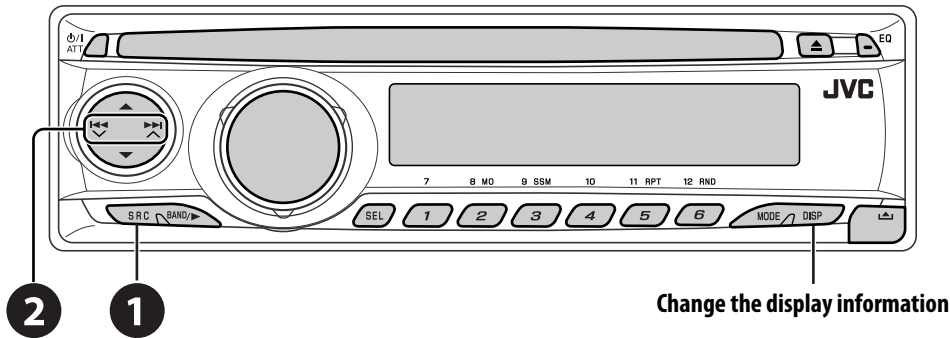
	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track
	MP3: Select folders

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks (MP3: within the same folder)
11 RPT 	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder DISC RPT: Repeat all tracks of the current disc
12 RND 	FLDR RND: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks of current disc MAG RND: Randomly play all tracks of the inserted discs

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

Listening to the iPod®/D. player



Change the display information

Before operating, connect the interface adapter (KS-PD100 or KS-PD500) to the CD changer jack of this unit.

Preparations:

Make sure "CHANGER" is selected for the external input setting, see page 20.

- 1 Select "IPOD" or "D. PLAYER."
- 2 Select a song to start playing.

Selecting a track from the menu

1 Enter the main menu.



- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

2 Select the desired menu.



For iPod:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS
 ↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSER ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTIST ↔ ALBUM ↔
 GENRE ↔ TRACK ↔ (back to the beginning)

3 Confirm the selection.



- To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- Holding ▼ |◀◀/▶▶| ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

	Pause/stop playback • To resume playback, press it again.
	Press: Select tracks Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track

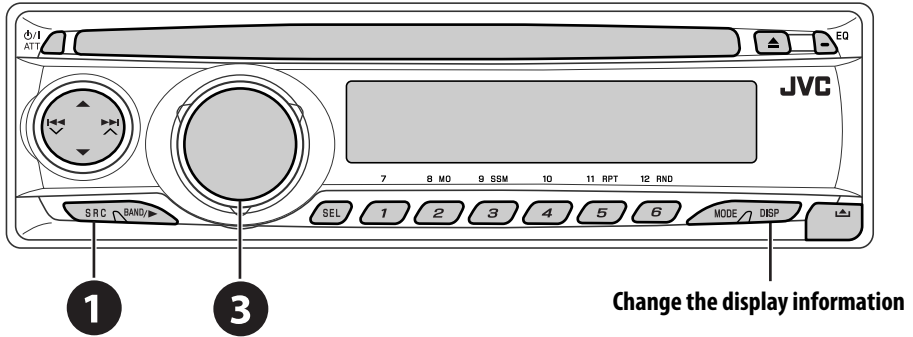
After pressing , press the following buttons to...

11 RPT 	ONE RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat One" or "Repeat Mode → One." ALL RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat All" or "Repeat Mode → All."
12 RND 	ALBM RND*: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod. SONG RND/RND ON: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" or "Random Play → On."

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

* iPod: Only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."

Listening to the other external components



You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

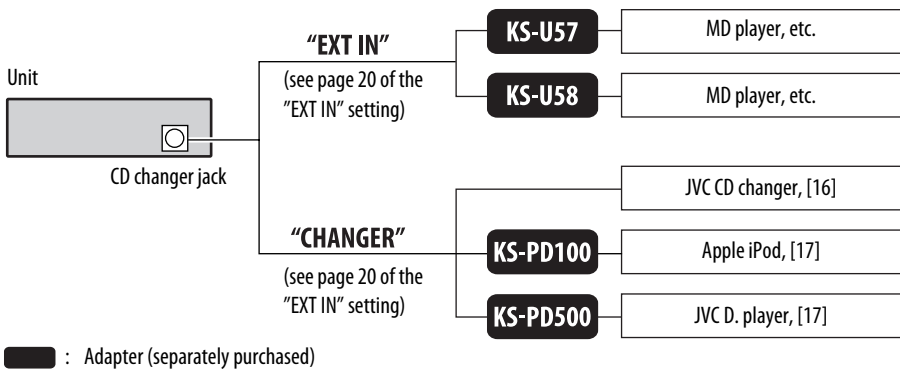
Preparations:

Make sure "EXT IN" is selected for the external input setting, see page 20.

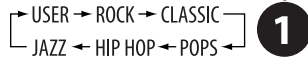
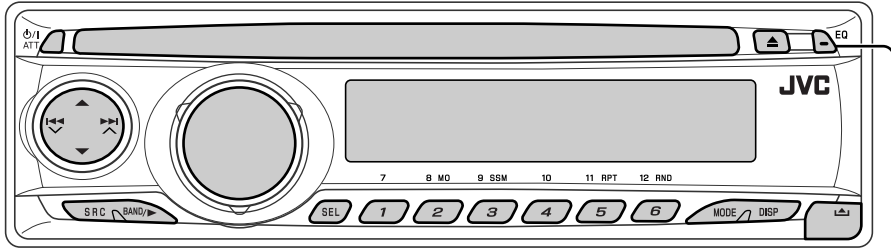
- 1 Select "EXT IN."
- 2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.
- 3 Adjust the volume.
- 4 Adjust the sound as you want (see page 19).

Concept diagram of the external device connection

- For connection, see Installation/Connection manual (separate volume).



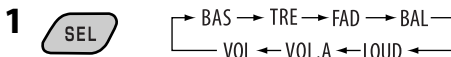
Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ



Indication (For)	BAS (bass)	TRE (treble)	LOUD (loudness)
USER (Flat sound)	00	00	OFF
ROCK (Rock or disco music)	+03	+01	ON
CLASSIC (Classical music)	+01	-02	OFF
POPS (Light music)	+04	+01	OFF
HIP HOP (Funk or rap music)	+02	00	ON
JAZZ (Jazz music)	+02	+03	OFF

BAS *1 (bass) Adjust the bass.	-06 to +06
TRE *1 (treble) Adjust the treble.	-06 to +06
FAD *2 (fader) Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 to F06
BAL (balance) Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 to R06
LOUD *1 (loudness) Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.	LOUD ON or LOUD OFF
VOL.A *3 (volume adjust) Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level.	-05 to +05
VOL (volume) Adjust the volume.	00 to 30 (or 50)*4

Adjusting the sound



2 Adjust the level.



*1 When you adjust the bass, treble, or loudness, the adjustment you have made is stored for the currently selected sound mode (C-EQ) including "USER."
 *2 If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."
 *3 You cannot make an adjustment for FM. "FIX" appears.
 *4 Depending on the amplifier gain control setting. (See page 21 for details.)

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM settings.



2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.



4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
DEMO Display demonstration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DEMO ON [Initial] • DEMO OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [5]. : Cancels.
CLOCK H Hour adjustment	1 – 12 [Initial: 1 (1:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLOCK M Minute adjustment	00 – 59 [Initial: 00 (1:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
DIMMER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Dims the display illumination. : Cancels.
SCROLL *1	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ONCE [Initial] • AUTO • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
EXT IN *2 External input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHANGER [Initial] • EXT IN 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : To use a JVC CD changer, [16], or an Apple iPod/a JVC D. player, [17]. : To use any other external component than the above, [18].
TAG DISP Tag display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TAG ON [Initial] • TAG OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
NTSC/PAL Video format	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PAL [Initial] • NTSC 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Select this if your monitor is of the PAL color system. : Select this if your monitor is of the NTSC color system.

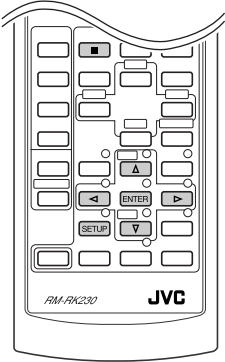
*1 Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.

*2 Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, or DISC.

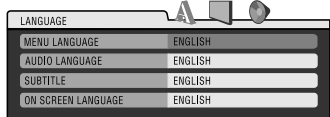
Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
AMP GAIN Amplifier gain control	• LOW PWR	: VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.)
	• HIGH PWR [Initial]	: VOL 00 – VOL 50
IF BAND Intermediate frequency filter	• AUTO [Initial]	: Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.)
	• WIDE	: Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.

DVD setup menu

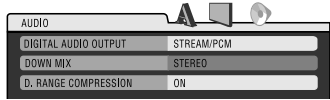
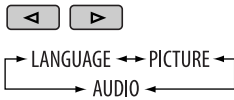
These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



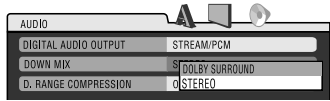
1 Enter the DVD setup menu while stop.



2 Select a menu.



3 Select an item you want to set up.




4 Select an option.



To return to normal screen



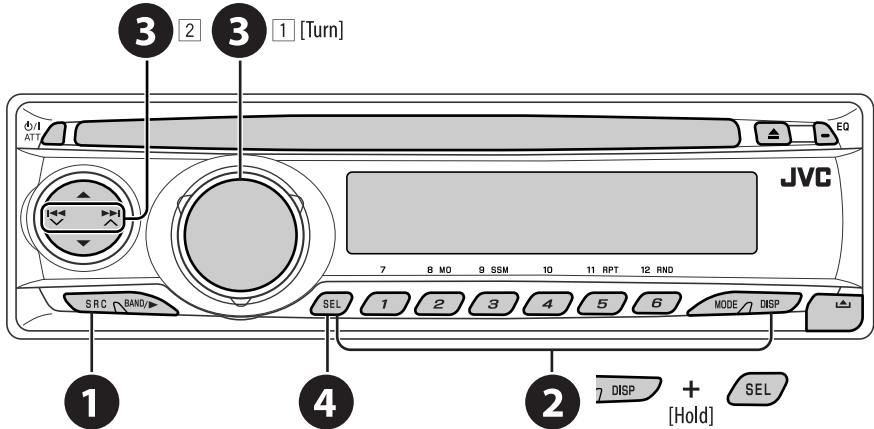
Continued on the next page

Menu	Item	Setting
LANGUAGE	MENU LANGUAGE	Select the initial disc menu language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	AUDIO LANGUAGE	Select the initial audio language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	SUBTITLE	Select the initial subtitle language or remove the subtitle (OFF). Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select the language for the on screen display.
PICTURE	MONITOR TYPE	<p>Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.</p> <p>16:9 4:3 LETTER BOX 4:3 PAN SCAN</p> 
	OSD POSITION	<p>Select the on-screen bar position on the monitor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Higher position • 2: Lower position (Guidance below the DVD setup menu will disappear.)
AUDIO	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	<p>Select the signal format to be emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (Optical) terminal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PCM ONLY: Select for an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio, or connecting to a recording device. • DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. • STREAM/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio.
	DOWN MIX	<p>When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks (and through the DIGITAL OUT terminal when "PCM ONLY" is selected for "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT").</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DOLBY SURROUND: Select to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. • STEREO: Normally select this.
	D. RANGE COMPRESSION	<p>You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software). • ON: Select to always use this function.

Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KY	Kirghiz	PT	Portuguese	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	LA	Latin	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LN	Lingala	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LO	Laothian	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LT	Lithuanian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LV	Latvian, Lettish	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	MG	Malagasy	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MI	Maori	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MK	Macedonian	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	ML	Malayalam	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	MN	Mongolian	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MO	Moldavian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MR	Marathi	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MS	Malay (MAY)	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MT	Maltese	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Assigning names to the stations



You can assign names to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) and up to 8 characters for each station name.

- 1 Select "FM/AM."
- 2 Show the title entry screen.
- 3 Assign a title.
 - 1 Select a character.
 - 2 Move to the next (or previous) character position.
 - 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering the title.
- 4 Finish the procedure.

To erase the entire title

In step 2 above...



Available characters

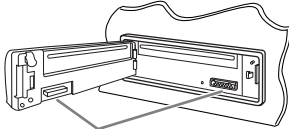
A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	-	/	<	>	space	

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

Center holder



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

■ General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

■ FM/AM

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing stations, the previously preset stations are erased and stations are stored newly.

■ Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3/WMA files and their file names.
- This unit can also playback 8 cm discs.
- This unit can only playback audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- This unit can recognize a total of 3 500 files (250 folder per disc; 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for the files.
- This unit may be unable to play back some discs or files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 64 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATAC3, etc.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play starts from where it has been stopped previously.
For MP3/WMA disc, playback starts from the beginning of the last playing track.

iPod® or D. player

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 8 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 20). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

General settings—PSM

- If you change the “AMP GAIN” setting from “HIGH PWR” to “LOW PWR” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30.”

DVD setup menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PAN SCAN” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LETTER BOX” for some DVDs.


Title assignment


- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, “NAMEFULL” appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.


On-screen guide icons

During playback, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

DVD: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing:

 : Multi-subtitle languages

 : Multi-audio languages


 : Multi-angle views

 : Playback

 : Pause

 : DVD/VCD: Forward slow motion

 : DVD: Reverse slow motion

 : Forward search

 : Reverse search

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):** 2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 22.)

- **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):** Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see table below.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” correctly. (See page 22.)

Output signals through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Output signals are different depending on the “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” setting on the setup menu (see page 22).

DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Output Signals		
	STREAM/PCM	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	PCM ONLY
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
	96 kHz, Linear PCM		
	with DTS	DTS bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital bitstream	
with MPEG Audio	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM/48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS	DTS bitstream	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
MP3/WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound cannot be heard from the speakers. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The unit does not work at all. 	Reset the unit (see page 2).
FM/AM	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • SSM automatic presetting does not work. 	Store stations manually.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Static noise while listening to the radio. 	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc can be neither played back nor ejected. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unlock the disc (see page 10). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be recognized. 	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "NO DISC" appears on the display. 	Insert the disc correctly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No playback picture (DVD/VCD) appears on the monitor. 	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. (See Installation/Connection Manual.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No picture appears on the monitor at all. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The monitor shows black and white wavy pictures (DVD/VCD). 	Use a disc recorded in NTSC color system and change the video format to NTSC (see page 20).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the monitor. 	Select "4:3 LETTER BOX" (see page 22).

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
MP3/WMA playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Disc cannot be played back. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the disc. • Record tracks using a compliant application in the appropriate discs (see page 4). • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Noise is generated. 	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3/WMA tracks.)
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Longer readout time is required. 	Readout time varies due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration. Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Tracks cannot playback as you have intended them to play. 	Playback order is determined when files are recorded.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Elapsed playing time is not correct. 	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "NO FILES" appears on the display. 	Insert a disc that contains tracks of appropriate formats.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name). 	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
CD changer	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "NO DISC" appears on the display. 	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "NO MAG" appears on the display. 	Insert the magazine.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "RESET 8" appears on the display. 	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display. 	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The CD changer does not work at all. 	Reset the unit (see page 2).

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
iPod/D. player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Change the battery. • Update the firmware version.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Buttons do not work as intended. 	<p>The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press MODE before performing the operation.</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The sound is distorted. 	<p>Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod/D. player.</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “NO IPOD” or “NO DP” appears on the display. 	<p>Check the connecting cable and its connection.</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Playback stops. 	<p>The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 17).</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	<p>Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • No sound can be heard. • “ERROR 01” appears on the display when connecting a D. player. 	<p>Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “NO FILES” or “NO TRACK” appears on the display. 	<p>No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display. 	<p>Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • “RESET 8” appears on the display. 	<p>Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.</p>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	<p>Reset the iPod or D. player.</p>	

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass/Treble:	±10 dB at 100 Hz/±10 dB at 10 kHz
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical):	Signal wave length: 660 nm
			Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm
		Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		PAL/NTSC
Video Output (composite):		1 V _{p-p} /75 Ω	
Other Terminal:		CD changer	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)		
	Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)		
	Frequency Response:	DVD, $f_s=48$ kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz	
		DVD, $f_s=96$ kHz:	16 Hz to 44 000 Hz	
		VCD/CD/MP3/WMA:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz	
	Dynamic Range:	96 dB		
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB		
	Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit		
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps	
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz	
WMA:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 192 kbps		
	Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz		
		MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz		

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)	
	Grounding System:	Negative ground		
	Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C		
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm	
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm	
	Mass (approx.):	1.6 kg (excluding accessories)		

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS 2.0 + Digital Out” are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

**Ada MASALAH dengan cara
pengoperasian?**

Setel kembali unit Anda

Lihat halaman mengenai Bagaimana mereset unit anda

JVC



EN, IN

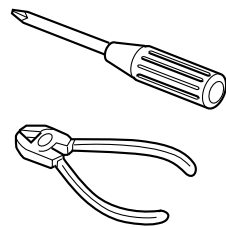
© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1205DTSMMDTJEIN

JVC KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205

Installation/Connection Manual Manual Pemasangan/Penyambungan

GET0369-008A
[UN]



1205DTSMDTJEIN
EN, IN

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent accidents and damage:

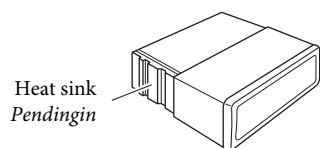
- **DO NOT** install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate the unit while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



INDONESIA

Alat penerima ini didisain untuk beroperasi hanya pada **12 V DC, sistem listrik tanah NEGATIVE**. Jika kendaraan anda tidak memiliki sistem ini, sebuah pembalik tegangan diperlukan, yang mana dapat dibeli di penyalur-penyalur audio mobil JVC.

PERINGATAN

Untuk mencegah kecelakaan dan kerusakan:

- **JANGAN** memasang unit pada tempat-tempat dimana;
 - ini dapat menghalangi pengoperasian roda kemudi dan tuas gigi persneling
 - ini dapat menghalangi pengoperasian alat pengaman seperti kantong udara.
 - ini dapat menghalangi pandangan.
- **JANGAN** mengoperasikan unit sewaktu mengemudi.
- Jika Anda harus mengoperasikan unit sewaktu mengemudi, pastikan Anda melihat ke depan dengan hati-hati.
- Pengemudi tidak boleh menonton monitor selagi mengemudi.
Jika rem parkir tidak bekerja, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." muncul pada monitor dan tidak ada gambar putar ulang yang akan dipertunjukkan.
 - Peringatan ini muncul hanya jika kabel rem parkir telah tersambung ke sistem rem parkir yang terpasang tetap di dalam mobil.

Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, kami menyarankan anda memutuskan sambungan terminal negatif baterai dan membuat semua sambungan-sambungan listrik sebelum memasang alat penerima.

- **Pastikan untuk mentanahkan alat penerima ini ke casis mobil kembali setelah pemasangan.**

Catatan:

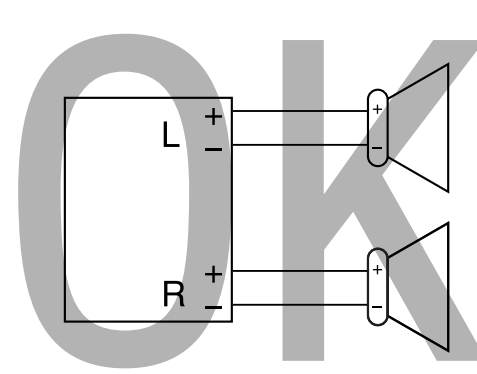
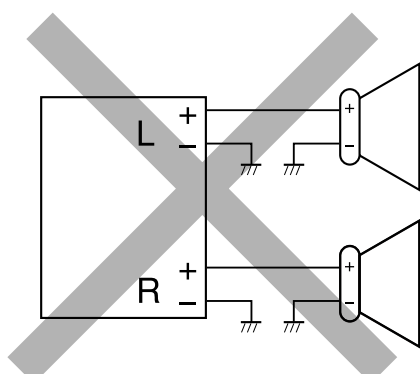
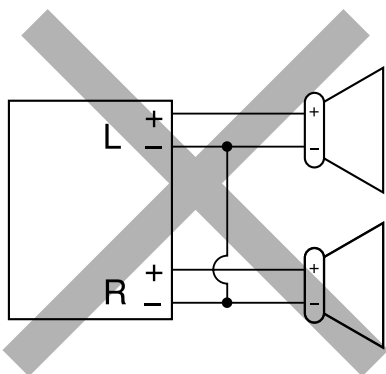
- Ganti sekering dengan voltase yang sudah ditetapkan. Jika sekering sering meledak, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC anda.
- Disarankan untuk menghubungkan speaker-speaker dengan maksimum power lebih dari 50 W (keduanya di belakang dan di depan, dengan sebuah impedansi **4 Ω sampai 8 Ω**). Jika maksimum power kurang dari 50 W, ganti pengaturan "AMP GAIN" ("PENAMBAH PENGUAT") untuk mencegah speaker-speaker dari kerusakan (lihat halaman 21 dari BUKU PETUNJUK).
- Untuk mencegah hubungan pendek, tutup ujung-ujung terminal-terminal TIDAK DIGUNAKAN dengan pita isolasi.
- Pendingin menjadi sangat panas setelah digunakan. Hati-hati untuk tidak menyentuhnya ketika memindahkan alat penerima ini.

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT** connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

TINDAKAN-TINDAKAN PENCEGAHAN pada suplai power dan sambungan-sambungan speaker:

- **JANGAN** sambungkan ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke baterai mobil; sebaliknya, alat penerima tersebut akan secara serius rusak.
- **SEBELUM** menyambung ujung-ujung speaker dari kabel power ke speaker-speaker, cek perkabelan speaker dalam mobil anda.

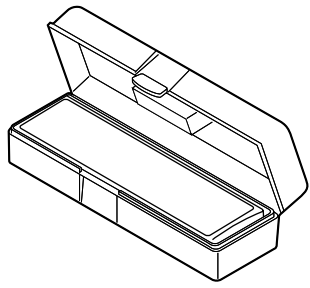


Parts list for installation and connection

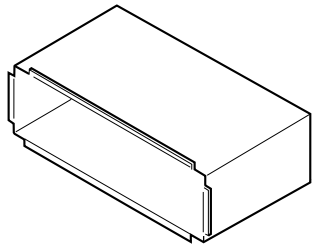
The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.

Daftar bagian-bagian untuk pemasangan dan penyambungan

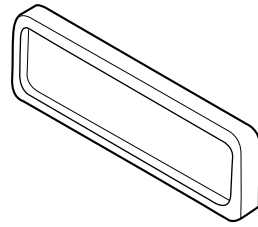
Bagian-bagian berikut disediakan untuk alat penerima ini. Jika ada item yang hilang, segera hubungi dealer audio mobil JVC anda.



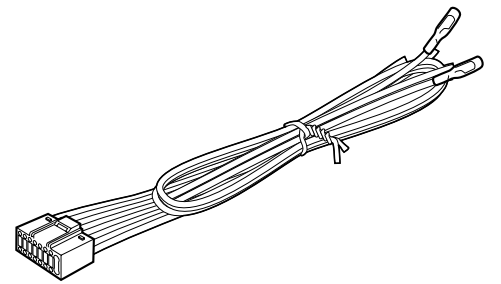
(A) / (B)
Hard case/Control panel
Kotak keras/Panel kontrol



(C)
Sleeve
Selongsong

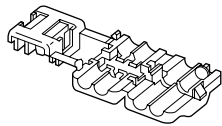


(D)
Trim plate
Plat rapi



(E)
Power cord
Kabel power

(F)
Crimp connector
Konektor kerut



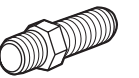
(G)
Washer (ø5)
Perapat sambungan (ø5)



(H)
Lock nut (M5)
Mur kunci (M5)



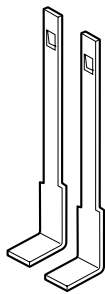
(I)
Mounting bolt (M5 × 20 mm)
Baut bingkai (M5 × 20 mm)



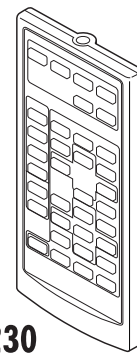
(J)
Rubber cushion
Bantalan karet



(K)
Handles
Pegangan-pegangan



(L)
Remote controller
Remote kontrol



(M)
Battery
Baterai



CR2025

RM-RK230

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

• Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):

2-channel signal is emitted.

When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

• Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*¹, DTS*², MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 28 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” correctly. (See page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

*¹ Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*² “DTS” and “DTS 2.0 + Digital Out” are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

Mengenai suara-suara yang dihasilkan melalui terminal-terminal belakang

• Melalui terminal-terminal analog (keluaran speaker/LINE OUT):

Sinyal saluran 2 dikirimkan.

Ketika memutar sebuah disk yang disandikan sebagai sebuah multi-saluran, sinyal-sinyal multi-salurannya dicampurkan. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: lihat halaman 22 dari BUKU PETUNJUK.)

• Melalui DIGITAL OUT (optik):

Sinyal-sinyal digital (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*¹, DTS*², MPEG Audio) dikirim melalui terminal-terminal ini. (Untuk lebih jelas, lihat halaman 28 dari BUKU PETUNJUK.)

Untuk menghasilkan suara-suara multi-saluran seperti Dolby Digital dan DTS, sambungkan sebuah penguat atau sebuah decoder yang kompatibel dengan sumber-sumber multi-saluran ini ke terminal ini, dan atur “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” dengan benar. (Lihat halaman 22 dari BUKU PETUNJUK.)

*¹ Diproduksi di bawah lisensi dari Dolby Laboratories. Dolby dan simbol D-ganda merupakan merek-merek dagang dari Dolby Laboratories.

*² “DTS” dan “DTS 2.0 + Digital Out” adalah merek dagang dari Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

TROUBLESHOOTING

• The fuse blows.

* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

• Power cannot be turned on.

* Is the yellow lead connected?

• No sound from the speakers.

* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

• Sound is distorted.

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?

* Are the “-” terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• Noise interfere with sounds.

* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car’s chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

• Unit becomes hot.

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?

* Are the “-” terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• This unit does not work at all.

* Have you reset your unit?

PEMECAHAN MASALAH

• Sekring meledak.

* Apakah ujung-ujung merah dan hitam tersambung dengan benar?

• Power tidak dapat dihidupkan.

* Apakah ujung kuning sudah tersambung?

• Tidak ada suara dari speaker.

* Apakah ujung keluaran speaker terhubung pendek?

• Suara terdistorsi.

* Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?

* Apakah terminal-terminal “-” dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?

• Berisik yang mengganggu suara-suara.

* Apakah terminal tanah belakang tersambung ke casing mobil menggunakan kabel-kabel terpendek dan tertebal?

• Alat penerima menjadi panas.

* Apakah ujung keluaran speaker sudah ditanahkan?

* Apakah terminal-terminal “-” dari speaker-speaker L dan R sudah ditanahkan secara umum?

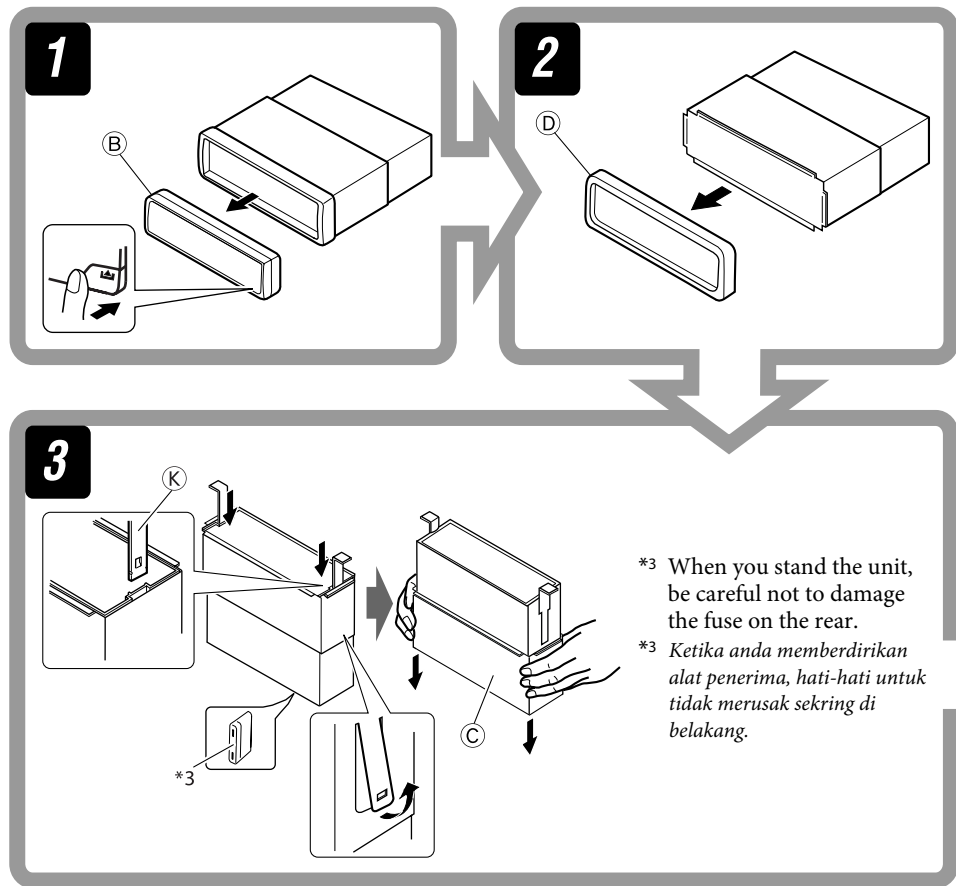
• Alat penerima ini tidak bekerja secara keseluruhan.

* Apakah anda sudah reset (memasang kembali) alat penerima anda?

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

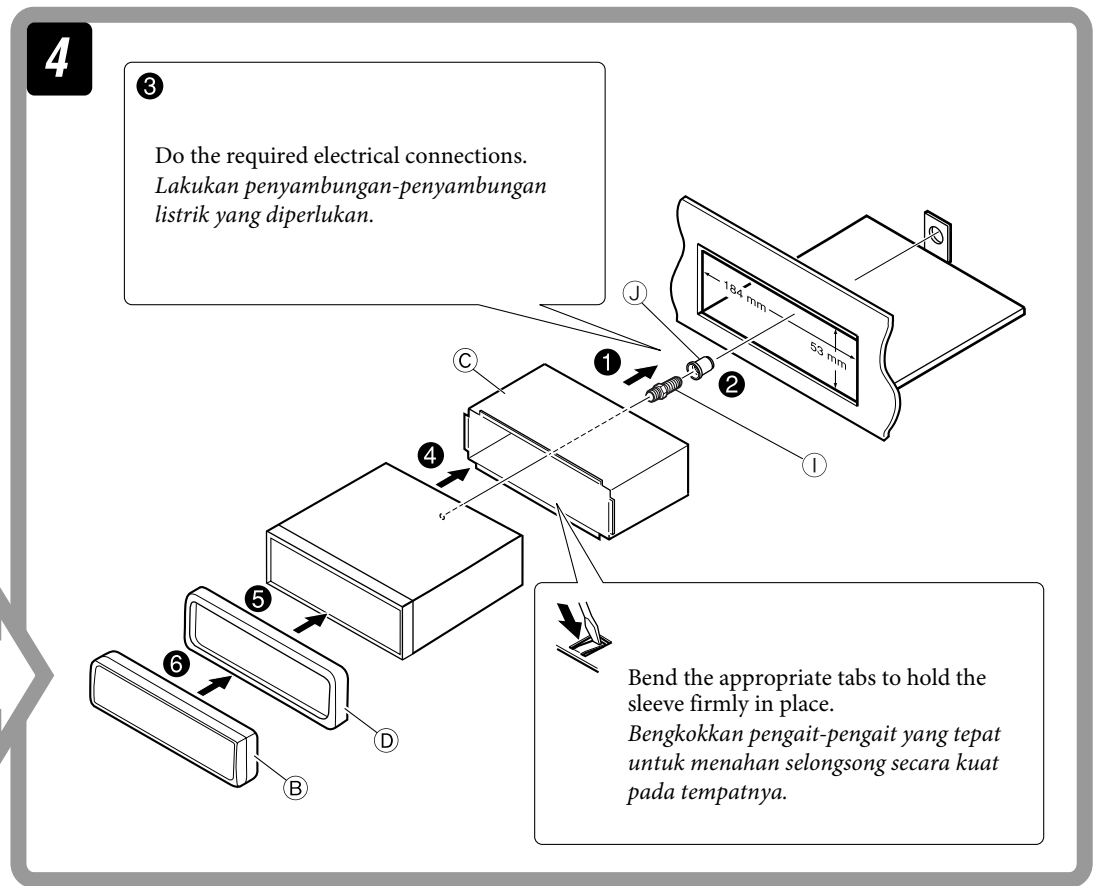
- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.



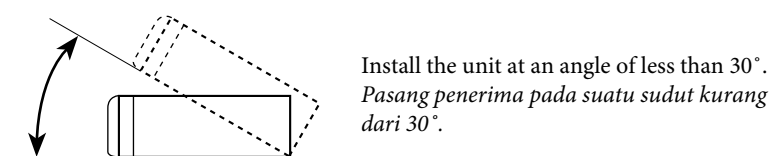
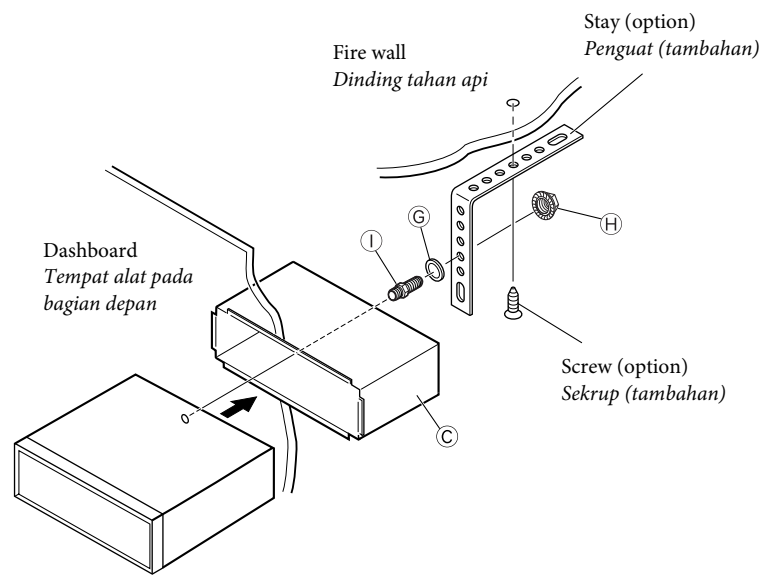
PEMASANGAN (BINGKAI-DALAM DASH)

Ilustrasi berikut menunjukkan sebuah tipe pemasangan. Jika anda mempunyai suatu pertanyaan atau informasi yang diperlukan mengenai alat-alat pemasangan, konsultasikan pada penyalur audio mobil JVC atau sebuah perusahaan yang mensuplai alat-alat.

- Jika anda tidak yakin bagaimana memasang alat penerima ini dengan benar, biarkan dipasang dengan teknisi yang berkualitas.

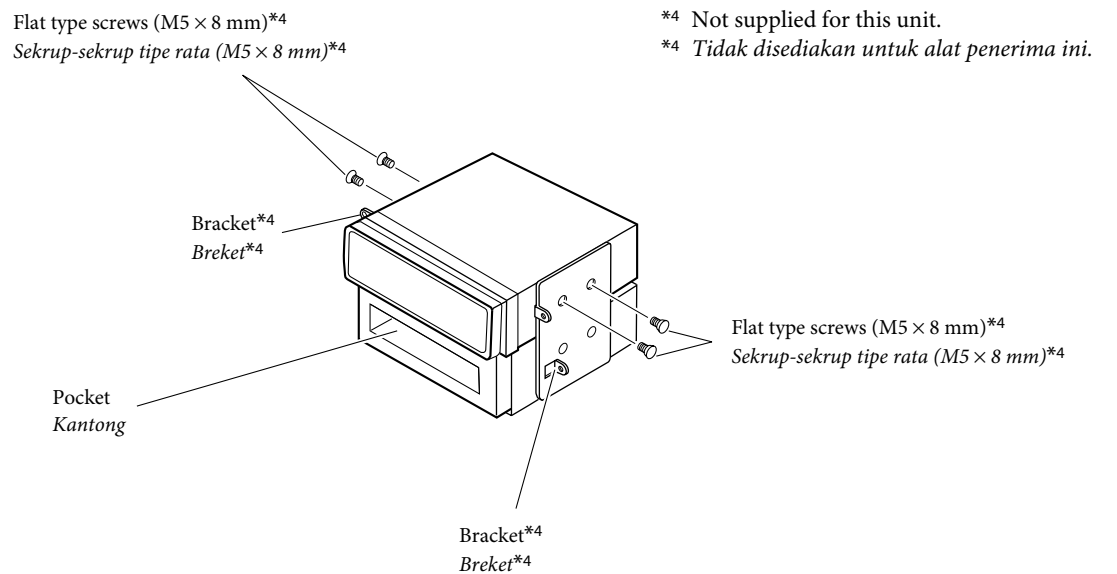


When using the optional stay / Ketika menggunakan penguat tambahan



When installing the unit without using the sleeve / Ketika memasang alat penerima tanpa menggunakan selongsong

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
 Dalam sebuah kereta Toyota misalnya, pertama pindahkan radio mobil dan pasang alat penerima tersebut ke dalam tempatnya.

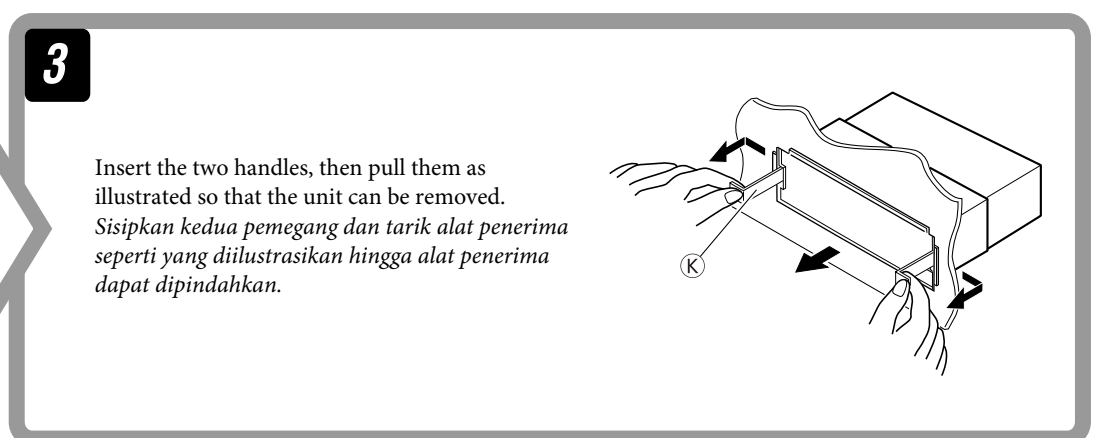
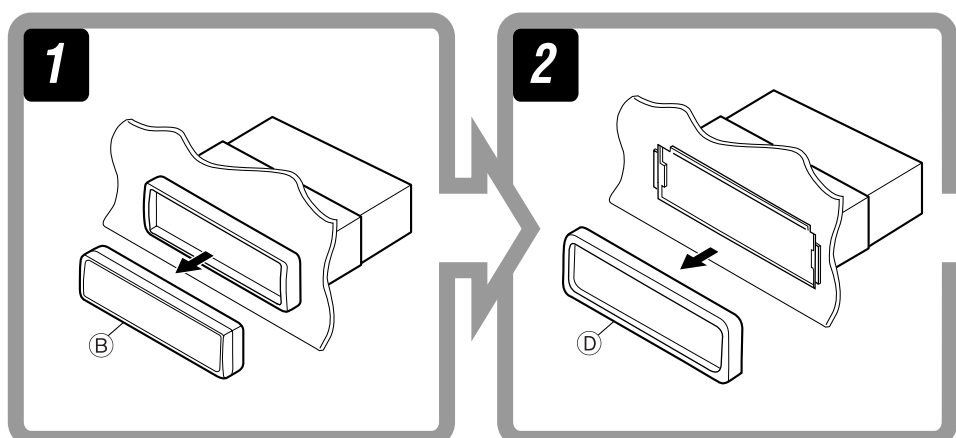


Note / **Catatan**

- When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
- Ketika memasang alat penerima pada breket bingkai, pastikan untuk menggunakan sekrup-sekrup panjang-8 mm. Jika sekrup yang lebih panjang digunakan, maka dapat merusak alat penerima.

Removing the unit

Before removing the unit, release the rear section.



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

SAMBUNGAN-SAMBUNGAN LISTRIK

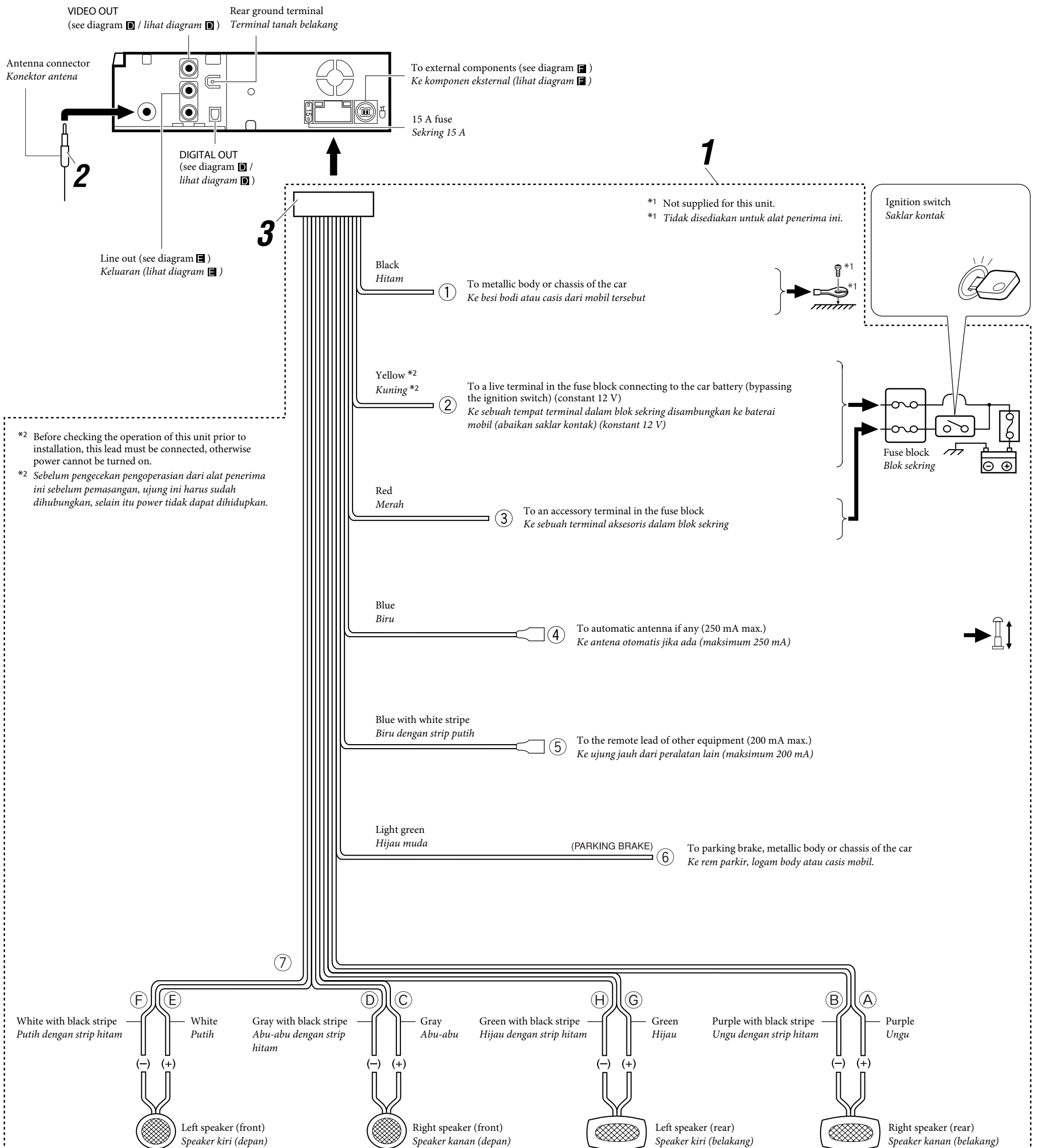
A Typical connections / Ciri khas sambungan-sambungan

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

- 1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 2 Connect the antenna cord.
- 3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Sebelum penyambungan: Cek perkabelan dalam mobil dengan hati-hati. Penyambungan yang tidak benar mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan serius pada alat penerima.
Ujung dari kabel power dan beberapa konektor dari bodi mobil mungkin berbeda dalam warna.

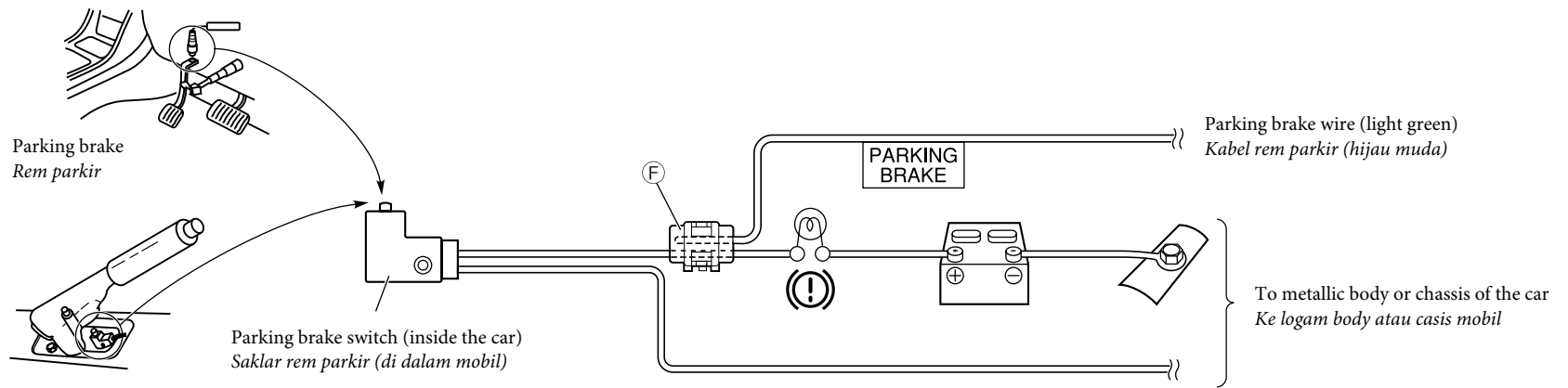
- 1 Sambungkan ujung berwarna dari kabel power dalam urutan spesifikasi pada ilustrasi di bawah.
- 2 Sambungkan kabel antenna.
- 3 Akhirnya sambungkan dudukan kabel ke alat penerima.



B Connecting the parking brake wire / Menyambung kabel rem parkir

When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver

Ketika memasang monitor pada tempat yang dapat dilihat oleh pengemudi

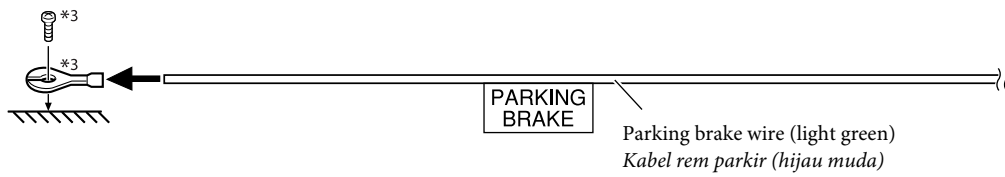


When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver

Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis or the car.

Ketika memasang monitor pada tempat yang tidak dapat dilihat oleh pengemudi

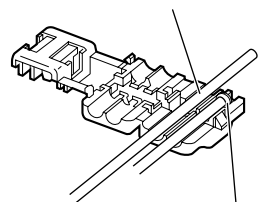
Sambungkan kabel rem parkir ke logam body atau casis mobil.



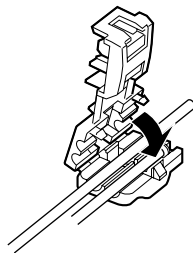
*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 Tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima ini.

C Connecting the crimp connector / Menyambung konektor kerut

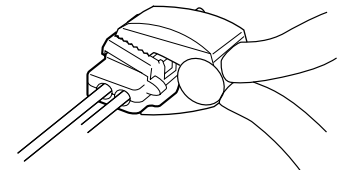
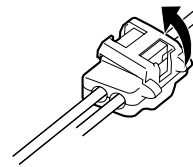
Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
Kabel yang menyambungkan baterai dan saklar rem parkir.



Attach the parking brake wire to this point.
Pasal kabel rem parkir ke poin ini.

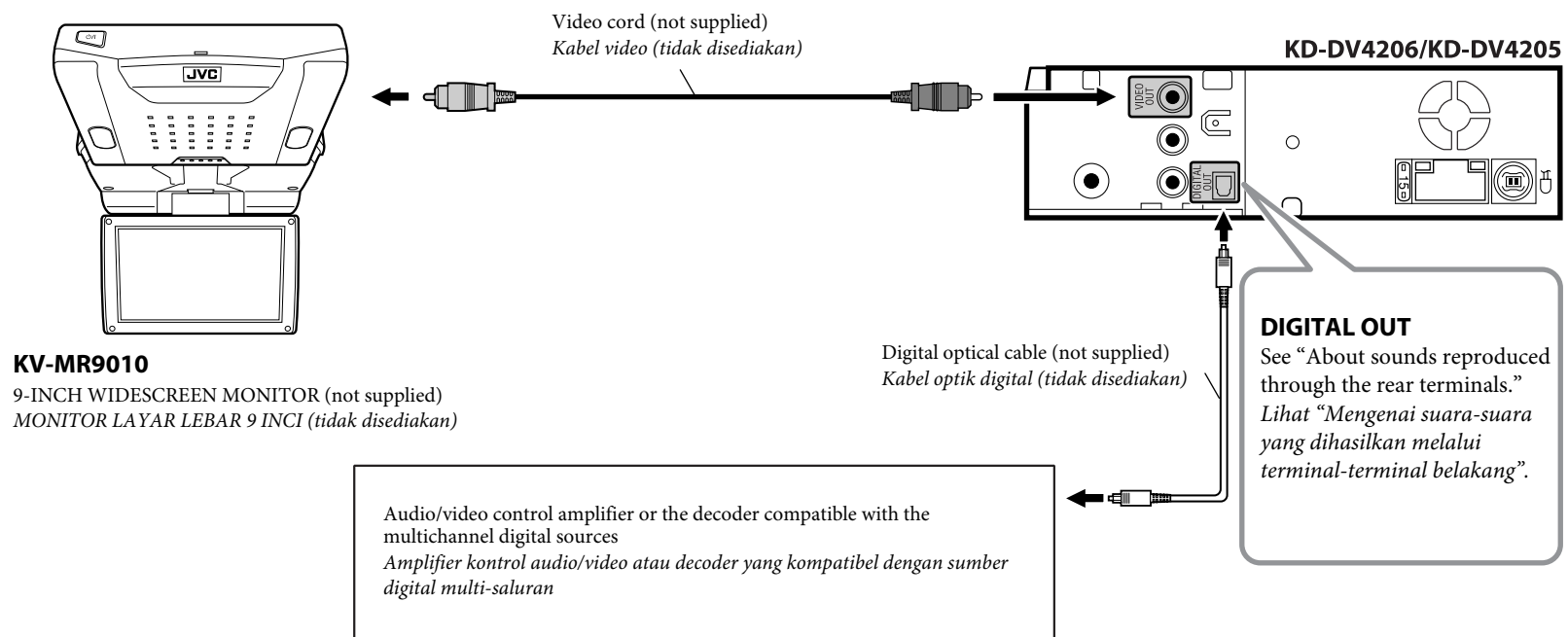


Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
Hubungkan bagian logam dari konektor kerut ke kabel-kabel di dalam.



Pinch the crimp firmly.
Jepit konektor dengan kuat.

D Required connections for DVD playback / Penyambungan-penyambungan yang diperlukan untuk memutar ulang DVD



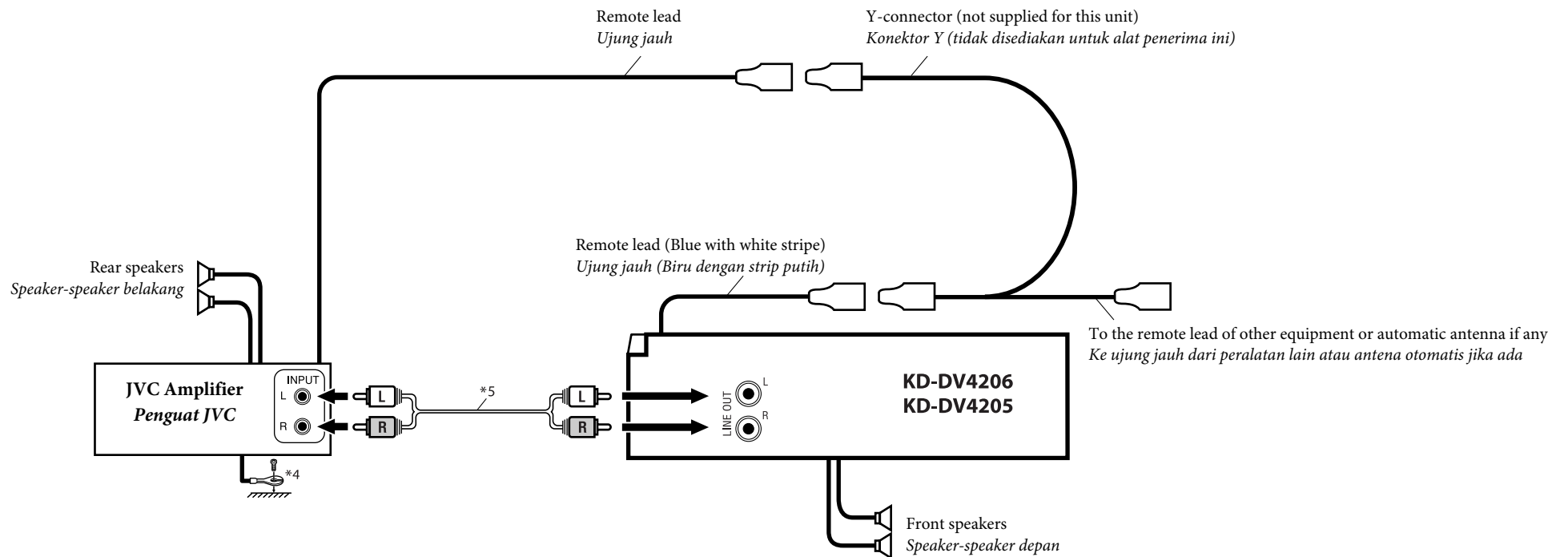
E Connecting the external amplifier / Penyambungan penguat eksternal

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Anda dapat menyambungkan penguat-penguat untuk meningkatkan sistem stereo mobil anda.

- Sambungkan ujung jauh (biru dengan strip putih) ke ujung jauh dari peralatan lain sehingga dapat dikontrol melalui alat penerima ini.
- **Putuskan sambungan speaker-speaker dari alat penerima ini, sambungkan ini ke penguat. Biarkan ujung speaker dari alat penerima ini tidak digunakan.**



*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*4 Pasangkan dengan kuat kabel tanah ke bodi besi atau ke casing dari mobil—pada tempat yang tidak dilapisi cat (jika dilapisi cat, hilangkan cat sebelum memasang kabel). Kegagalan melakukan ini mungkin menyebabkan kerusakan pada alat penerima tersebut.

*5 Kabel sinyal (tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima ini)

F Connecting the external components / Menyambung komponen eksternal

CD changer, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / CD changer, Apple iPod® atau JVC D. player

- Set “CHANGER” for the external input setting (See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Aturiah “CHANGER” untuk pengaturan input eksternal (Lihat halaman 20 dari BUKU PETUNJUK.)

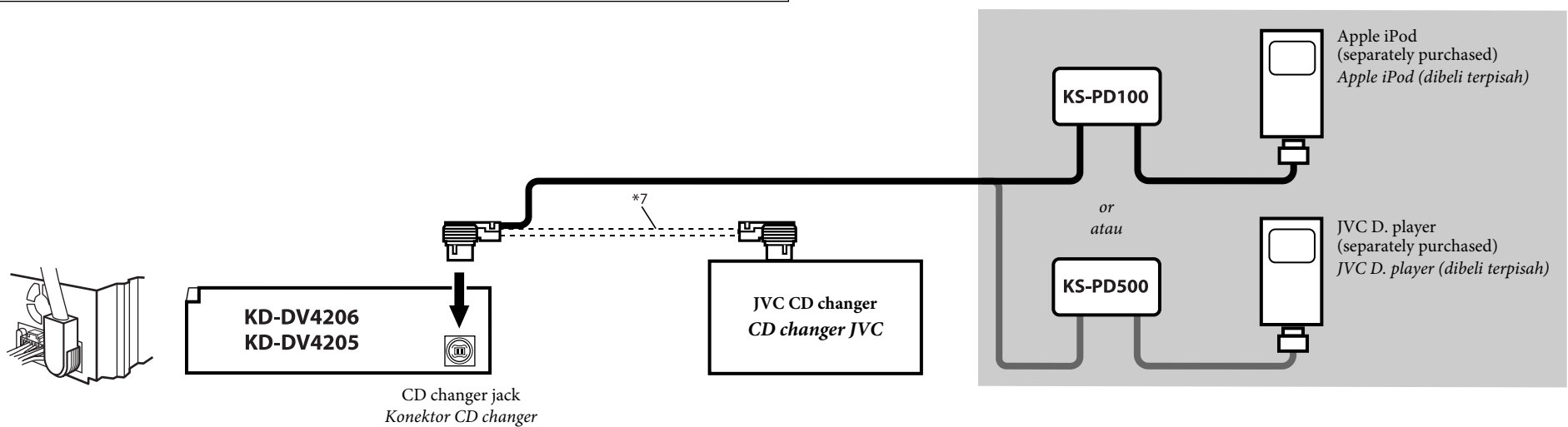
You can connect these components as illustrated below. The iPod*6 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

Anda bisa menyambungkan komponen-komponen ini seperti yang diilustrasikan di bawah.

iPod*6 atau D. player bisa disambungkan dengan menggunakan adaptor antarmuka (tidak disediakan)—KS-PD100 (untuk iPod) atau KS-PD500 (untuk D. player).

CAUTION / PERINGATAN:

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
Sebelum menyambungkan komponen eksternal, pastikan bahwa alat penerima sudah dimatikan.



*6 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

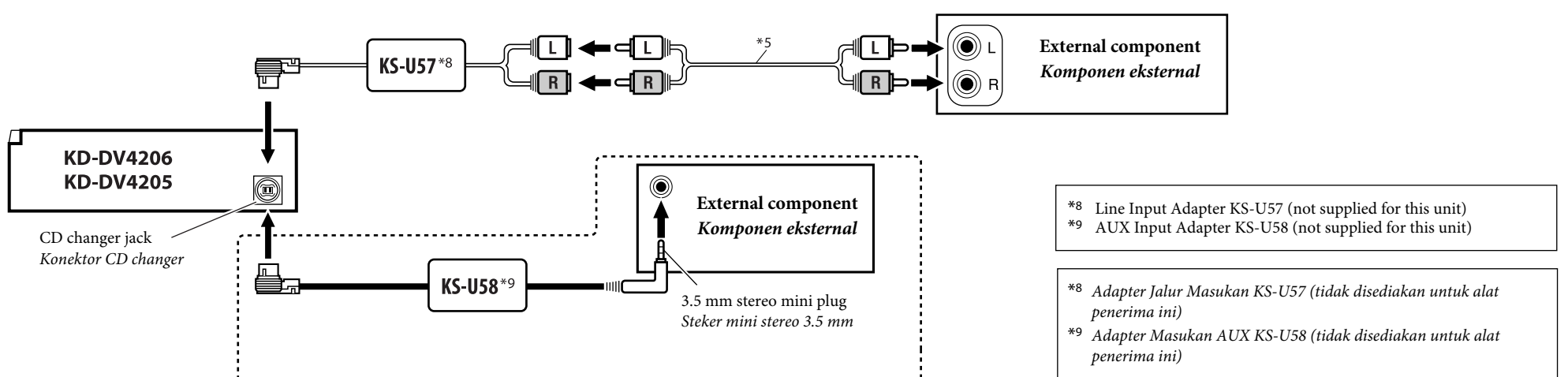
*7 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer

*6 iPod adalah merek dagang dari Apple Computer, Inc., terdaftar di A.S. dan di negara-negara lain.

*7 Penyambung sinyal disediakan untuk CD changer anda

Other external component / Komponen eksternal lainnya

- Set “EXT IN” for the external input setting (See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Aturiah “EXT IN” untuk pengaturan input eksternal (Lihat halaman 20 dari BUKU PETUNJUK.)



*8 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)

*9 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)

*8 Adapter Jalur Masukan KS-U57 (tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima ini)

*9 Adapter Masukan AUX KS-U58 (tidak disediakan untuk alat penerima ini)

JVC



ENGLISH

DVD/CD RECEIVER

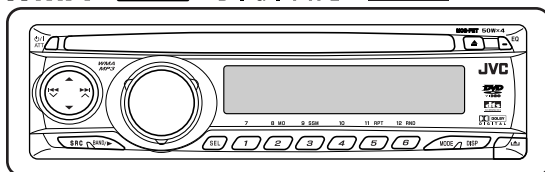
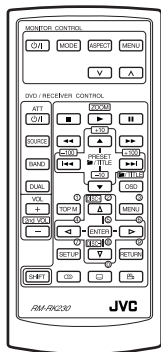
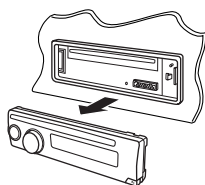
KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205

中

DVD/CD 收音組合機

KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205

文



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 5.

取消屏幕演示功能，參閱第 5 頁。

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

有關安裝和連接方法，分別參閱操作手冊。

INSTRUCTIONS 使用說明書

GET0369-004A
[UT]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

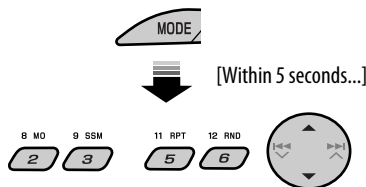
IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

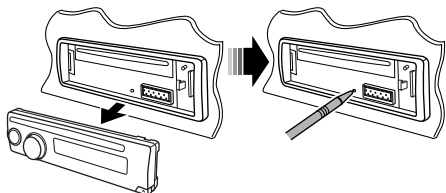
CAUTION: Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	ADVARSEL: Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	WARNING: Synlig och osynlig laserstråling når den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Betrakta ej strålen. (s)	VARO: Avatessa ja suojalukitus ohittuna tai viallisena olet alttiina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan iiseesi. (f)
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

How to use functions mode
If you press MODE, the unit goes into functions mode, then the number buttons and ▲/▼ buttons work as different function buttons.

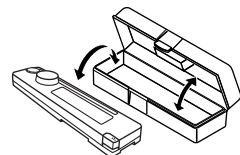


How to reset your unit

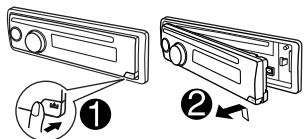


- Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

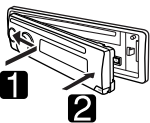
How to detach/attach the control panel



Detaching...



Attaching...



How to forcibly eject a disc



- If this does not work, reset your unit.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- **DO NOT** install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate the unit while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
 If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.





Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

<i>Introduction</i>	4
■ OPERATIONS	
<i>Basic operations</i>	
• <i>Control panel</i>	6
• <i>Remote controller (RM-RK230)</i>	7
<i>Listening to the radio</i>	9
<i>Disc operations</i>	10
■ EXTERNAL DEVICES	
<i>Listening to the CD changer</i>	16
<i>Listening to the iPod®/D. player</i>	17
<i>Listening to the other external components</i>	18
■ SETTINGS	
<i>Selecting a preset sound mode—C-EQ</i>	19
<i>General settings—PSM</i>	20
<i>DVD setup menu</i>	21
<i>Assigning names to the stations</i>	24
<i>Maintenance</i>	25
<i>More about this unit</i>	26
<i>Troubleshooting</i>	29
<i>Specifications</i>	32

Introduction

Disc type	✓ OK Playable	✗ NO Unplayable
 <p>DVD Video, Dual Disc (DVD side only), DVD-R*/-RW, +R/+RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recorded in DVD-Video format only and in PAL/NTSC color system 		<p>DVD Audio, Dual Disc (non-DVD side), DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM, DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Recorded in DVD-VR format
 <p>VCD CD-R/-RW</p>	<p>Video CD CD-R/-RW</p>	<p>SVCD (Super Video CD)</p>
 <p>MP3/WMA</p>	<p>DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW, DVD-ROM</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to UDF bridge format 	—
	<p>CD-R/-RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to ISO 9660 level 1, ISO 9660 level 2, Romeo, Joliet 	—
 <p>CD</p>	<p>Audio CD, CD Text CD-R/-RW</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Compliant to CD-DA format 	<p>CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD</p>

• It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video mode only) discs. However, the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.

* DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “3.”

Examples:

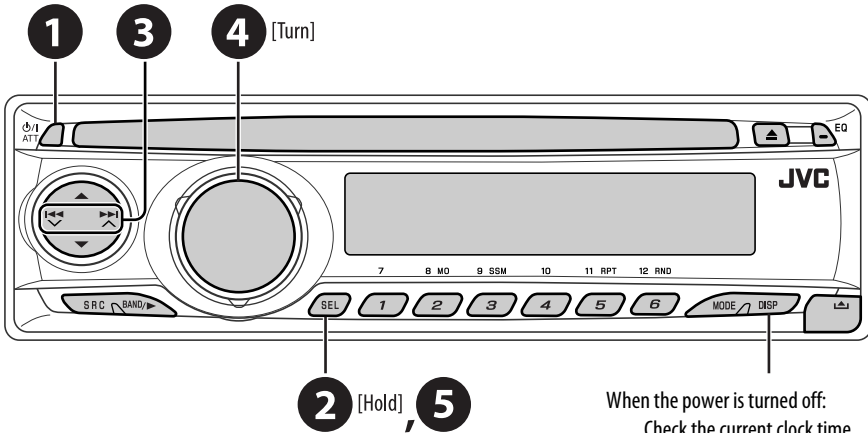


If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“REGION CODE ERROR!” appears on the monitor.

Before operating the unit — Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

• See also page 20.



- 1 Turn on the power.
- 2 Enter the PSM settings.
- 3 ⇒ 4 **Cancel the display demonstrations**
Select “DEMO,” then “DEMO OFF.”

Set the clock

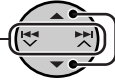
Select “CLOCK H” (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select “CLOCK M” (minute), then adjust the minute.

- 5 **Finish the procedure.**

When the power is turned off:
Check the current clock time
When the power is turned on:
Change the display information

Basic operations — Control panel

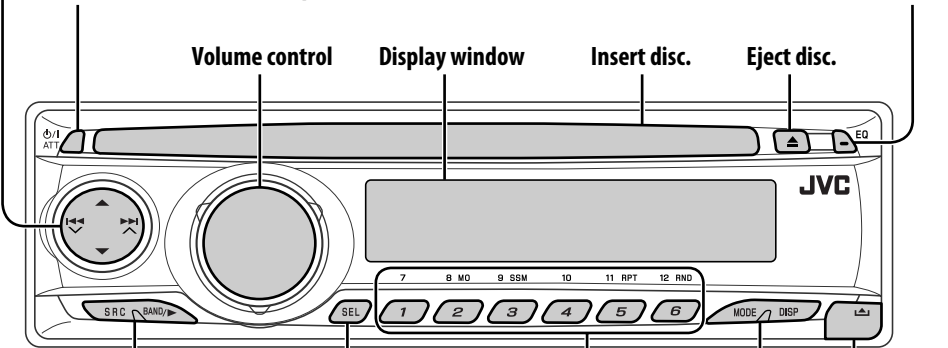
- **FM/AM:** Search for station.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/track.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Select track.



- **FM/AM:** Select preset station.
- **DISC:** Select folder.
Also functions as +10/-10 buttons after pressing MODE to skip 10 chapters/tracks at a time.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Enter the main menu/Pause or stop playback/Confirm selection.

- Turn on the power.
- Turn off the power [Hold].
- Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

Select the sound mode.



Adjust the sound mode.
Hold to enter the PSM settings.

Detach the panel.

- **FM/AM:** Select preset station.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/title/folder/track/disc (for CD changer).



Select the source.

FM/AM → **DISC*** → **CD-CH*/IPOD*/D.PLAYER*** (or **EXT IN**) → (back to the beginning)

* You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.



- **FM/AM:** Select the bands.
- **DISC:** Start playback.



Enter functions mode.

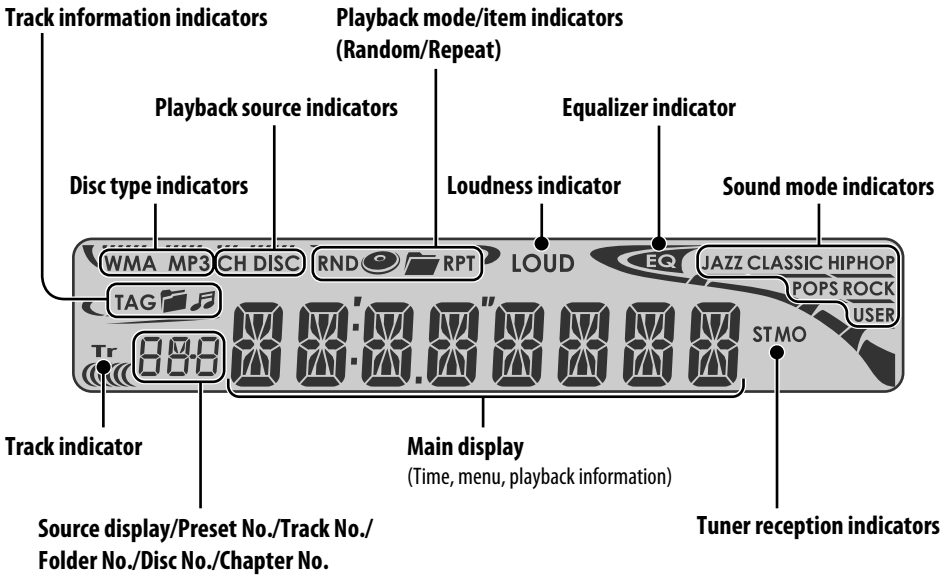
Press MODE, then one of the following buttons (within 5 seconds)...

- MO:** Turn on/off monaural reception.
- SSM:** Automatic station presetting.
- RPT:** Select repeat play.
- RND:** Select random play.



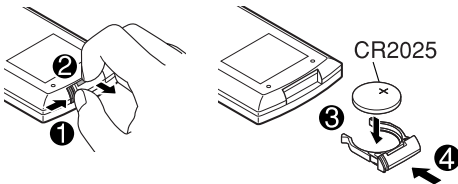
Change the display information.

Display window



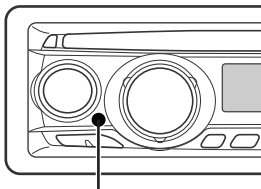
Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK230)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

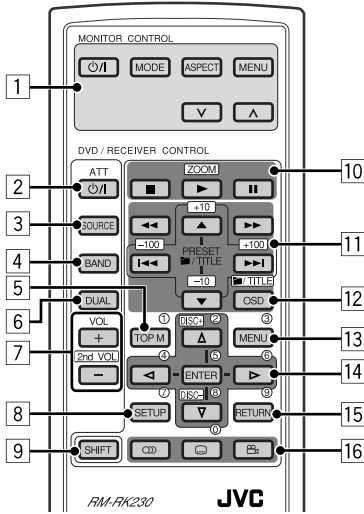


Remote sensor

Warning:
To prevent accidents and damage

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Continued on the next page



MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons
 - Used for a JVC monitor—KV-MR9010, KV-MH6510, KV-M706, or KV-M705.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 Turns on/off the power.
 - Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- 3 Selects the source.
- 4 Selects the FM/AM bands.
- 5*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 6 Not applicable for this unit.
- 7 Adjusts the volume level.
 - 2nd VOL: Not applicable for this unit.
- 8*1 Enters DVD setup menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10
 - (stop), ► (play), || (pause)
 - ► (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button (see page 12).
 - Not applicable for CD changer/iPod/D. player operations.
- 11*2 **For advanced disc operations:**
 - /TITLE ▲ / ▼
 - DVD: Selects the titles.
 - MP3/WMA: Selects the folders if included.
 - ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse skip/forward skip.
 - ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse search/forward search (not applicable for CD changer operations).

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- PRESET ▲ / ▼
 - Changes the preset stations.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶
 - Searches for the stations if pressed briefly.
 - Manual searches if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
 - ▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
 - ▲: Enters the main menu.
 - (Now ▲/▼/◀◀ / ▶▶ work as the menu selecting buttons.)*3
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (in menu selecting mode)
 - Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
 - Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

- 12
 - Shows the on-screen bar.
 - Also function as the /TITLE button when pressed with SHIFT button (see pages 12 and 13).
- 13*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 14*1
 - Makes selection/settings.
 - DISC +/- buttons: Changes discs when the source is “CD-CH.”
- 15*1 RETURN button
- 16
 - DVD: Selects audio language (○○○), subtitles (□□□), angle (□□□).
 - VCD: Selects audio channel (○○○).

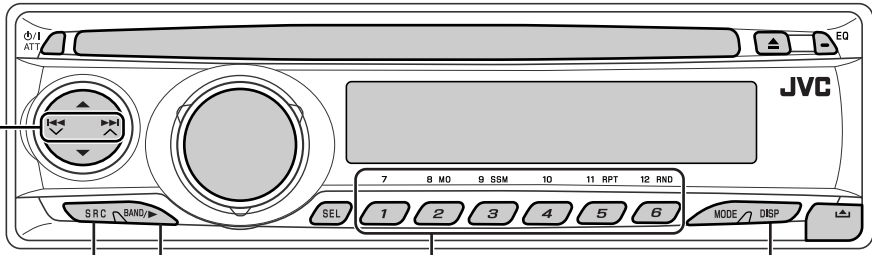
*1 Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

- FM/AM: Selects preset stations.
- DISC: Selects chapter/title/folder/track.

*2 Functions as +10/-10/+100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 ▲ : Returns to the previous menu.
 ▼ : Confirms the selection.

Listening to the radio

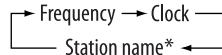


- 3**
- 1**
- 2**

Select preset station.

Change the display information

* If no name is assigned to a station, "NO NAME" appears. To assign a name, see page 24.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

- 1** Select "FM/AM."
- 2** Select the bands.
FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
- 3** Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.
 - Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

- 1** MODE
 - 2** B MO
2
MONO → MONO OFF (Canceled)
- Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.
- MO indicator lights up.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset six stations for each band.

- 1** BAND/▶ → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
- 2** MODE

- 3** 9 SSM
3 [Hold] SSM
- Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

- 1** BAND/▶ → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM
- 2** 92.5
- 3** 10
4 [Hold] P4 92.5

Disc operations

Before performing any operations...

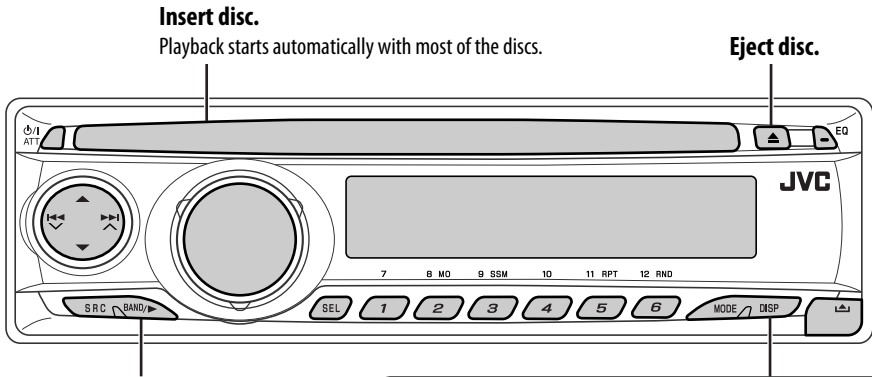
Turn on the monitor for playing a DVD or VCD. If you turn on the monitor, you can also control playback of other discs by referring to the monitor screen. (See pages 13 – 15.)

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc does not have any disc menu (when playback stops), all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If “⊘” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing “⊘,” operations will not be accepted.



Insert disc.

Playback starts automatically with most of the discs.

Eject disc.

Start playback if necessary.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

*1 If the file does not have Tag information or "TAG DISP" is set to "TAG OFF" (see page 20), folder name and file name appear. TAG indicator will not light up.

*2 "NO NAME" appears for an audio CD.

Change the display information



Elapsed playing time → Clock → Current title and chapter number



Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number



Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number

Track title ← Album name/performer (file name*1) ← (folder name*1)










Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number


Track title*2 ← Disc title/performer*2








Operations using the control panel

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

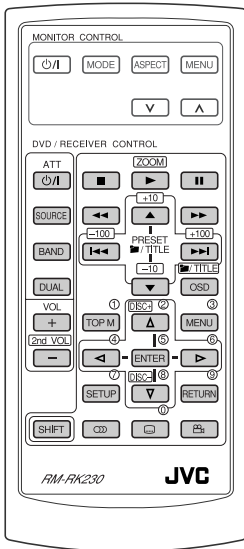
Disc type			 (Number buttons)
 DVD	Press: Select chapter Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter*	—	During stop: Locate title During play/pause: Locate chapter
 VCD	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Select track	Select folder	Locate particular folder directly
 CD	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly

* Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Leftrightarrow \times 10$ on the monitor.

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

Disc type			
 DVD	Skip 10 chapters (during play or pause)	CHP RPT: Repeat current chapter TIT RPT: Repeat current title	—
 VCD	Skip 10 tracks (PBC not in use)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track (PBC not in use)	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Skip 10 tracks (within the same folder)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: Repeat current folder	FLDR RND: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks
 CD	Skip 10 tracks	TRK RPT: Repeat current track	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks

• To cancel repeat play or random play, select “RPT OFF” or “RND OFF.”



- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play (10-second review if pressed during play.)
- : Reverse/forward chapter search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
- : *Press*: Select chapter (during play or pause)
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter search
- : Select title
- : Select audio language
- : Select subtitle language
- : Select view angle



Using menu driven features...

- 1 TOP M / MENU
- 2 Select an item you want to start play.
- 3 ENTER

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.

While holding ...*3

- ... : Select chapter (during play or pause)
- : Select title (when stop)
- , then ... : Select title directly

2 Move the enlarged portion.

-
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."

- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
 - Reverse slow motion does not work.
- : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search
- : Select audio channel (ST: stereo, L: left, R: Right)

While holding ...*3

- ... : Select track (For VCD with PBC, a list of items is shown on the disc menu.)
 - To return to the previous menus, press .

Canceling the PBC playback...

- 1
- 2 While holding , press ...*3 to start the desired track.
 - To resume PBC, press .

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.

2 Move the enlarged portion.

-
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."



: Stop play

: Pause

: Start play (Playback starts from the beginning of the track.)

: Select track

: Select folder

While holding ...*3

... : Select track (within the same folder)

: , then ... : Select folder directly**4

MP3/WMA

: Stop play

: Pause

: Start play

: Reverse/forward track search

: Press: Select tracks
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search

While holding ...*3

... : Select track directly

CD

*1 Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Rightarrow \times 5 \Rightarrow \times 10 \Rightarrow \times 20 \Rightarrow \times 60$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.

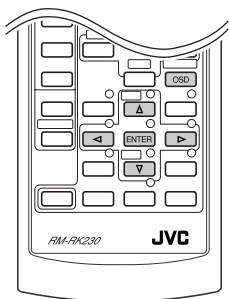
*2 Slow motion speed changes to $\text{▶1/32} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/16} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/8} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/4} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/2}$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.

*3 For selecting numbers greater than 9 or 99, press +10 or +100 , then follow by $\text{①} \dots \text{⑨}$.

*4 To use direct folder access on MP3/WMA discs, it is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Show the on-screen bar (see page 14).

(once) for MP3/WMA/CD
(twice) for DVD/VCD

2 Select an item.

3 Make a selection.

If pop-up menu appears...

• For entering time/numbers, see the following.

4 Remove the on-screen bar.

Entering time/numbers

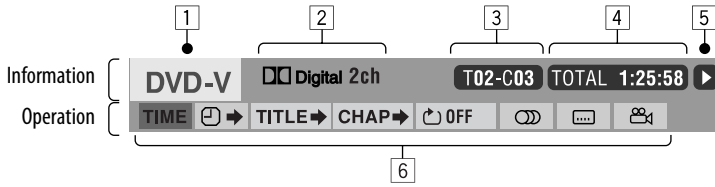
- To select numbers 0 – 9:
While holding , press $\text{①} \dots \text{⑨}$.
- To select numbers greater than 9:
While holding , press +10 . Then, press $\text{①} \dots \text{⑨}$.
- After entering the numbers, press .
- To reduce numbers, use -10 .
- To correct a misentry, use .

Ex.: Time search

- DVD: $\text{_:}_\text{:}_\text{:}_\text{:}_\text{:}$
To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
- VCD (PBC not in use): $\text{_:}_\text{:}_\text{:}_\text{:}$
To enter 64 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 6, 4, 0, then 0.

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar



- 1 Disc type
- 2 DVD/DTS audio CD: Audio signal format type
VCD: PBC
- 3 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
TRACK 01 Current track
- 4 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD, elapsed playing time of the current title.)
T. REM DVD: Remaining title time
 VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track
- 5 Playback status
 Play
 Forward/reverse search
 Forward/reverse slow-motion
 Pause
 Stop
- 6 Operation icons
TIME Change the time indication (see 4)
 Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE Title Search (by its number)
CHAP Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK Track Search (by its number)
 Change the audio language or audio channel
 Change the subtitle language
 Change the view angle
 DVD: Repeat play
REPEAT VCD/MP3/WMA/CD: Repeat play
INTRO Intro play
RANDOM Random play



Repeat play*1 :



(PBC not in use)

Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :



Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :



Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :

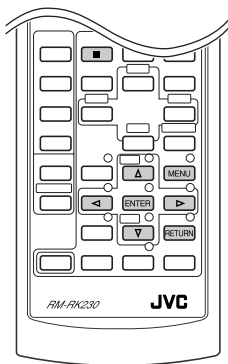
*1 For repeat play/random play, see also page 11.

*2 Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...

INTRO TRACK (INTRO): All tracks of the current disc.

INTRO FOLDER: First tracks of all folders of the current disc.

Operations using the control/list screen (MP3/WMA/CD)



These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

- Folder selection/information is only for MP3/WMA discs.

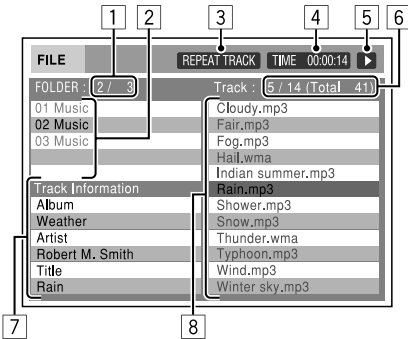
Control screen

The control screen automatically appears when you insert a disc.

- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track to start playback.



Ex.: MP3/WMA disc

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Folder list with the current folder selected
- 3 Selected playback mode
- 4 Elapsed playing time of the current track
- 5 Operation mode icon (▶, ■, II, ►►, ◀◀)
- 6 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
- 7 Track information
- 8 Track list with the current track selected

Folder/track list screen

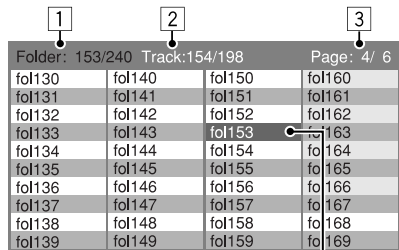
Before playing, you can display the folder list/track list to confirm the contents and start playing a track.

- 1 Display the folder/track list while stop.



- 2 Select an item from the list.

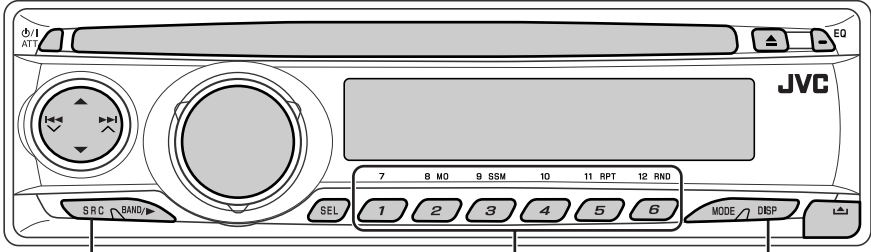
- MP3/WMA: Track list of the selected folder appears.
- To go back to the previous screen, press RETURN.



Ex.: Folder list

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder or in disc (CD)
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

Listening to the CD changer



1

2

Change the display information
(see page 10)

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can only play conventional CD (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

1 Select "CD-CH."

2 Select a disc to start playing.

Press: For selecting disc number 1 – 6.

Hold: For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

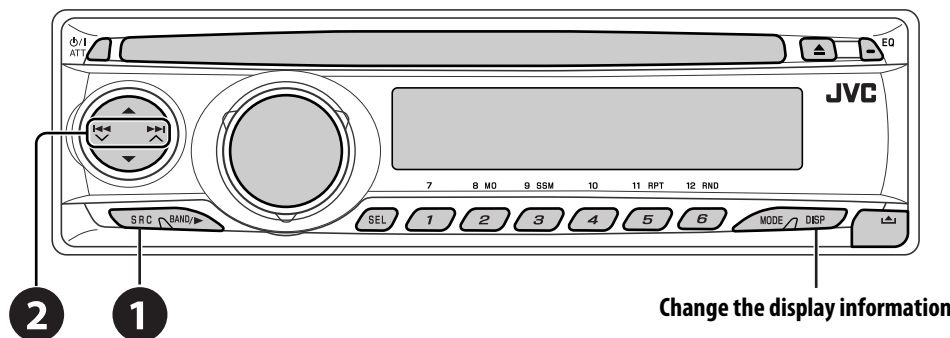
	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track
	MP3: Select folders

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks (MP3: within the same folder)
11 RPT 	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder DISC RPT: Repeat all tracks of the current disc
12 RND 	FLDR RND: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks of current disc MAG RND: Randomly play all tracks of the inserted discs

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

Listening to the iPod®/D. player



Before operating, connect the interface adapter (KS-PD100 or KS-PD500) to the CD changer jack of this unit.

Preparations:

Make sure "CHANGER" is selected for the external input setting, see page 20.

- 1 Select "IPOD" or "D. PLAYER."
- 2 Select a song to start playing.

Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu.



- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

- 2 Select the desired menu.



For iPod:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS
 ↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSER ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:

PLAYLIST ↔ ARTIST ↔ ALBUM ↔
 GENRE ↔ TRACK ↔ (back to the beginning)

- 3 Confirm the selection.



- To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- Holding ▼ ◀◀/▶▶ ▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

	Pause/stop playback • To resume playback, press it again.
	Press: Select tracks Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track

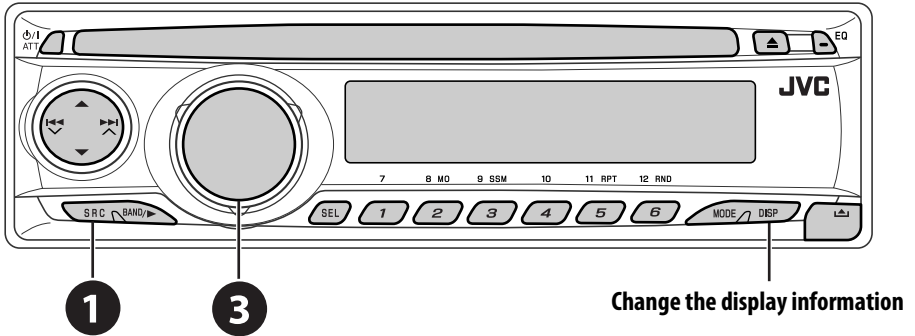
After pressing , press the following buttons to...

11 RPT 	ONE RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat One" or "Repeat Mode → One." ALL RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat All" or "Repeat Mode → All."
12 RND 	ALBM RND*: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod. SONG RND/RND ON: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" or "Random Play → On."

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

* iPod: Only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."

Listening to the other external components



You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

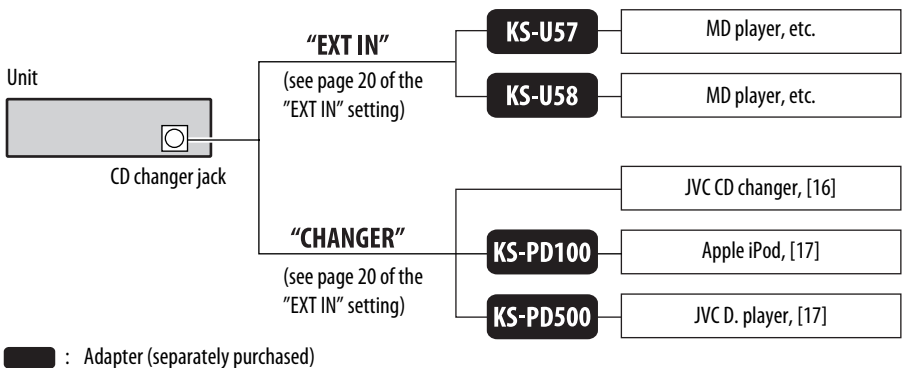
Preparations:

Make sure “EXT IN” is selected for the external input setting, see page 20.

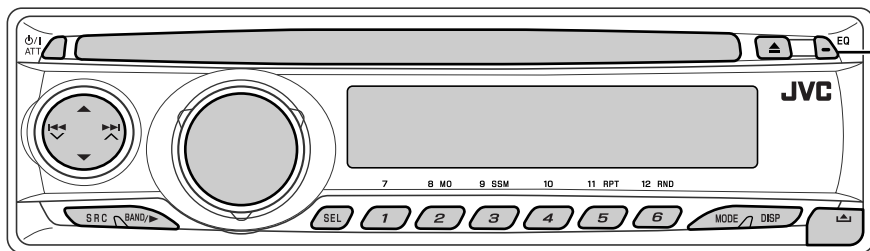
- 1 Select “EXT IN.”
- 2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.
- 3 Adjust the volume.
- 4 Adjust the sound as you want (see page 19).

Concept diagram of the external device connection

- For connection, see Installation/Connection manual (separate volume).



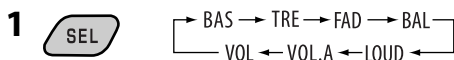
Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ



Indication (For)	BAS (bass)	TRE (treble)	LOUD (loudness)
USER (Flat sound)	00	00	OFF
ROCK (Rock or disco music)	+03	+01	ON
CLASSIC (Classical music)	+01	-02	OFF
POPS (Light music)	+04	+01	OFF
HIP HOP (Funk or rap music)	+02	00	ON
JAZZ (Jazz music)	+02	+03	OFF

BAS * ¹ (bass) Adjust the bass.	-06 to +06
TRE * ¹ (treble) Adjust the treble.	-06 to +06
FAD * ² (fader) Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 to F06
BAL (balance) Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 to R06
LOUD * ¹ (loudness) Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.	LOUD ON or LOUD OFF
VOL.A * ³ (volume adjust) Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level.	-05 to +05
VOL (volume) Adjust the volume.	00 to 30 (or 50)* ⁴

Adjusting the sound



2 Adjust the level.



*¹ When you adjust the bass, treble, or loudness, the adjustment you have made is stored for the currently selected sound mode (C-EQ) including "USER."

*² If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."

*³ You cannot make an adjustment for FM. "FLX" appears.

*⁴ Depending on the amplifier gain control setting. (See page 21 for details.)

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM settings.



2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.



4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.


5 Finish the procedure.



Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
DEMO Display demonstration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DEMO ON [Initial] • DEMO OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [5]. : Cancels.
CLOCK H Hour adjustment	1 – 12 [Initial: 1 (1:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLOCK M Minute adjustment	00 – 59 [Initial: 00 (1:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
DIMMER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Dims the display illumination. : Cancels.
SCROLL * ¹	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ONCE [Initial] • AUTO • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
EXT IN * ² External input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHANGER [Initial] • EXT IN 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : To use a JVC CD changer, [16], or an Apple iPod/a JVC D. player, [17]. : To use any other external component than the above, [18].
TAG DISP Tag display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TAG ON [Initial] • TAG OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
NTSC/PAL Video format	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PAL [Initial] • NTSC 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Select this if your monitor is of the PAL color system. : Select this if your monitor is of the NTSC color system.

*¹ Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.

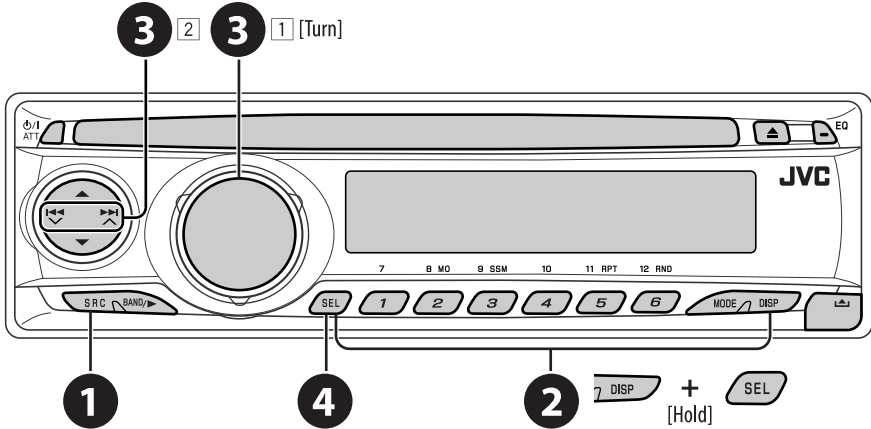
*² Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, or DISC.

Menu	Item	Setting
LANGUAGE	MENU LANGUAGE	Select the initial disc menu language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	AUDIO LANGUAGE	Select the initial audio language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	SUBTITLE	Select the initial subtitle language or remove the subtitle (OFF). Refer also to "Language codes" on page 23.
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select the language for the on screen display.
PICTURE	MONITOR TYPE	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. 16:9 4:3 LETTER BOX 4:3 PAN SCAN 
	OSD POSITION	Select the on-screen bar position on the monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Higher position • 2: Lower position (Guidance below the DVD setup menu will disappear.)
AUDIO	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Select the signal format to be emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (Optical) terminal. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PCM ONLY: Select for an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio, or connecting to a recording device. • DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. • STREAM/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio.
	DOWN MIX	When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks (and through the DIGITAL OUT terminal when "PCM ONLY" is selected for "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT"). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DOLBY SURROUND: Select to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. • STEREO: Normally select this.
	D. RANGE COMPRESSION	You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software). • ON: Select to always use this function.

Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KY	Kirghiz	PT	Portuguese	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	LA	Latin	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LN	Lingala	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LO	Laothian	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LT	Lithuanian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LV	Latvian, Lettish	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	MG	Malagasy	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MI	Maori	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MK	Macedonian	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	ML	Malayalam	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	MN	Mongolian	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MO	Moldavian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MR	Marathi	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MS	Malay (MAY)	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MT	Maltese	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Assigning names to the stations



You can assign names to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) and up to 8 characters for each station name.

- ① Select "FM/AM."
- ② Show the title entry screen.
- ③ Assign a title.
 - ① Select a character.
 - ② Move to the next (or previous) character position.
 - ③ Repeat steps ① and ② until you finish entering the title.
- ④ Finish the procedure.

To erase the entire title

In step ② above...



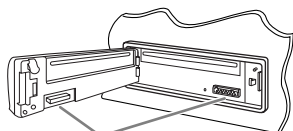
Available characters

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	-	/	<	>	space	

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.
To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

Center holder



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

FM/AM

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing stations, the previously preset stations are erased and stations are stored newly.

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3/WMA files and their file names.
- This unit can also playback 8 cm discs.
- This unit can only playback audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- This unit can recognize a total of 3 500 files (250 folder per disc; 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for the files.
- This unit may be unable to play back some discs or files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 64 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATAC3, etc.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play starts from where it has been stopped previously.
For MP3/WMA disc, playback starts from the beginning of the last playing track.

iPod® or D. player

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 8 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 20). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

General settings—PSM

- If you change the “AMP GAIN” setting from “HIGH PWR” to “LOW PWR” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30.”

DVD setup menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PAN SCAN” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LETTER BOX” for some DVDs.


Title assignment


- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, “NAMEFULL” appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.


On-screen guide icons


During playback, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

DVD: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing:

 : Multi-subtitle languages

 : Multi-audio languages


 : Multi-angle views

 : Playback

 : Pause

 : DVD/VCD: Forward slow motion

 : DVD: Reverse slow motion

 : Forward search

 : Reverse search

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):** 2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 22.)

- **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):** Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see table below.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” correctly. (See page 22.)

Output signals through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Output signals are different depending on the “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” setting on the setup menu (see page 22).

DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Output Signals		
	STREAM/PCM	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	PCM ONLY
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
	96 kHz, Linear PCM		
	with DTS	DTS bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital bitstream	
with MPEG Audio	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM/48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS	DTS bitstream	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
MP3/WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 10). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc cannot be recognized.	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• No playback picture (DVD/VCD) appears on the monitor.	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. (See Installation/Connection Manual.)
	• No picture appears on the monitor at all.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
	• The monitor shows black and white wavy pictures (DVD/VCD).	Use a disc recorded in NTSC color system and change the video format to NTSC (see page 20).
	• The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the monitor.	Select "4:3 LETTER BOX" (see page 22).

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the disc. • Record tracks using a compliant application in the appropriate discs (see page 4). • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3/WMA tracks.)
	• Longer readout time is required.	Readout time varies due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration. Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks cannot playback as you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "NO FILES" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains tracks of appropriate formats.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
CD changer	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• "NO MAG" appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• "RESET 8" appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
iPod/D. player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Change the battery. Update the firmware version.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Buttons do not work as intended. 	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press MODE before performing the operation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sound is distorted. 	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "NO IPOD" or "NO DP" appears on the display. 	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback stops. 	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 17).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. "ERROR 01" appears on the display when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "NO FILES" or "NO TRACK" appears on the display. 	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display. 	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "RESET 8" appears on the display. 	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod's or D. player's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	Reset the iPod or D. player.	

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass/Treble:	± 10 dB at 100 Hz/ ± 10 dB at 10 kHz
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical):	Signal wave length: 660 nm Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm
		Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.0 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 k Ω
	Color System:		PAL/NTSC
	Video Output (composite):		1 V _{p-p} /75 Ω
Other Terminal:		CD changer	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μ V/35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)		
	Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)		
	Frequency Response:	DVD, fs=48 kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz	
		DVD, fs=96 kHz:	16 Hz to 44 000 Hz	
		VCD/CD/MP3/WMA:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz	
	Dynamic Range:	96 dB		
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB		
	Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit		
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps	
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz	
WMA:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 192 kbps		
	Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz		
		MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz		

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)	
	Grounding System:	Negative ground		
	Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C		
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm	
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm	
	Mass (approx.):	1.6 kg (excluding accessories)		

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS 2.0 + Digital Out” are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

在操作時遇到麻煩了？

請重設本機

參閱如何重設本機之頁

JVC



EN, CT

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

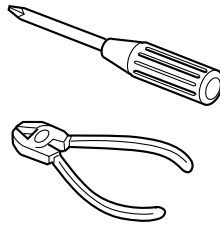
1205DTSMDTJEIN

JVC KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205

Installation/Connection Manual

安裝/連接手冊

GET0369-006A
[U/UT]



1205DTSMDTJEIN
EN, CT

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent accidents and damage:

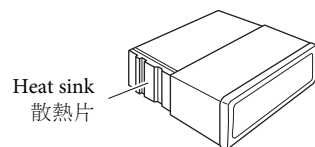
- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where;**
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT operate the unit while driving.**
- **If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



中文

本機僅可使用**直流 12 V、負極接地的電源系統**。如果您的車輛沒有這一電源系統，則需要一個電壓變換器，可以在 JVC 汽車音響分銷商處買到。

警告

為防止事故和損壞：

- 切勿將本機安裝在下述位置；
 - 可能會妨礙操作方向盤和變速排檔桿的位置。
 - 可能會妨礙操作安全裝置，如安全氣袋等的位置。
 - 可能會妨礙視野的位置。
- 切勿在駕駛過程中操作本機。
- 在駕駛過程中若需要操作本機，切記要密切注意前方。
- 駕駛員在駕駛過程中切勿觀看顯示器。
若手剎車未嚙合，"駕駛時，駕駛員請勿觀看顯示屏。"字樣在顯示器上出現，且無法播放圖像。
 - 僅當手剎車導線與汽車內置的手剎車系統相連接時此警告信息才會出現。

為防止短路，建議在安裝本機之前，斷開電池的負極，並把所有電路都連接好。

- **安裝完畢後務必將本機的地線重新接至車身。**

注意：

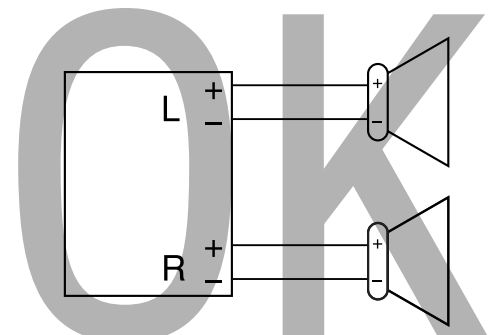
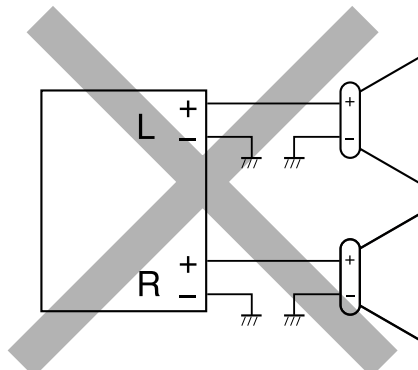
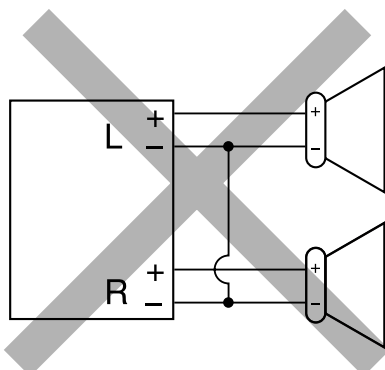
- 把保險絲更換為額定負荷值的保險絲。如果保險絲經常燒壞，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商詢問。
- 後置和前置揚聲器的最大輸入功率應大於 50 W，其阻抗為 **4 Ω - 8 Ω**。如果最大功率小於 50 W，請調校 "AMP GAIN" 設定值，以防止揚聲器損壞。(參閱使用說明書的第 21 頁)。
- 為防止電源短路，請用絕緣帶包住**未使用**電線的端子。
- 本機使用後，散熱片會很熱。因此，在移出本機時，小心不要觸摸散熱片。

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

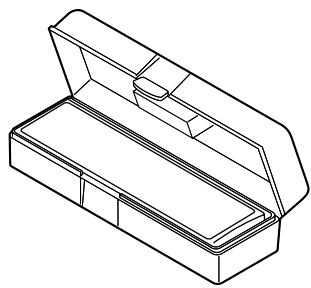
電源和揚聲器接線注意事項:

- 切勿把揚聲器導線接頭接至電池，否則本機將會嚴重損壞。
- 在把揚聲器導線接頭接至揚聲器之前，檢查您汽車上的揚聲器線路。

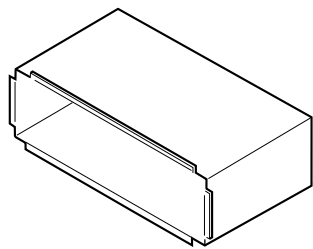


Parts list for installation and connection

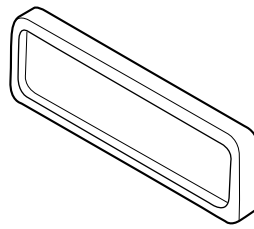
The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.



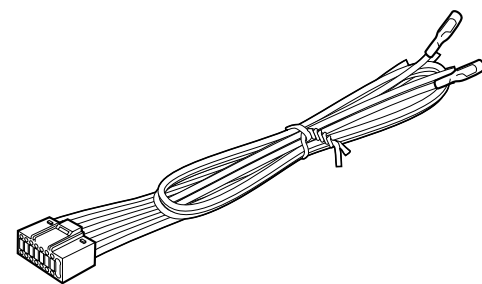
A / B
Hard case/Control panel
硬盒/控制面板



C
Sleeve
外套機殼

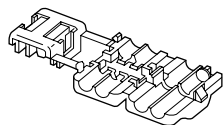


D
Trim plate
裝飾框



E
Power cord
電路連接用的配線束

F
Crimp connector
夾子接頭



G
Washer (ø5)
墊圈 (ø5)



H
Lock nut (M5)
鎖定螺母 (M5)



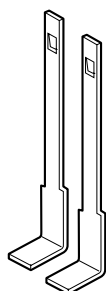
I
Mounting bolt (M5 × 20 mm)
緊固螺栓 (M5 × 20 mm)



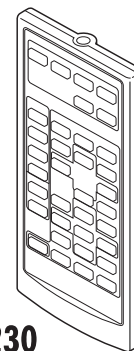
J
Rubber cushion
橡膠防震墊



K
Handles
板條型把手



L
Remote controller
遙控器



M
Battery
電池



CR2025

RM-RK230

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

• Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):

2-channel signal is emitted.

When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

• Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 28 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital*1 and DTS*2, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" correctly. (See page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

*1 Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" and "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

有關自後面板端子輸出的聲音

• 自模擬端子 (揚聲器輸出 / LINE OUT) :

輸出雙聲道信號。

當播放多聲道編碼的碟片時，多聲道信號會被下行混合處理。(音頻—下行混合: 參閱使用說明書的第 22 頁。)

• 自 DIGITAL OUT 輸出 (光學端子) :

此端子輸出數碼信號 (線性 PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, 音頻 MPEG)。

(詳情參閱使用說明書的第 28 頁。)
想要獲得多聲道音響效果，如 Dolby Digital*1 和 DTS*2 時，將與多聲道音響效果相兼容的功率放大器或解碼器連接至該端子，並正確設定 "數碼音頻輸出"。(參閱使用說明書的第 22 頁。)

*1 由 Dolby Laboratories 授權製造。

杜比、Dolby 與雙 D 記號是 Dolby Laboratories 的商標。

*2 "DTS" 和 "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" 是數碼影院系統公司的商標。

TROUBLESHOOTING

• The fuse blows.

* Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

• Power cannot be turned on.

* Is the yellow lead connected?

• No sound from the speakers.

* Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

• Sound is distorted.

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?

* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• Noise interfere with sounds.

* Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

• Unit becomes hot.

* Is the speaker output lead grounded?

* Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• This unit does not work at all.

* Have you reset your unit?

故障排除

• 保險絲燒斷。

* 檢查紅色導線接頭和黑色導線接頭是否接觸正確?

• 電源不能接通。

* 檢查黃色導線接頭是否接上?

• 揚聲器沒有聲音。

* 檢查揚聲器輸出導線接頭是否短路?

• 聲音失真。

* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地?

* 檢查揚聲器的左 (L)、右 (R) 端子的負極 (-) 是否共同接地?

• 噪音干擾音響。

* 後接地端子與車身是否使用較短和較粗的電線連接?

• 本機發熱。

* 檢查揚聲器輸出端子是否接地?

* 檢查揚聲器的左 (L)、右 (R) 端子的負極 (-) 是否共同接地?

• 本機完全不能操作。

* 您是否已經重置您的機組?

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

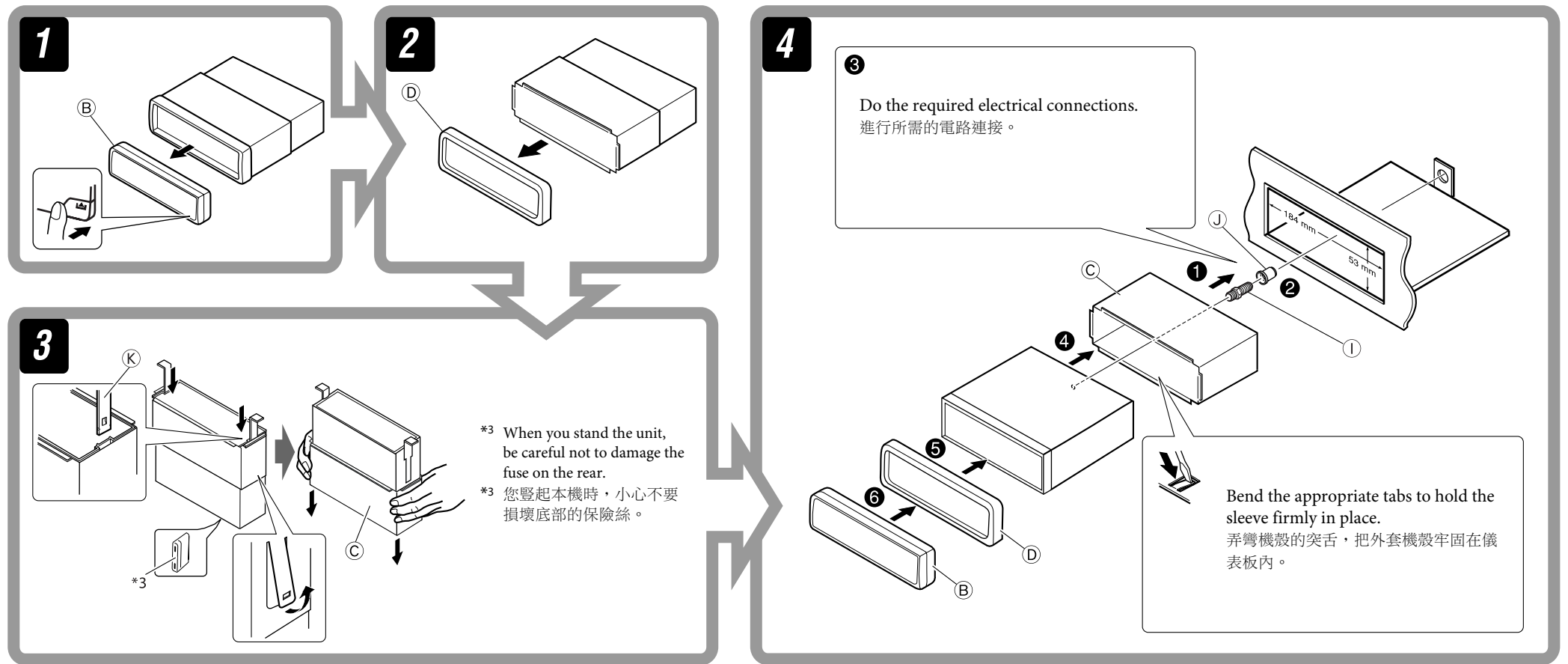
The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.

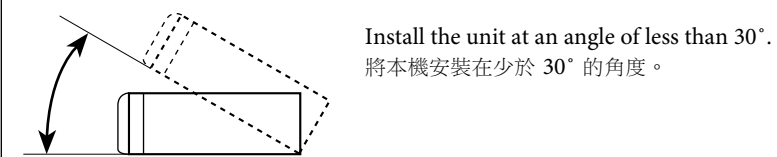
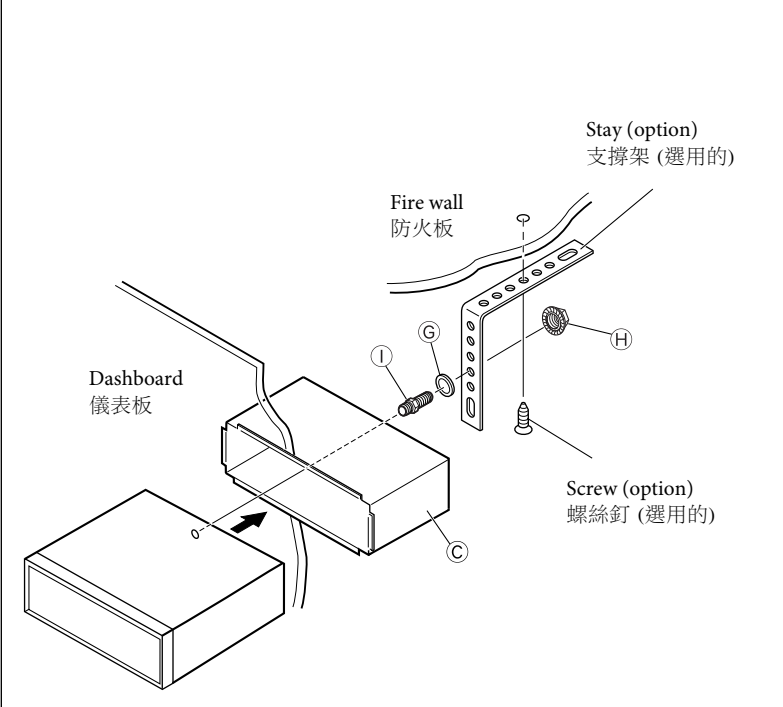
安裝 (裝設、固定在儀表板內)

下面的圖解表示了典型的安裝程序。如果您有問題，或需要有關配套元件的資料，請向 JVC 汽車音響分銷商或配套元件供應公司詢問。

- 如果您不能確定如何正確地安裝本機，應請合格的技術人員來安裝。

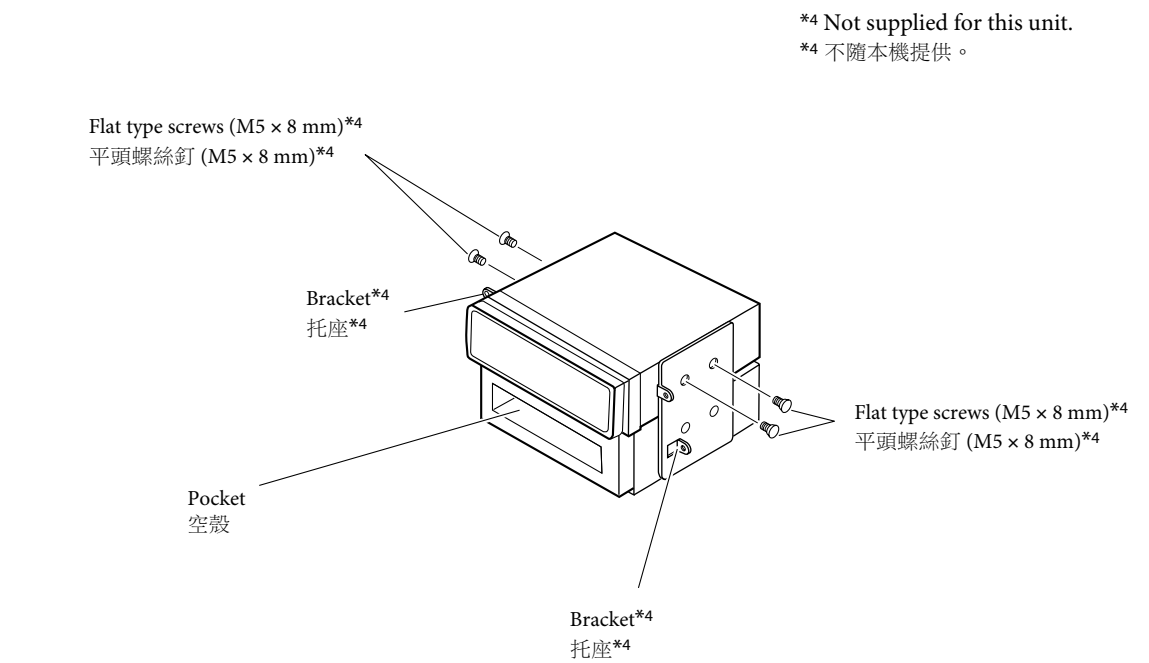


When using the optional stay / 若選用支撐架



When installing the unit without using the sleeve / 若不使用外套機殼安裝本機

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.
以豐田牌 (TOYOTA) 汽車為例：首先取出汽車收音機，然後將本機裝入其空出的位置。



*4 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 不隨本機提供。

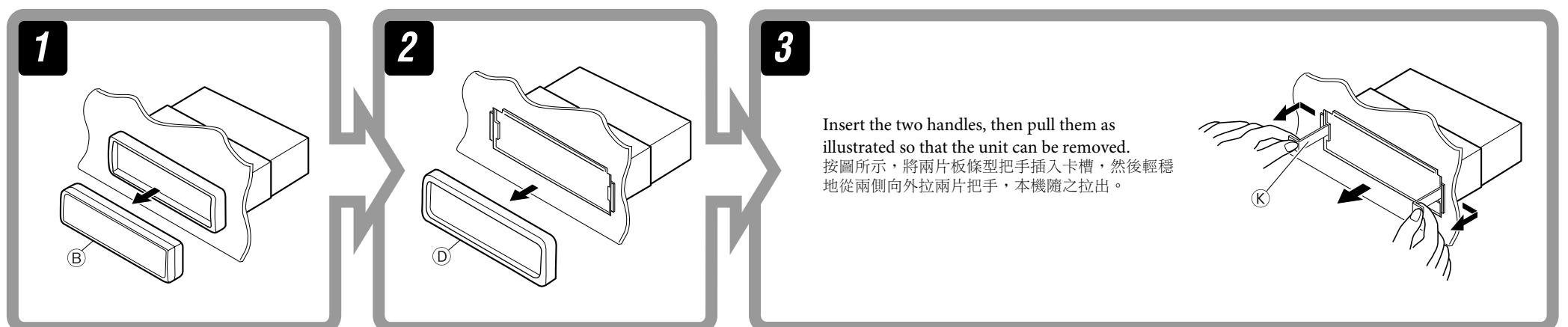
Note : When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
注意 : 把本機安裝在托座上時，務必使用 8 mm 長的螺絲釘。如使用過長的螺絲釘，會損壞本機。

Removing the unit

Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

拆卸本機

在拆卸本機前，應將本機後部的固定和連接部分鬆開。



ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

電路連接

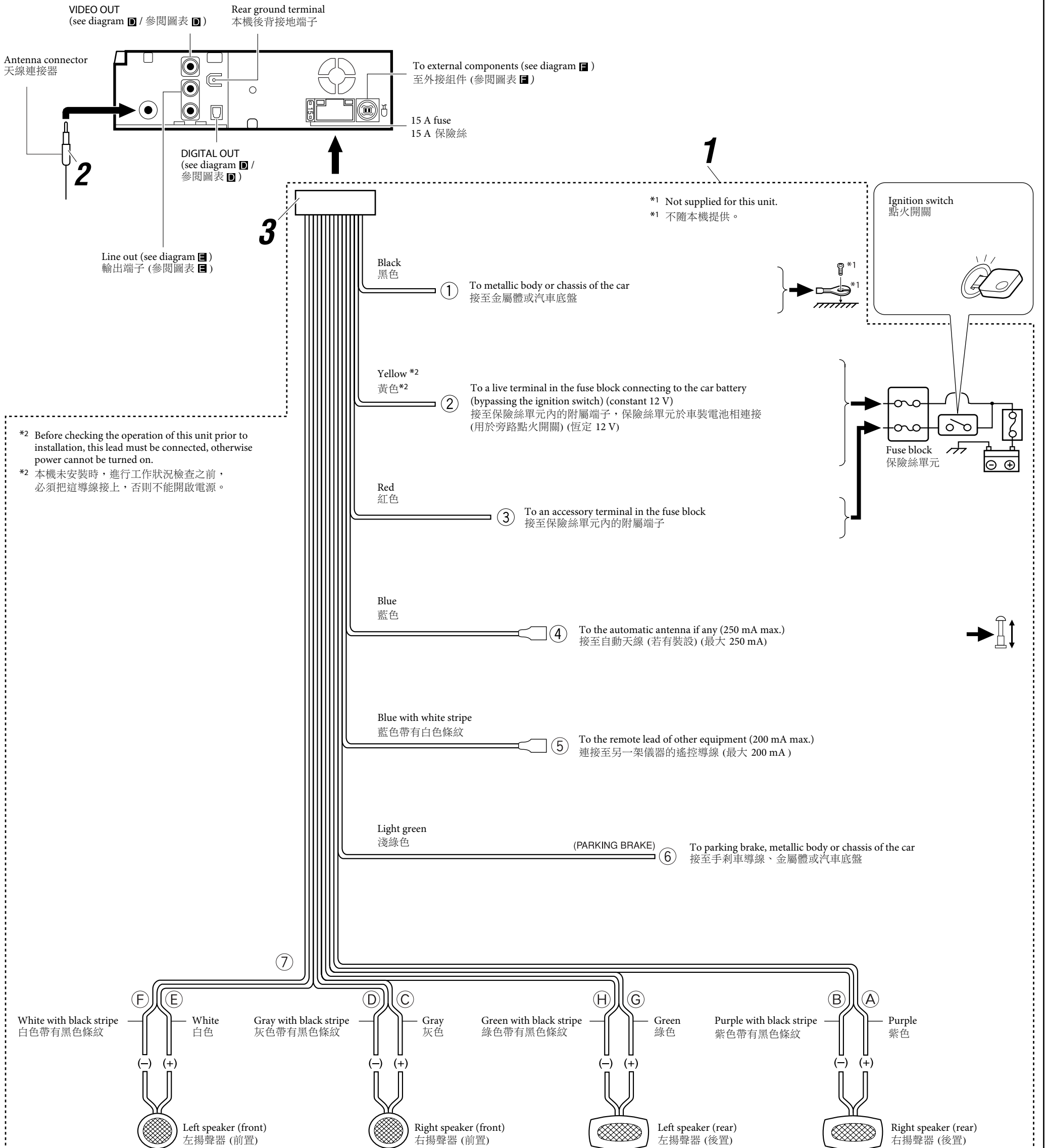
A Typical connections / 典型的接線方法

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

接線前: 仔細檢查汽車內的線路。不正確的接線會導致本機嚴重損壞。
電力線的引線和車身的連接器引線在顏色上可能有所不同。

- 1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 2 Connect the antenna cord.
- 3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

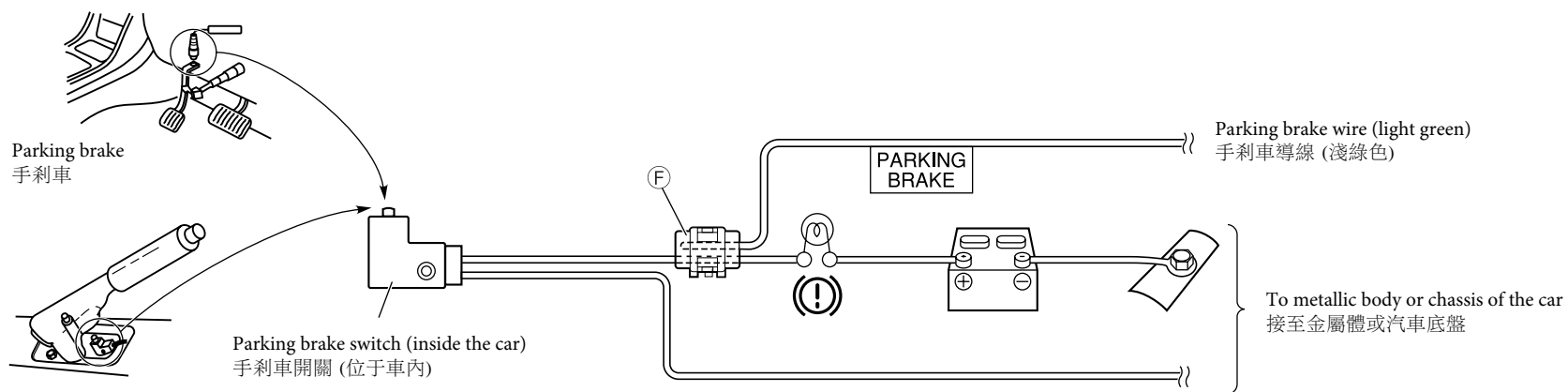
- 1 依照下圖所示之次序連接電源線的顏色導線。
- 2 將天線的電線連接起來。
- 3 最後，把配線束的插頭插在本機上。



B Connecting the parking brake wire / 連接至手剎車導線

When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver

將顯示器安裝在司機可以看到的位置時

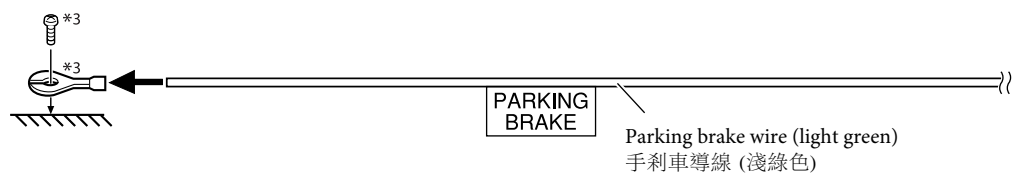


When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver

將顯示器安裝在司機看不到的位置時

Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis of the car.

將手剎車導線連接至金屬體或汽車底盤。

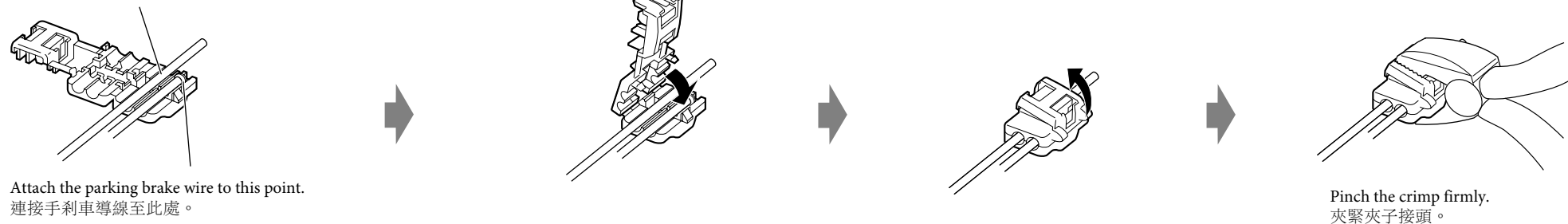


*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 不隨本機提供。

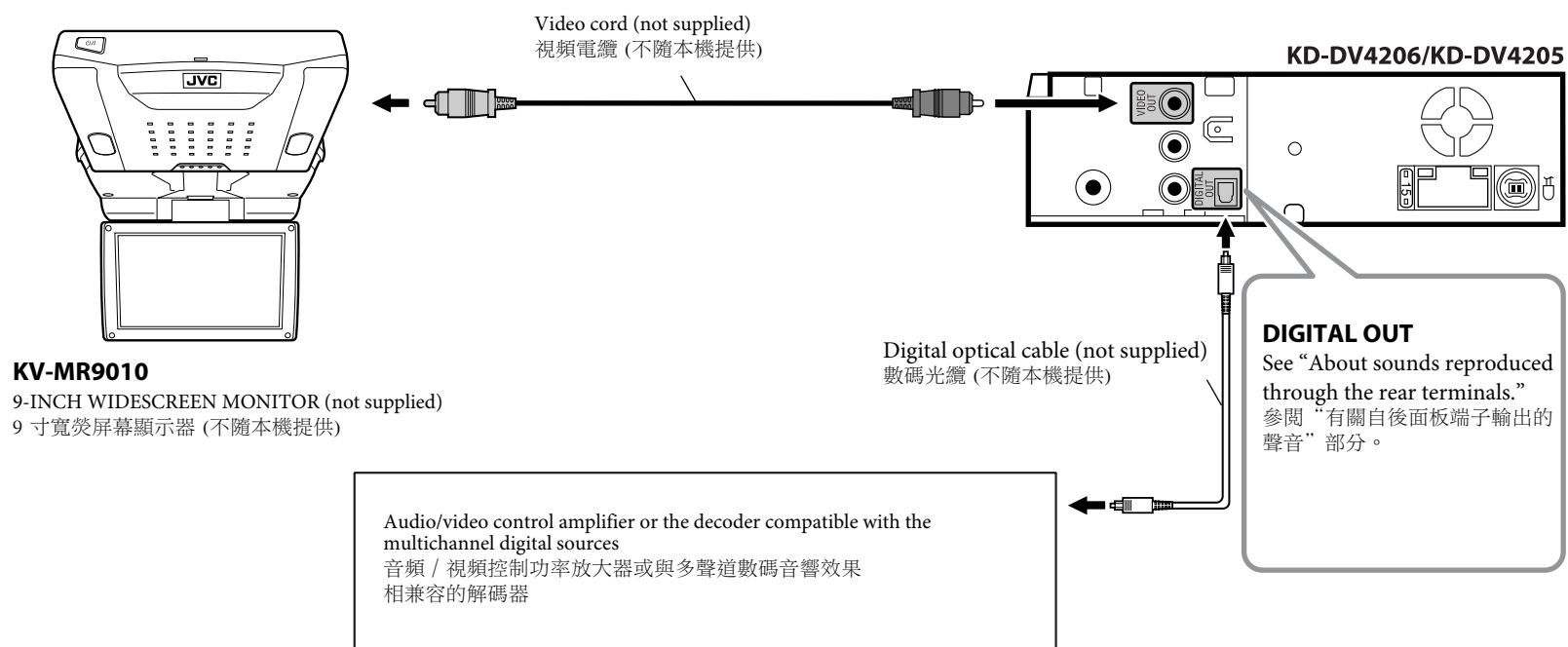
C Connecting the crimp connector / 連接至夾子接頭

Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
連接電池和手剎車開關的電線。

Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
使夾子接頭金屬部分和內部電線接觸。



D Required connections for DVD playback / 播放 DVD 所需的連接



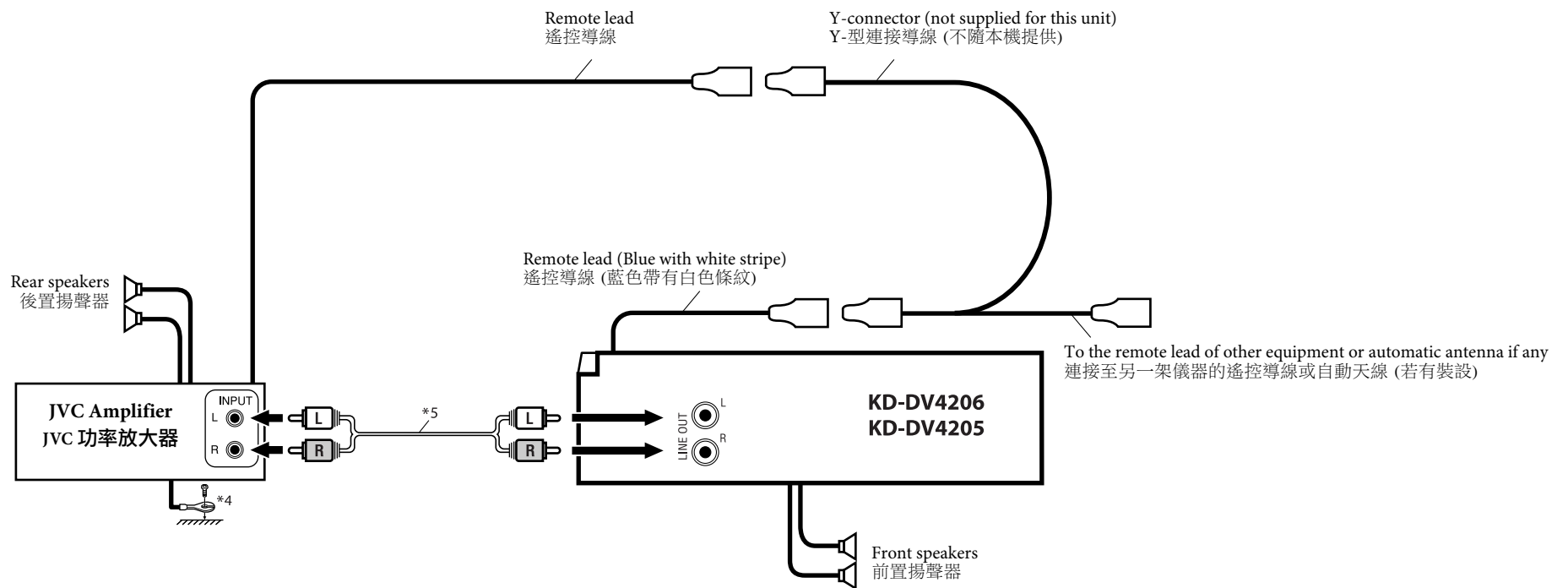
E Connecting the external amplifier / 連接至外部功率放大器

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

您可以連接放大器以升級您的汽車立體聲系統。

- 將遙控導線（藍色帶有白色條紋）和其他裝置上的遙控導線連接起來，以便可以通過本機進行遙控。
- 將揚聲器和本機斷開，再接上功率放大器。將本機的揚聲器接線放置不用。



*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

*4 將地線與金屬車體或者汽車底盤緊密連接，連接處應該沒有被油漆覆蓋（如果已塗上油漆，在連接電線前，將油漆刮去）。如果不這樣做，可能會損壞本機。

*5 信號電纜（不隨本機提供）

F Connecting the external components / 連接其他外部組件

CD changer, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / CD 換碟器、Apple iPod® 或 JVC D. player

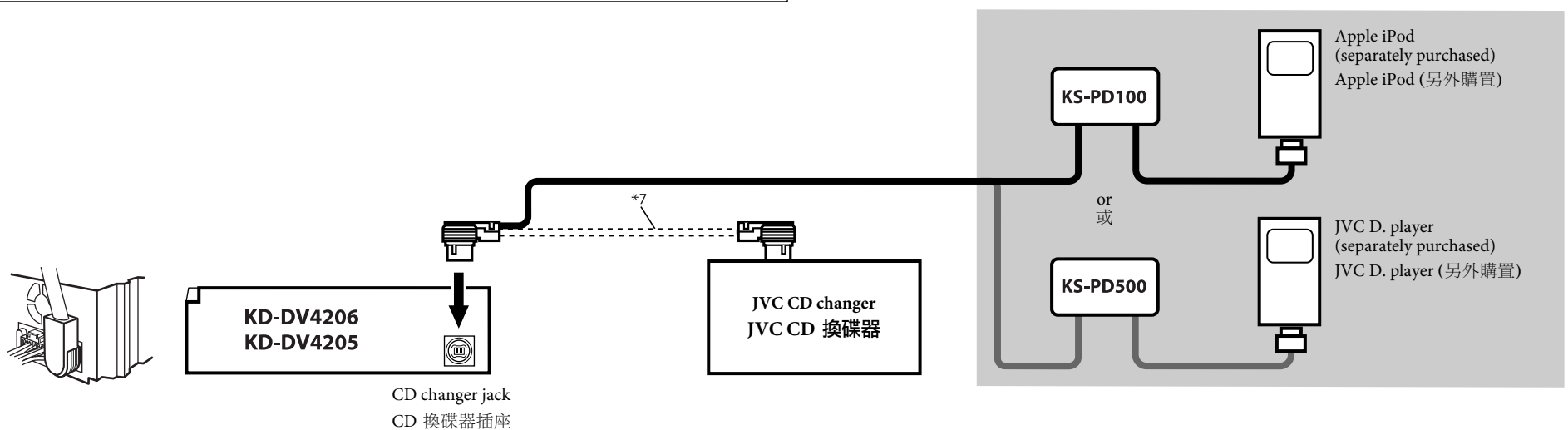
- Set "CHANGER" for the external input setting (See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / 將外部輸入設定設至 "CHANGER" (換碟器) (參閱使用說明書的第 20 頁。)

You can connect these components as illustrated below. The iPod*6 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

您可以將這組件如圖所示進行連接。您可以使用界面適配器（不配備）— KS-PD100 (iPod 用) 或 KS-PD500 (D. player 用) 連接 iPod*6 或 D. player。

CAUTION / 小心：

Before connecting the external components, make sure that the unit is turned off.
連接外部組件之前，先確定本機已經關閉。



*6 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

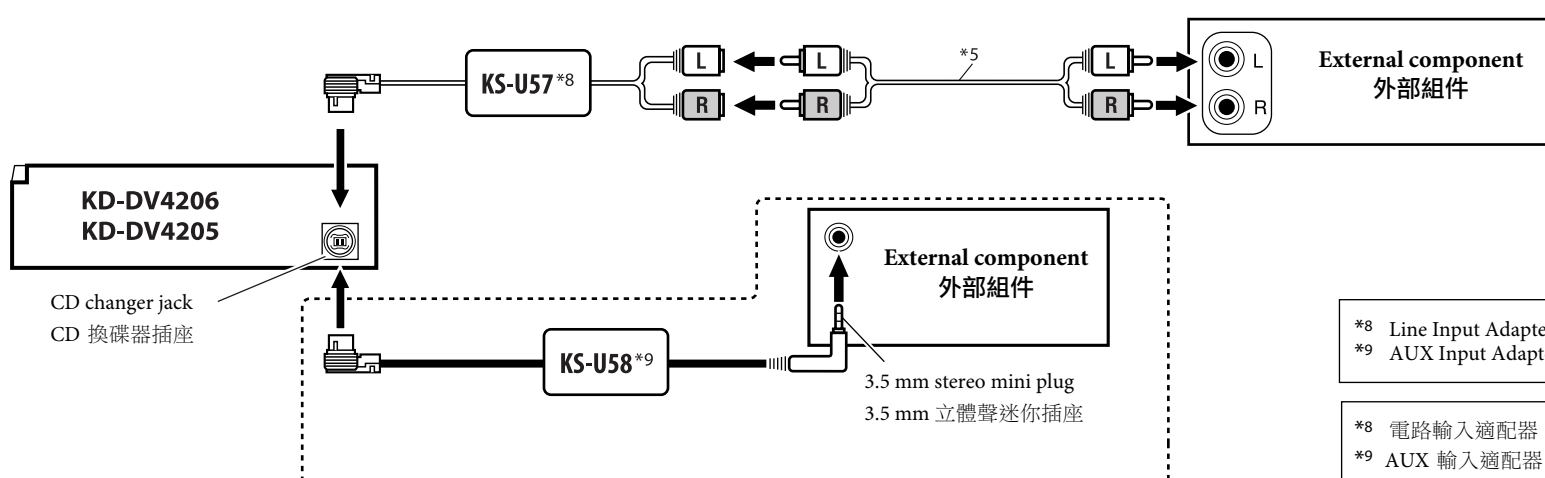
*7 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer

*6 iPod 是 Apple Computer, Inc. (蘋果電腦公司) 在美國及其他國家註冊的商標。

*7 您的 CD 換碟器配備的連接電纜

Other external component / 其他外部組件

- Set "EXT IN" for the external input setting (See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / 將外部輸入設定設至 "EXT IN" (外部輸入) (參閱使用說明書的第 20 頁。)



*8 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)
*9 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)

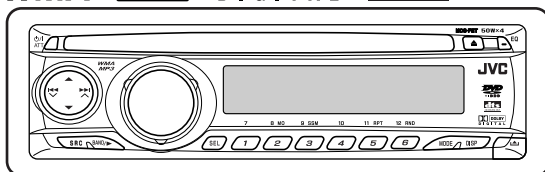
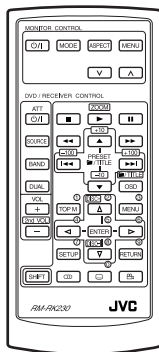
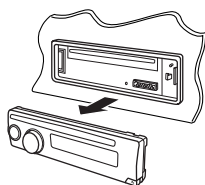
*8 電路輸入適配器 KS-U57 (不隨本機提供)
*9 AUX 輸入適配器 KS-U58 (不隨本機提供)

JVC



DVD/CD RECEIVER

KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205



For canceling the display demonstration, see page 5.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

INSTRUCTIONS

GET0369-005A
[A]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

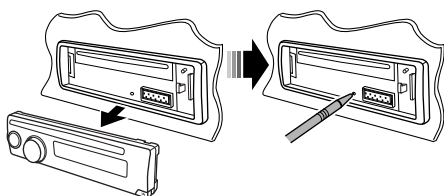
IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	ADVARSEL : Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (e)	WARNING : Synlig och osynlig laserstråling när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Beträkta ej strålen. (d)	VARO : Avattassa ja suojalukitus ohitettuna tai viallisena olet alittina näkyvälle ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan ihteeseen. (f)
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

How to reset your unit



- Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

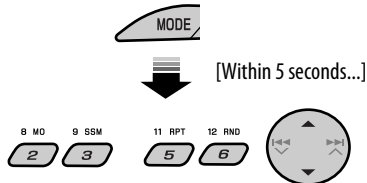
How to forcibly eject a disc



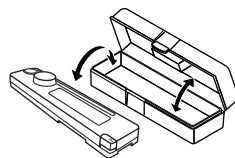
- If this does not work, reset your unit.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

How to use functions mode

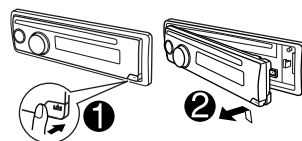
If you press MODE, the unit goes into functions mode, then the number buttons and ▲/▼ buttons work as different function buttons.



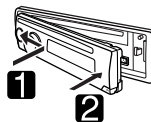
How to detach/attach the control panel



Detaching...



Attaching...



WARNINGS:
To prevent accidents and damage

- **DO NOT** install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate the unit while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.

If the parking brake is not engaged, “DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING.” appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.

 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.





Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

<i>Introduction</i>	4
■ OPERATIONS	
<i>Basic operations</i>	
• <i>Control panel</i>	6
• <i>Remote controller (RM-RK230)</i>	7
<i>Listening to the radio</i>	9
<i>Disc operations</i>	10
■ EXTERNAL DEVICES	
<i>Listening to the CD changer</i>	16
<i>Listening to the iPod®/D. player</i>	17
<i>Listening to the other external components</i>	18
■ SETTINGS	
<i>Selecting a preset sound mode—C-EQ</i>	19
<i>General settings—PSM</i>	20
<i>DVD setup menu</i>	21
<i>Assigning names to the stations</i>	24
<i>Maintenance</i>	25
<i>More about this unit</i>	26
<i>Troubleshooting</i>	29
<i>Specifications</i>	32

Introduction

Disc type	✓ OK Playable	✗ NO Unplayable
 DVD	DVD Video, Dual Disc (DVD side only), DVD-R*/-RW, +R/+RW • Recorded in DVD-Video format only and in PAL/NTSC color system	DVD Audio, Dual Disc (non-DVD side), DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM, DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW • Recorded in DVD-VR format
 VCD	Video CD CD-R/-RW	SVCD (Super Video CD)
 MP3/WMA	DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW, DVD-ROM • Compliant to UDF bridge format	—
	CD-R/-RW • Compliant to ISO 9660 level 1, ISO 9660 level 2, Romeo, Joliet	—
 CD	Audio CD, CD Text CD-R/-RW • Compliant to CD-DA format	CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD

• It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video mode only) discs. However, the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.

* DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).

Caution for DualDisc playback

The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Note on Region Code:

DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “4.”

Examples:

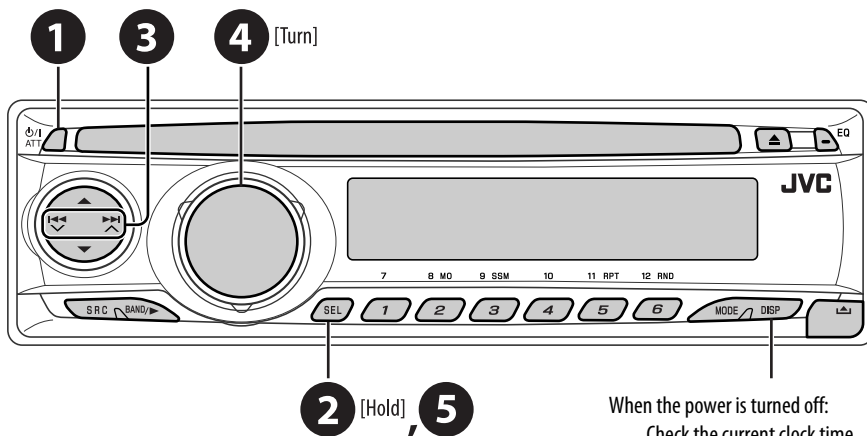


If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code

“REGION CODE ERROR!” appears on the monitor.

Before operating the unit — Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

- See also page 20.



When the power is turned off:
Check the current clock time
When the power is turned on:
Change the display information

- 1** Turn on the power.
- 2** Enter the PSM settings.
- 3** ⇒ **4** **Cancel the display demonstrations**
Select “DEMO,” then “DEMO OFF.”

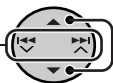
Set the clock

Select “CLOCK H” (hour), then adjust the hour.
Select “CLOCK M” (minute), then adjust the minute.

- 5** **Finish the procedure.**

Basic operations — Control panel

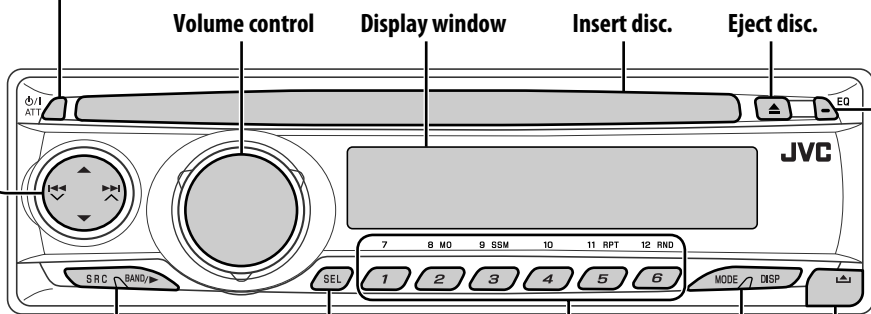
- **FM/AM:** Search for station.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/track.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Select track.



- **FM/AM:** Select preset station.
- **DISC:** Select folder.
Also functions as +10/-10 buttons after pressing MODE to skip 10 chapters/tracks at a time.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Enter the main menu/Pause or stop playback/Confirm selection.

- Turn on the power.
- Turn off the power [Hold].
- Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

Select the sound mode.



Adjust the sound mode.
Hold to enter the PSM settings.

Detach the panel.

- **FM/AM:** Select preset station.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/title/folder/track/disc (for CD changer).



Select the source.

FM/AM → **DISC*** → **CD-CH*/IPOD*/D.PLAYER*** (or **EXT IN**) → (back to the beginning)

* You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.



- **FM/AM:** Select the bands.
- **DISC:** Start playback.



Enter functions mode.

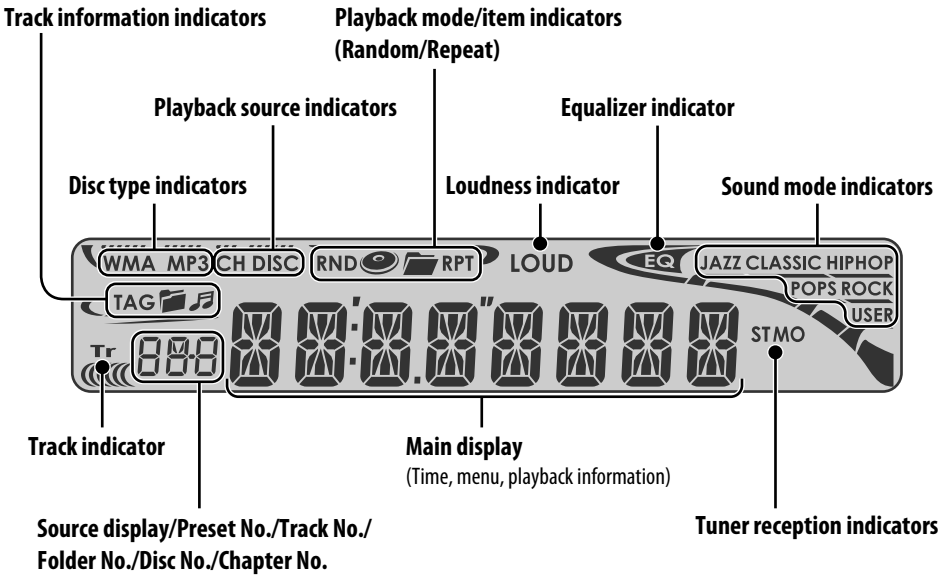
Press MODE, then one of the following buttons (within 5 seconds)...

- **MO:** Turn on/off monaural reception.
- **SSM:** Automatic station presetting.
- **RPT:** Select repeat play.
- **RND:** Select random play.



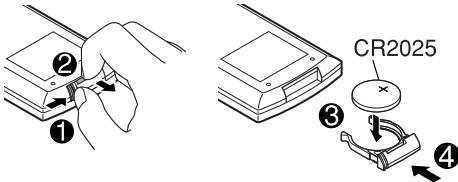
Change the display information.

Display window



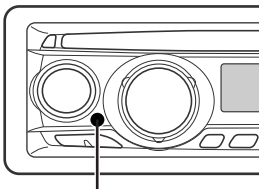
Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK230)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).

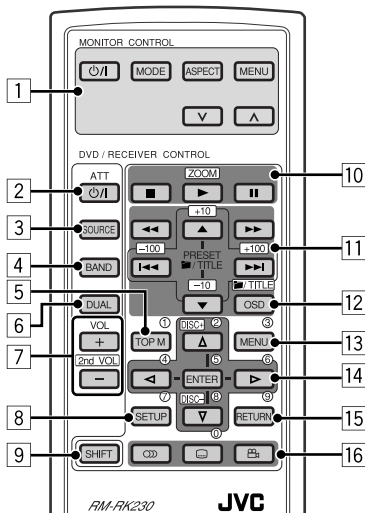


Remote sensor

Warning: To prevent accidents and damage

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Continued on the next page



MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons
- Used for a JVC monitor—KV-MR9010, KV-MH6510, KV-M706, or KV-M705.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 Turns on/off the power.
- Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- 3 Selects the source.
- 4 Selects the FM/AM bands.
- 5*1
- DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 6 Not applicable for this unit.
- 7 Adjusts the volume level.
- 2nd VOL: Not applicable for this unit.
- 8*1 Enters DVD setup menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10
- (stop), ► (play), || (pause)
 - (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button (see page 12).
 - Not applicable for CD changer/iPod/D. player operations.
- 11*2 **For advanced disc operations:**
- /TITLE ▲ / ▼
DVD: Selects the titles.
MP3/WMA: Selects the folders if included.
 - ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse skip/forward skip.
 - ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse search/forward search (not applicable for CD changer operations).

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- PRESET ▲ / ▼
Changes the preset stations.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶
– Searches for the stations if pressed briefly.
– Manual searches if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
▲: Enters the main menu.
(Now ▲/▼/◀◀ / ▶▶ work as the menu selecting buttons.)*3
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (in menu selecting mode)
– Selects an item if pressed briefly. (Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
– Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.

- 12
- Shows the on-screen bar.
 - Also function as the ■/TITLE button when pressed with SHIFT button (see pages 12 and 13).
- 13*1
- DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 14*1
- Makes selection/settings.
 - DISC +/- buttons: Changes discs when the source is “CD-CH.”
- 15*1 RETURN button
- 16
- DVD: Selects audio language (○○○), subtitles (□□□), angle (□□□).
 - VCD: Selects audio channel (○○○).

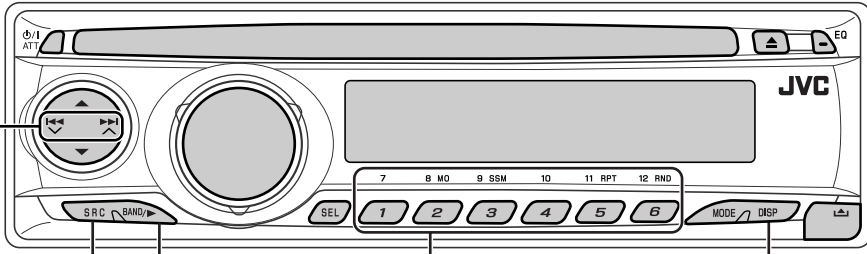
*1 Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

- FM/AM: Selects preset stations.
- DISC: Selects chapter/title/folder/track.

*2 Functions as +10/-10/+100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

*3 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
▼: Confirms the selection.

Listening to the radio



3

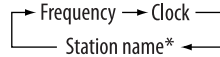
1

2

Select preset station.

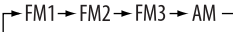
Change the display information

* If no name is assigned to a station, "NO NAME" appears. To assign a name, see page 24.



1 Select "FM/AM."

2 Select the bands.



3 Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.

- Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.

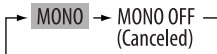


Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2



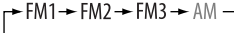
Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

- MO indicator lights up.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset six stations for each band.

1



2

3 [Hold]

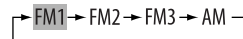


Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

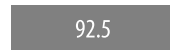
Manual presetting

Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

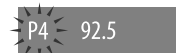
1



2



3 [Hold]



Disc operations

Before performing any operations...

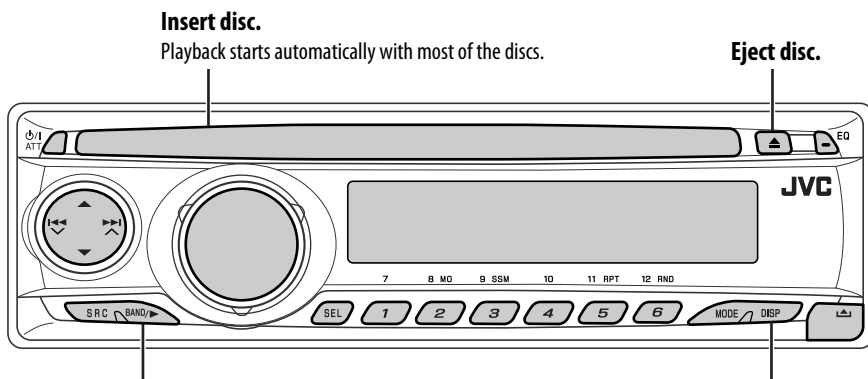
Turn on the monitor for playing a DVD or VCD. If you turn on the monitor, you can also control playback of other discs by referring to the monitor screen. (See pages 13 – 15.)

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc does not have any disc menu (when playback stops), all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If “⊘” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing “⊘,” operations will not be accepted.



Start playback if necessary.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

*1 If the file does not have Tag information or “TAG DISP” is set to “TAG OFF” (see page 20), folder name and file name appear. TAG indicator will not light up.

*2 “NO NAME” appears for an audio CD.

Change the display information



Elapsed playing time → Clock → Current title and chapter number



Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number










Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number
Track title ← Album name/performer ← (file name*1) (folder name*1)




Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number
Track title*2 ← Disc title/performer*2








Operations using the control panel

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

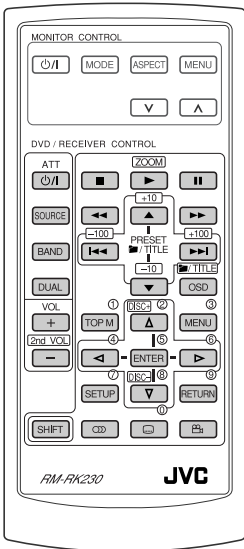
Disc type			 (Number buttons)
 DVD	Press: Select chapter Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter*	—	During stop: Locate title During play/pause: Locate chapter
 VCD	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Select track	Select folder	Locate particular folder directly
 CD	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly

* Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Leftrightarrow \times 10$ on the monitor.

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

Disc type			
 DVD	Skip 10 chapters (during play or pause)	CHP RPT: Repeat current chapter TIT RPT: Repeat current title	—
 VCD	Skip 10 tracks (PBC not in use)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track (PBC not in use)	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Skip 10 tracks (within the same folder)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: Repeat current folder	FLDR RND: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks
 CD	Skip 10 tracks	TRK RPT: Repeat current track	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks

• To cancel repeat play or random play, select “RPT OFF” or “RND OFF.”



- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play (10-second review if pressed during play.)
- : Reverse/forward chapter search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
- : *Press*: Select chapter (during play or pause)
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter search
- : Select title
- : Select audio language
- : Select subtitle language
- : Select view angle



Using menu driven features...

- 1 TOP M / MENU
- 2 Select an item you want to start play.
- 3 ENTER

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.
 - 2 Move the enlarged portion.
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."

While holding ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select chapter (during play or pause)
- TITLE : Select title (when stop)
- OSD, then ①...⑨ : Select title directly

- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
 - Reverse slow motion does not work.
- : *Press*: Select track
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search
- : Select audio channel (ST: stereo, L: left, R: Right)



While holding ...*3

- ①...⑨ : Select track (For VCD with PBC, a list of items is shown on the disc menu.)
 - To return to the previous menus, press .

Canceling the PBC playback...

- 1
- 2 While holding , press ①...⑨ to start the desired track.
 - To resume PBC, press .

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding , press repeatedly.
 - 2 Move the enlarged portion.
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."

MP3/WMA

- : Stop play
- : Pause
- : Start play (Playback starts from the beginning of the track.)
- : Select track
- : Select folder

While holding ...*3

- ... : Select track (within the same folder)
- : Select folder directly*4
- , then ... : Select folder directly*4

CD

- : Stop play
- : Pause
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search
- : Press: Select tracks
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search

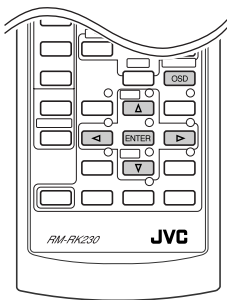
While holding ...*3

- ... : Select track directly

- *1 Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Rightarrow \times 5 \Rightarrow \times 10 \Rightarrow \times 20 \Rightarrow \times 60$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.
- *2 Slow motion speed changes to $\text{▶1/32} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/16} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/8} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/4} \Rightarrow \text{▶1/2}$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.
- *3 For selecting numbers greater than 9 or 99, press +10 or +100 , then follow by ①...⑨ .
- *4 To use direct folder access on MP3/WMA discs, it is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Show the on-screen bar (see page 14).

(once) for MP3/WMA/CD
(twice) for DVD/VCD

2 Select an item.

3 Make a selection.

If pop-up menu appears...

- For entering time/numbers, see the following.

4 Remove the on-screen bar.

Entering time/numbers

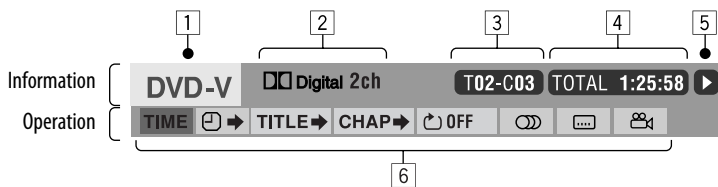
- To select numbers 0 – 9:
While holding , press
- To select numbers greater than 9:
While holding , press +10 . Then, press
- After entering the numbers, press .
- To reduce numbers, use -10 .
- To correct a misentry, use ◀ .

Ex.: Time search

- DVD: $_:_:_$
To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
- VCD (PBC not in use): $_:_:_$
To enter 64 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 6, 4, 0, then 0.

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar



- 1 Disc type
- 2 DVD/DTS audio CD: Audio signal format type
VCD: PBC
- 3 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
TRACK 01 Current track
- 4 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD, elapsed playing time of the current title.)
T. REM DVD: Remaining title time
VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track
- 5 Playback status
 Play
 Forward/reverse search
 Forward/reverse slow-motion
 Pause
 Stop
- 6 Operation icons
TIME Change the time indication (see 4)
 Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE Title Search (by its number)
CHAP Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK Track Search (by its number)
 Change the audio language or audio channel
 Change the subtitle language
 Change the view angle
 DVD: Repeat play
REPEAT VCD/MP3/WMA/CD: Repeat play
INTRO Intro play
RANDOM Random play



Repeat play*1 :



(PBC not in use)

Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :

MP3/WMA



Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :



Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :

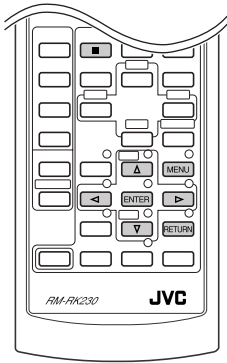
*1 For repeat play/random play, see also page 11.

*2 Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...

INTRO TRACK (INTRO): All tracks of the current disc.

INTRO FOLDER: First tracks of all folders of the current disc.

Operations using the control/list screen (MP3/WMA/CD)



These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

- Folder selection/information is only for MP3/WMA discs.

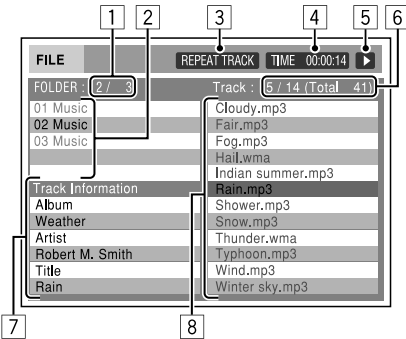
Control screen

The control screen automatically appears when you insert a disc.

- 1 Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- 2 Select a folder or track to start playback.



Ex.: MP3/WMA disc

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Folder list with the current folder selected
- 3 Selected playback mode
- 4 Elapsed playing time of the current track
- 5 Operation mode icon (▶, ■, II, ►►, ◀◀)
- 6 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
- 7 Track information
- 8 Track list with the current track selected

Folder/track list screen

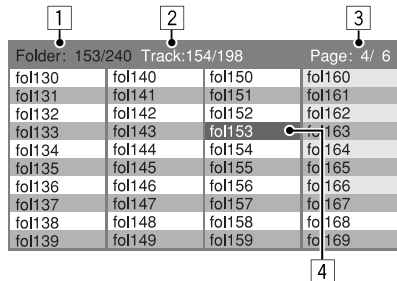
Before playing, you can display the folder list/track list to confirm the contents and start playing a track.

- 1 Display the folder/track list while stop.



- 2 Select an item from the list.

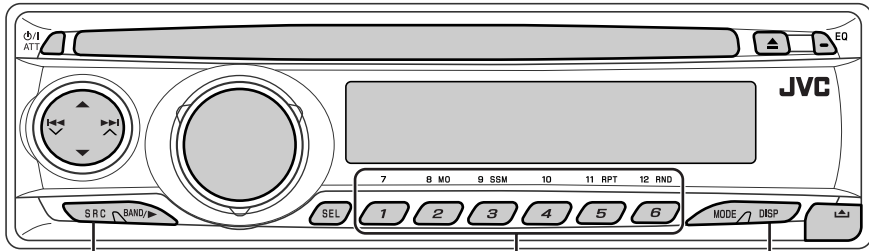
- MP3/WMA: Track list of the selected folder appears.
- To go back to the previous screen, press RETURN.



Ex.: Folder list

- 1 Current folder number/total folder number
- 2 Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder or in disc (CD)
- 3 Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- 4 Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

Listening to the CD changer



1

2

Change the display information
(see page 10)

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can only play conventional CD (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

1 Select "CD-CH."

2 Select a disc to start playing.

Press: For selecting disc number 1 – 6.

Hold: For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

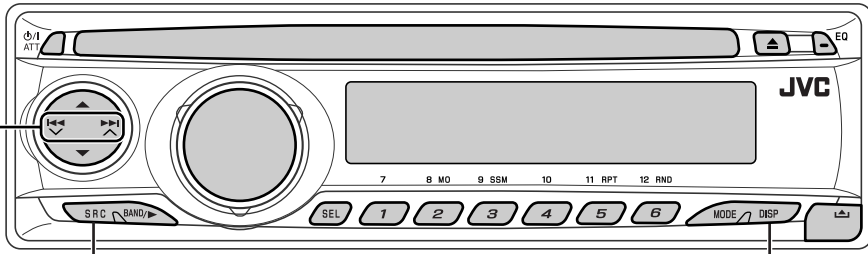
	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track
	MP3: Select folders

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

	Skip 10 tracks (MP3: within the same folder)
11 RPT 	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder DISC RPT: Repeat all tracks of the current disc
12 RND 	FLDR RND: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks of current disc MAG RND: Randomly play all tracks of the inserted discs

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

Listening to the iPod®/D. player



Change the display information

Before operating, connect the interface adapter (KS-PD100 or KS-PD500) to the CD changer jack of this unit.

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- Holding ∇ \lll / \ggg \blacktriangle can skip 10 items at a time.

Preparations:

Make sure "CHANGER" is selected for the external input setting, see page 20.

- 1 Select "IPOD" or "D. PLAYER."
- 2 Select a song to start playing.

Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu.



- This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.

- 2 Select the desired menu.



For iPod:

PLAYLIST \leftrightarrow ARTISTS \leftrightarrow ALBUMS \leftrightarrow SONGS
 \leftrightarrow GENRES \leftrightarrow COMPOSER \leftrightarrow (back to the beginning)

For D. player:

PLAYLIST \leftrightarrow ARTIST \leftrightarrow ALBUM \leftrightarrow
 GENRE \leftrightarrow TRACK \leftrightarrow (back to the beginning)

- 3 Confirm the selection.



- To move back to the previous menu, press \blacktriangle .

	Pause/stop playback • To resume playback, press it again.
	Press: Select tracks Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track

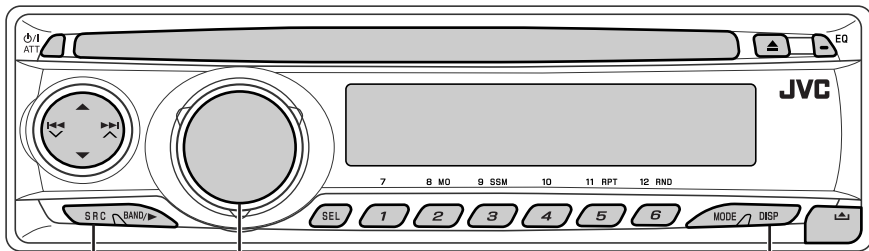
After pressing MODE , press the following buttons to...

11 RPT 	ONE RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat One" or "Repeat Mode \rightarrow One." ALL RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat All" or "Repeat Mode \rightarrow All."
12 RND 	ALBM RND*: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod. SONG RND/RND ON: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" or "Random Play \rightarrow On."

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

* iPod: Only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."

Listening to the other external components



1

3

Change the display information

You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

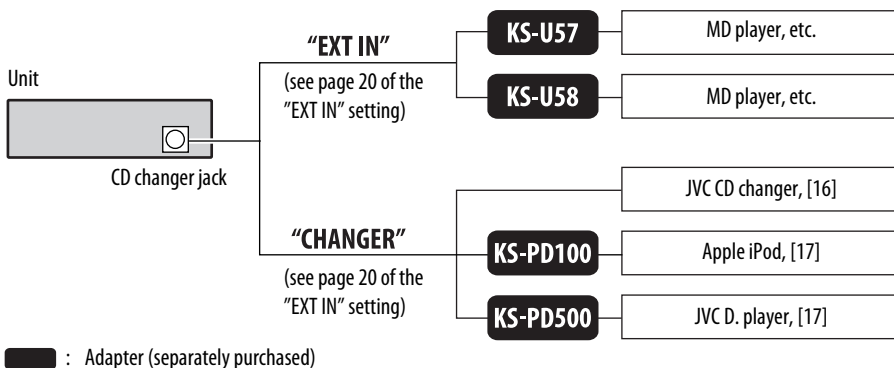
Preparations:

Make sure “EXT IN” is selected for the external input setting, see page 20.

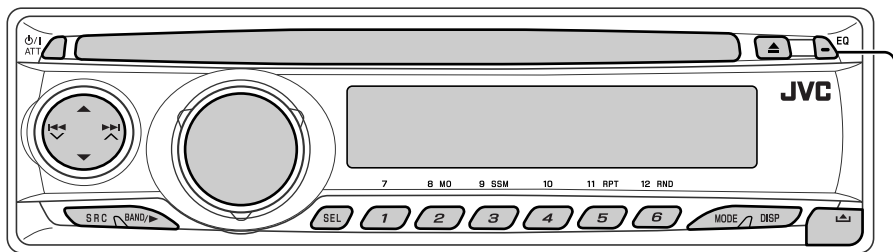
- 1** Select “EXT IN.”
- 2** Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.
- 3** Adjust the volume.
- 4** Adjust the sound as you want (see page 19).

Concept diagram of the external device connection

• For connection, see Installation/Connection manual (separate volume).



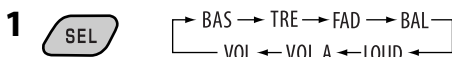
Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ



Indication (For)	BAS (bass)	TRE (treble)	LOUD (loudness)
USER (Flat sound)	00	00	OFF
ROCK (Rock or disco music)	+03	+01	ON
CLASSIC (Classical music)	+01	-02	OFF
POPS (Light music)	+04	+01	OFF
HIP HOP (Funk or rap music)	+02	00	ON
JAZZ (Jazz music)	+02	+03	OFF

BAS * ¹ (bass) Adjust the bass.	-06 to +06
TRE * ¹ (treble) Adjust the treble.	-06 to +06
FAD * ² (fader) Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 to F06
BAL (balance) Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 to R06
LOUD * ¹ (loudness) Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.	LOUD ON or LOUD OFF
VOL.A * ³ (volume adjust) Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level.	-05 to +05
VOL (volume) Adjust the volume.	00 to 30 (or 50)* ⁴

Adjusting the sound



2 Adjust the level.



*¹ When you adjust the bass, treble, or loudness, the adjustment you have made is stored for the currently selected sound mode (C-EQ) including “USER.”

*² If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to “00.”

*³ You cannot make an adjustment for FM. “FIX” appears.

*⁴ Depending on the amplifier gain control setting. (See page 21 for details.)

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM settings.



2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.



4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.


5 Finish the procedure.



Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
DEMO Display demonstration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DEMO ON [Initial] • DEMO OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [5]. : Cancels.
CLOCK H Hour adjustment	1 – 12 [Initial: 1 (1:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLOCK M Minute adjustment	00 – 59 [Initial: 00 (1:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
DIMMER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Dims the display illumination. : Cancels.
SCROLL * ¹	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ONCE [Initial] • AUTO • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
EXT IN * ² External input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHANGER [Initial] • EXT IN 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : To use a JVC CD changer, [16], or an Apple iPod/a JVC D. player, [17]. : To use any other external component than the above, [18].
TAG DISP Tag display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TAG ON [Initial] • TAG OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
NTSC/PAL Video format	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PAL [Initial] • NTSC 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Select this if your monitor is of the PAL color system. : Select this if your monitor is of the NTSC color system.

*¹ Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.

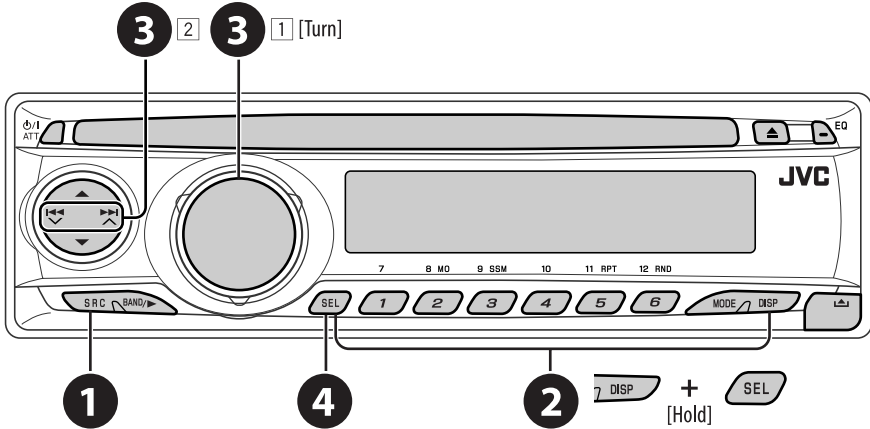
*² Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, or DISC.

Menu	Item	Setting
LANGUAGE	MENU LANGUAGE	Select the initial disc menu language. Refer also to “Language codes” on page 23.
	AUDIO LANGUAGE	Select the initial audio language. Refer also to “Language codes” on page 23.
	SUBTITLE	Select the initial subtitle language or remove the subtitle (OFF). Refer also to “Language codes” on page 23.
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select the language for the on screen display.
PICTURE	MONITOR TYPE	<p>Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor.</p> <p>16:9 4:3 LETTER BOX 4:3 PAN SCAN</p> 
	OSD POSITION	<p>Select the on-screen bar position on the monitor.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Higher position • 2: Lower position (Guidance below the DVD setup menu will disappear.)
AUDIO	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	<p>Select the signal format to be emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (Optical) terminal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PCM ONLY: Select for an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio, or connecting to a recording device. • DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. • STREAM/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio.
	DOWN MIX	<p>When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks (and through the DIGITAL OUT terminal when “PCM ONLY” is selected for “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT”).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DOLBY SURROUND: Select to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. • STEREO: Normally select this.
	D. RANGE COMPRESSION	<p>You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software). • ON: Select to always use this function.

Language codes

Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	FA	Persian	KL	Greenlandic	OC	Occitan	ST	Sesotho
AB	Abkhazian	FI	Finnish	KM	Cambodian	OM	(Afan) Oromo	SU	Sundanese
AF	Afrikaans	FJ	Fiji	KN	Kannada	OR	Oriya	SW	Swahili
AM	Ameharic	FO	Faroese	KO	Korean (KOR)	PA	Panjabi	TA	Tamil
AR	Arabic	FY	Frisian	KS	Kashmiri	PL	Polish	TE	Telugu
AS	Assamese	GA	Irish	KU	Kurdish	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TG	Tajik
AY	Aymara	GD	Scots Gaelic	KY	Kirghiz	PT	Portuguese	TH	Thai
AZ	Azerbaijani	GL	Galician	LA	Latin	QU	Quechua	TI	Tigrinya
BA	Bashkir	GN	Guarani	LN	Lingala	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TK	Turkmen
BE	Byelorussian	GU	Gujarati	LO	Laothian	RN	Kirundi	TL	Tagalog
BG	Bulgarian	HA	Hausa	LT	Lithuanian	RO	Rumanian	TN	Setswana
BH	Bihari	HI	Hindi	LV	Latvian, Lettish	RW	Kinyarwanda	TO	Tonga
BI	Bislama	HR	Croatian	MG	Malagasy	SA	Sanskrit	TR	Turkish
BN	Bengali, Bangla	HU	Hungarian	MI	Maori	SD	Sindhi	TS	Tsonga
BO	Tibetan	HY	Armenian	MK	Macedonian	SG	Sangho	TT	Tatar
BR	Breton	IA	Interlingua	ML	Malayalam	SH	Serbo-Croatian	TW	Twi
CA	Catalan	IE	Interlingue	MN	Mongolian	SI	Singhalese	UK	Ukrainian
CO	Corsican	IK	Inupiak	MO	Moldavian	SK	Slovak	UR	Urdu
CS	Czech	IN	Indonesian	MR	Marathi	SL	Slovenian	UZ	Uzbek
CY	Welsh	IS	Icelandic	MS	Malay (MAY)	SM	Samoan	VI	Vietnamese
DZ	Bhutani	IW	Hebrew	MT	Maltese	SN	Shona	VO	Volapuk
EL	Greek	JI	Yiddish	MY	Burmese	SO	Somali	WO	Wolof
EO	Esperanto	JW	Javanese	NA	Nauru	SQ	Albanian	XH	Xhosa
ET	Estonian	KA	Georgian	NE	Nepali	SR	Serbian	YO	Yoruba
EU	Basque	KK	Kazakh	NO	Norwegian	SS	Siswati	ZU	Zulu

Assigning names to the stations



You can assign names to 30 station frequencies (FM and AM) and up to 8 characters for each station name.

- 1 Select "FM/AM."
- 2 Show the title entry screen.
- 3 Assign a title.
 - 1 Select a character.
 - 2 Move to the next (or previous) character position.
 - 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you finish entering the title.
- 4 Finish the procedure.

To erase the entire title

In step 2 above...



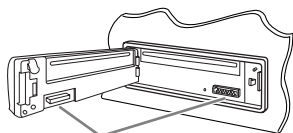
Available characters

A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N
O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1
2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	-	/	<	>	space	

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.
To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
- If it becomes very humid inside the car.

Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

Center holder



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:



More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

FM/AM

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing stations, the previously preset stations are erased and stations are stored newly.

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3/WMA files and their file names.
- This unit can also playback 8 cm discs.
- This unit can only playback audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- This unit can recognize a total of 3 500 files (250 folder per disc; 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for the files.
- This unit may be unable to play back some discs or files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 64 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate). Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATAC3, etc.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play starts from where it has been stopped previously.
For MP3/WMA disc, playback starts from the beginning of the last playing track.

iPod® or D. player

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.
- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 8 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 20). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

Title assignment

- If you try to assign titles to more than 30 station frequencies, “NAMEFULL” appears. Delete unwanted titles before assignment.

General settings—PSM

- If you change the “AMP GAIN” setting from “HIGH PWR” to “LOW PWR” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30.”


DVD setup menu


- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PAN SCAN” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LETTER BOX” for some DVDs.


On-screen guide icons

During playback, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

DVD: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing:

 : Multi-subtitle languages

 : Multi-audio languages


 : Multi-angle views

 : Playback

 : Pause

 : DVD/VCD: Forward slow motion

 : DVD: Reverse slow motion

 : Forward search

 : Reverse search

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

• **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):** 2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 22.)

• **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):** Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see table below.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” correctly. (See page 22.)

Output signals through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Output signals are different depending on the “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” setting on the setup menu (see page 22).

DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Output Signals		
	STREAM/PCM	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	PCM ONLY
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
	96 kHz, Linear PCM		
	with DTS	DTS bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
	with Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital bitstream	
		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
with MPEG Audio	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM	
Audio CD, Video CD	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM/48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
Audio CD with DTS	DTS bitstream	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
MP3/WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
FM/AM	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the antenna firmly.
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	• Unlock the disc (see page 10). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped.	• Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc cannot be recognized.	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	• Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• No playback picture (DVD/VCD) appears on the monitor.	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. (See Installation/Connection Manual.)
	• No picture appears on the monitor at all.	• Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
	• The monitor shows black and white wavy pictures (DVD/VCD).	Use a disc recorded in NTSC color system and change the video format to NTSC (see page 20).
	• The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the monitor.	Select "4:3 LETTER BOX" (see page 22).

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the disc. • Record tracks using a compliant application in the appropriate discs (see page 4). • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3/WMA tracks.)
	• Longer readout time is required.	Readout time varies due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration. Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks cannot playback as you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• “NO FILES” appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains tracks of appropriate formats.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), numbers, and a limited number of symbols.
CD changer	• “NO DISC” appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• “NO MAG” appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• “RESET 8” appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• “RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
iPod/D. player playback	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Check the connecting cable and its connection. Change the battery. Update the firmware version.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Buttons do not work as intended. 	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press MODE before performing the operation.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The sound is distorted. 	Deactivate the equalizer either on this unit or the iPod/D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "NO IPOD" or "NO DP" appears on the display. 	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Playback stops. 	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 17).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano. 	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> No sound can be heard. "ERROR 01" appears on the display when connecting a D. player. 	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "NO FILES" or "NO TRACK" appears on the display. 	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "RESET 1" – "RESET 7" appears on the display. 	Disconnect the adapter from both this unit and iPod/D. player. Then, connect it again.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> "RESET 8" appears on the display. 	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> The iPod's or D. player's controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit. 	Reset the iPod or D. player.	

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω , 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass/Treble:	± 10 dB at 100 Hz/ ± 10 dB at 10 kHz
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical):	Signal wave length: 660 nm Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm
		Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.0 V/20 k Ω load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 k Ω
	Color System:		PAL/NTSC
	Video Output (composite):		1 V _{p-p} /75 Ω
Other Terminal:		CD changer	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		AM:	531 kHz to 1 602 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μ V/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μ V/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	AM Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μ V/35 dB

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)		
	Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)		
	Frequency Response:	DVD, $f_s=48$ kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz	
		DVD, $f_s=96$ kHz:	16 Hz to 44 000 Hz	
		VCD/CD/MP3/WMA:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz	
	Dynamic Range:	96 dB		
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB		
	Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit		
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps	
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz	
WMA:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 192 kbps		
	Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz		
		MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz		

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)	
	Grounding System:	Negative ground		
	Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C		
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm	
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm	
	Mass (approx.):	1.6 kg (excluding accessories)		

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS 2.0 + Digital Out” are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.



Having TROUBLE with operation?

Please reset your unit

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

JVC



EN

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

1205DTSMdTJEIN

JVC KD-DV4206/KD-DV4205

Installation/Connection Manual

GET0369-009A
[A]

1205DTSMDTJEIN
EN

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC car audio dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent accidents and damage:

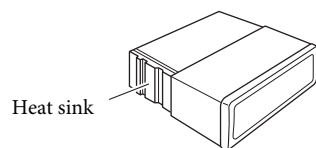
- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where;**
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT operate the unit while driving.**
- **If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
- **If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

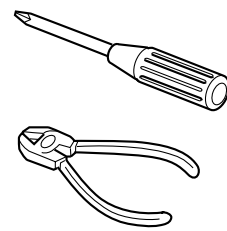
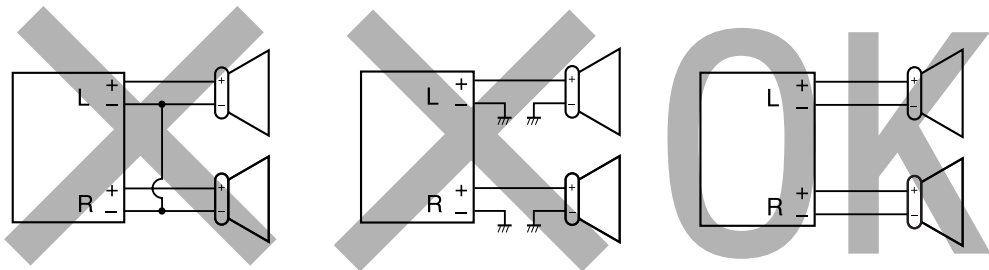
Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC car audio dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 21 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.



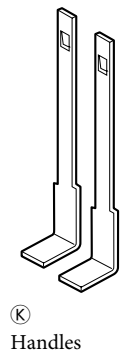
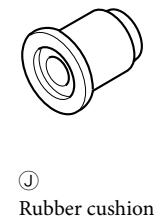
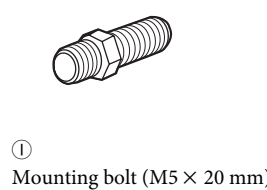
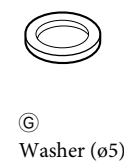
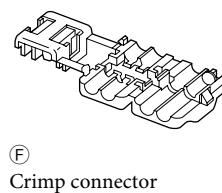
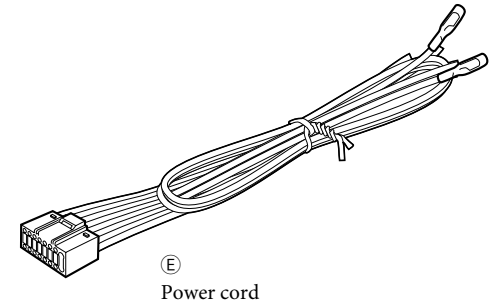
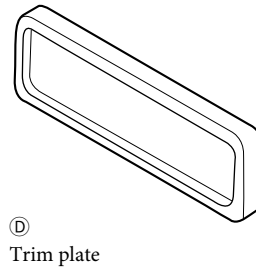
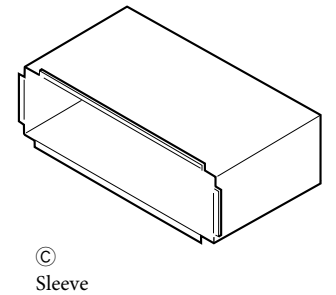
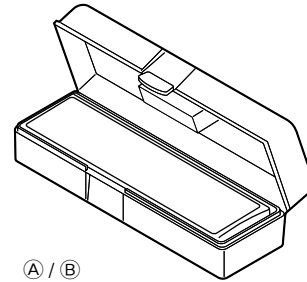
PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.



Parts list for installation and connection

The following parts are provided for this unit. If any item is missing, consult your JVC car audio dealer immediately.



About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

• Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):

2-channel signal is emitted.

When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

• Through DIGITAL OUT (optional):

Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 28 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" correctly. (See page 22 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

*1 Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" and "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

TROUBLESHOOTING

• The fuse blows.

- * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

• Power cannot be turned on.

- * Is the yellow lead connected?

• No sound from the speakers.

- * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

• Sound is distorted.

- * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
- * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• Noise interfere with sounds.

- * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

• Unit becomes hot.

- * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
- * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

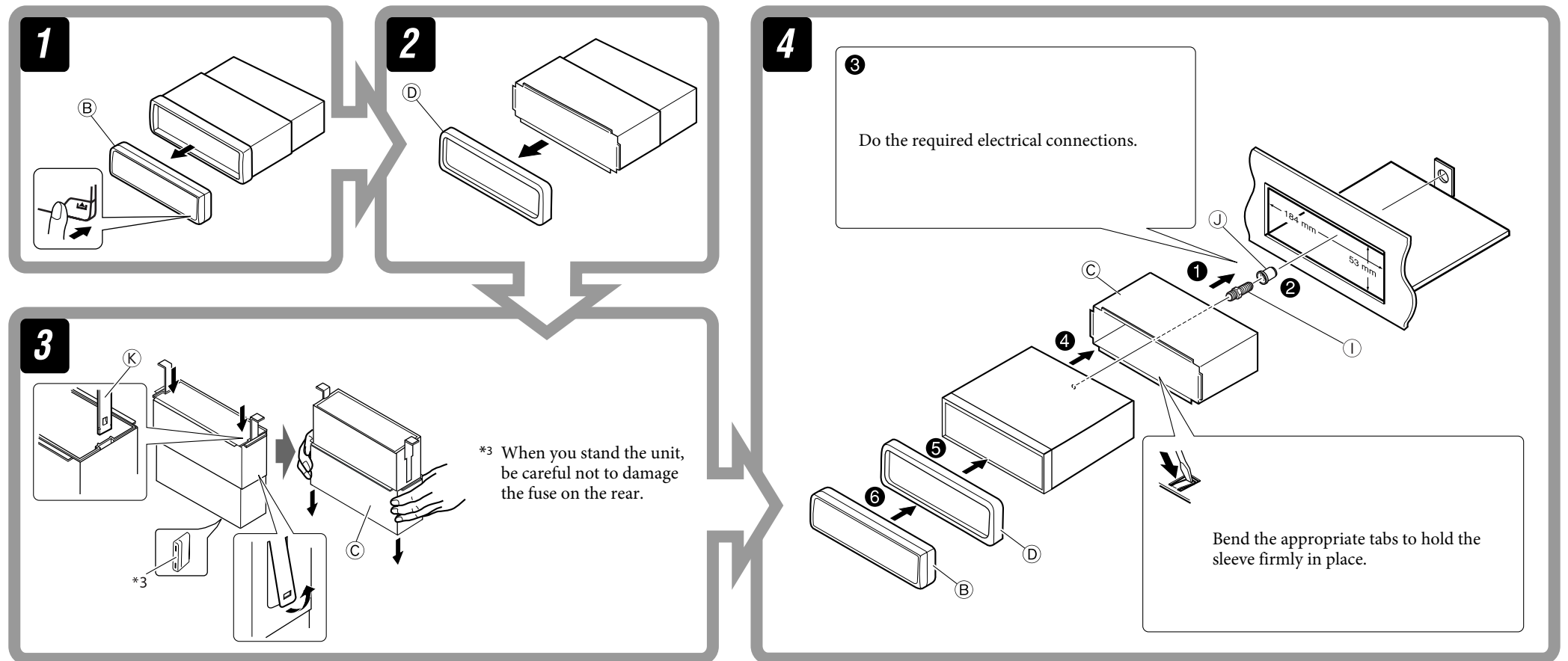
• This unit does not work at all.

- * Have you reset your unit?

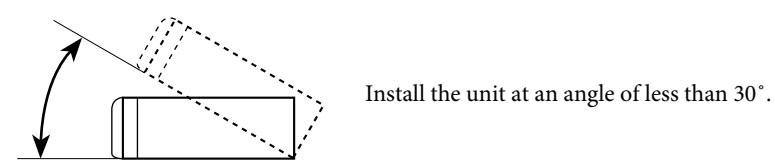
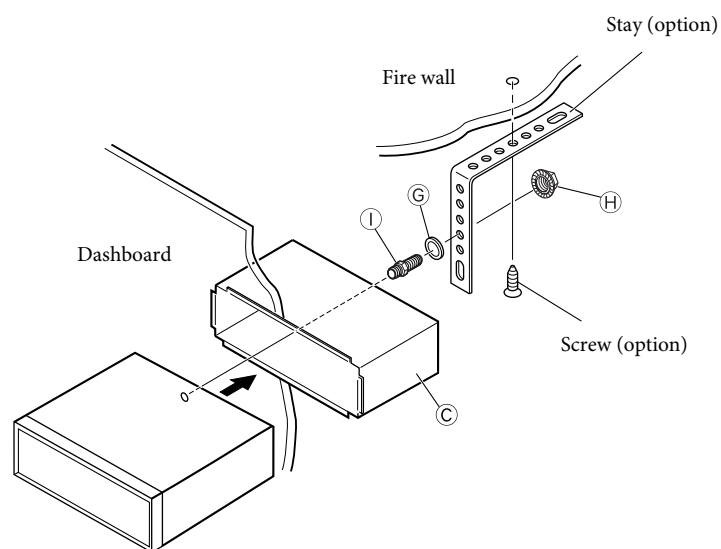
INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC car audio dealer or a company supplying kits.

- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.



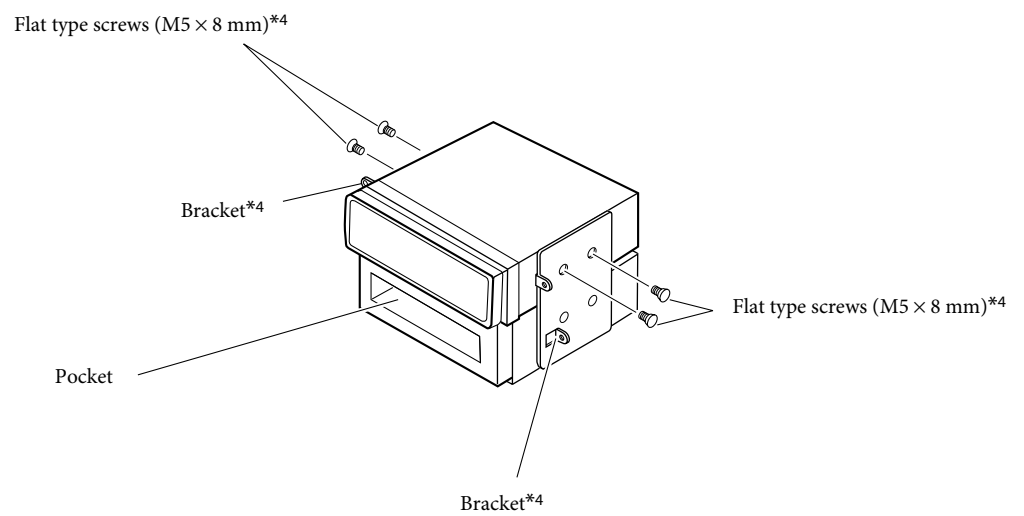
When using the optional stay



When installing the unit without using the sleeve

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place.

*4 Not supplied for this unit.

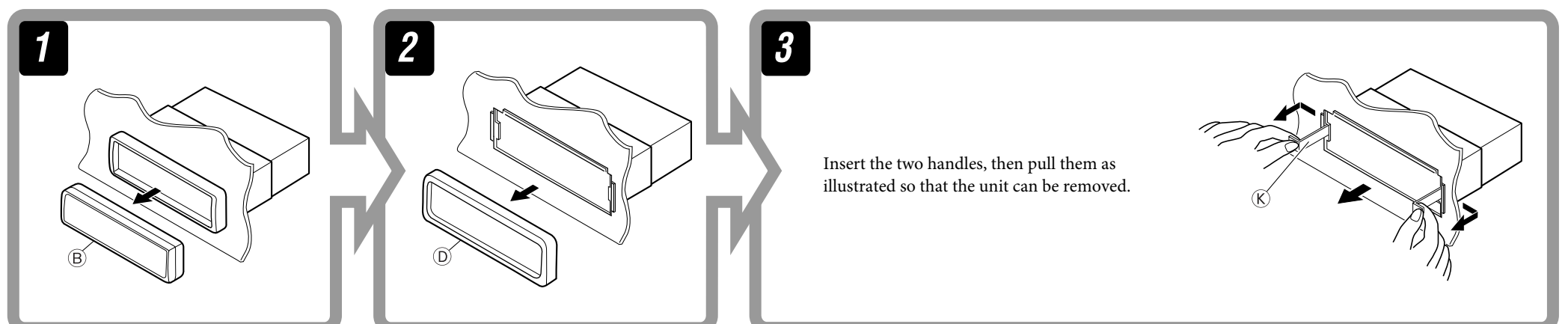


Note

: When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.

Removing the unit

Before removing the unit, release the rear section.

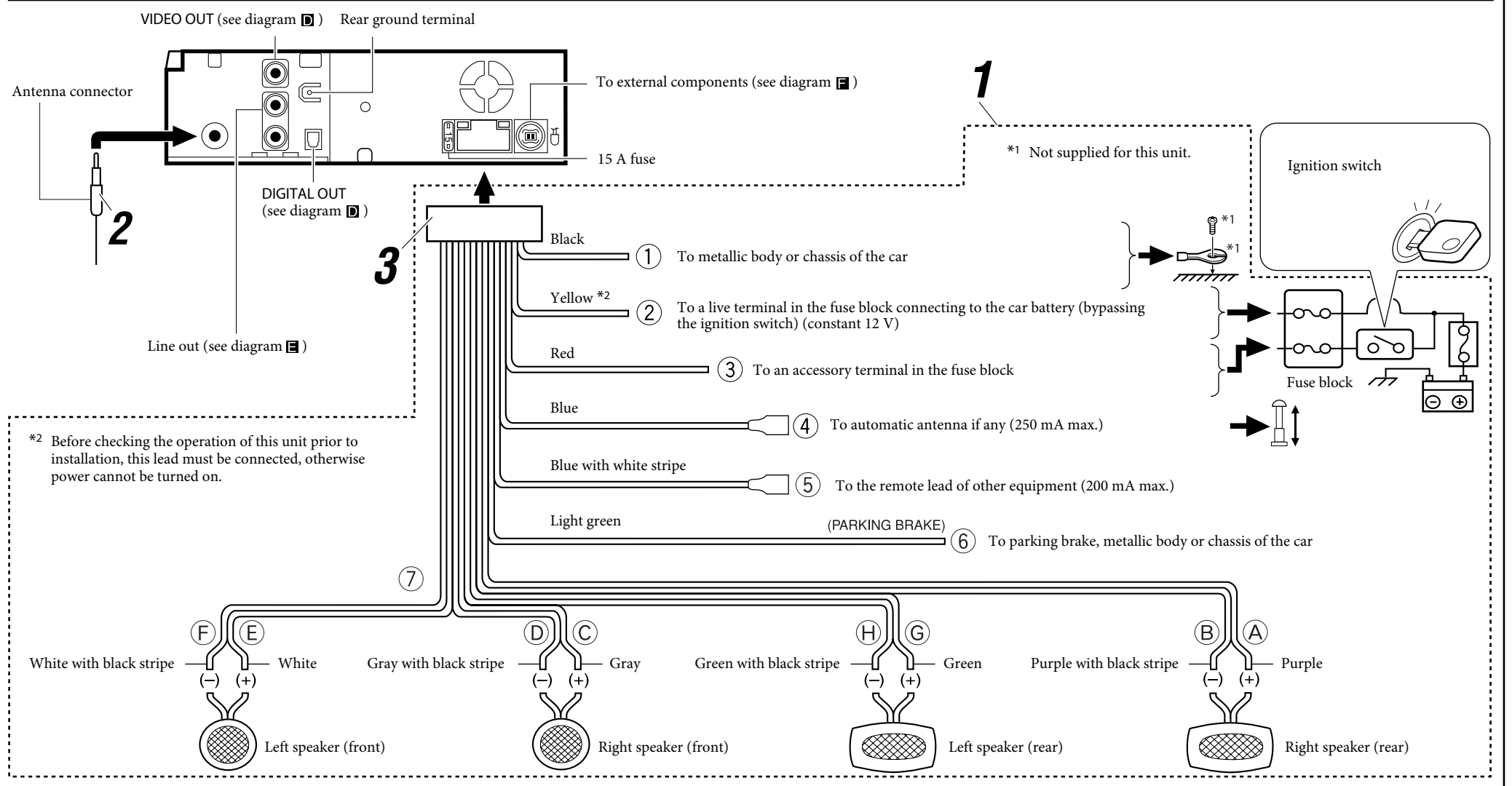


ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A Typical connections

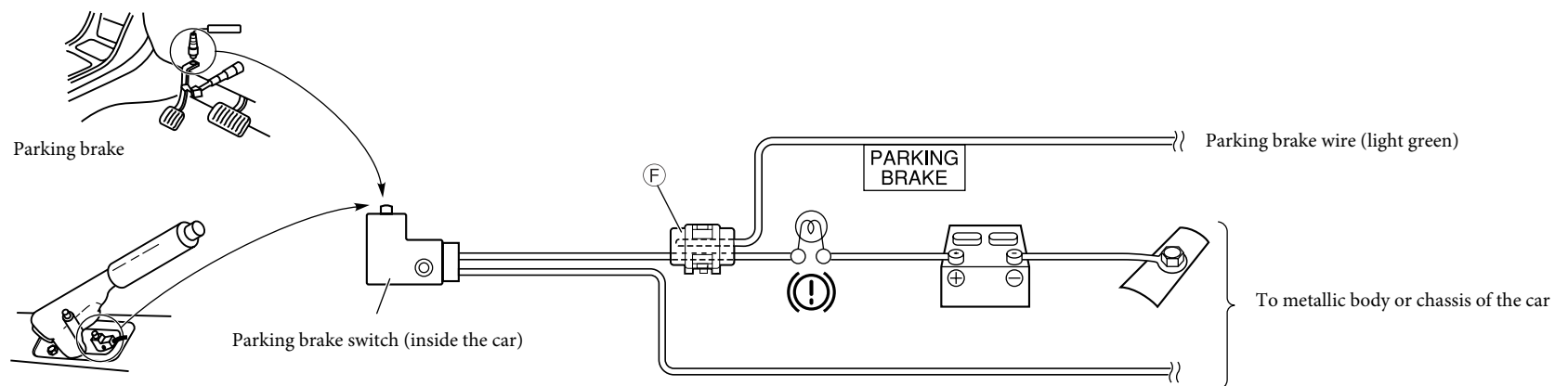
Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.
The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

- 1 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 2 Connect the antenna cord.
- 3 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.



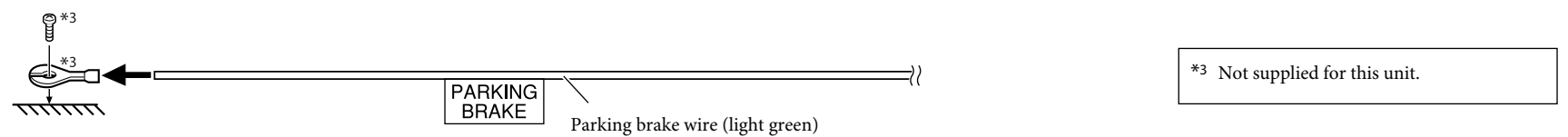
B Connecting the parking brake wire

When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver



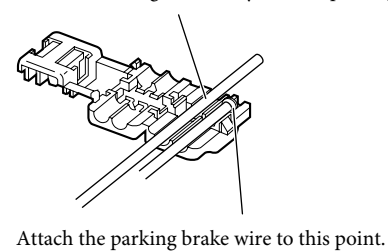
When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver

Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis of the car.

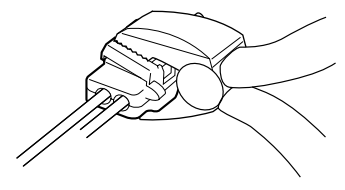
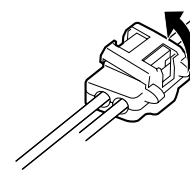
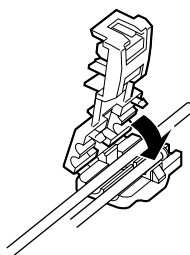


C Connecting the crimp connector

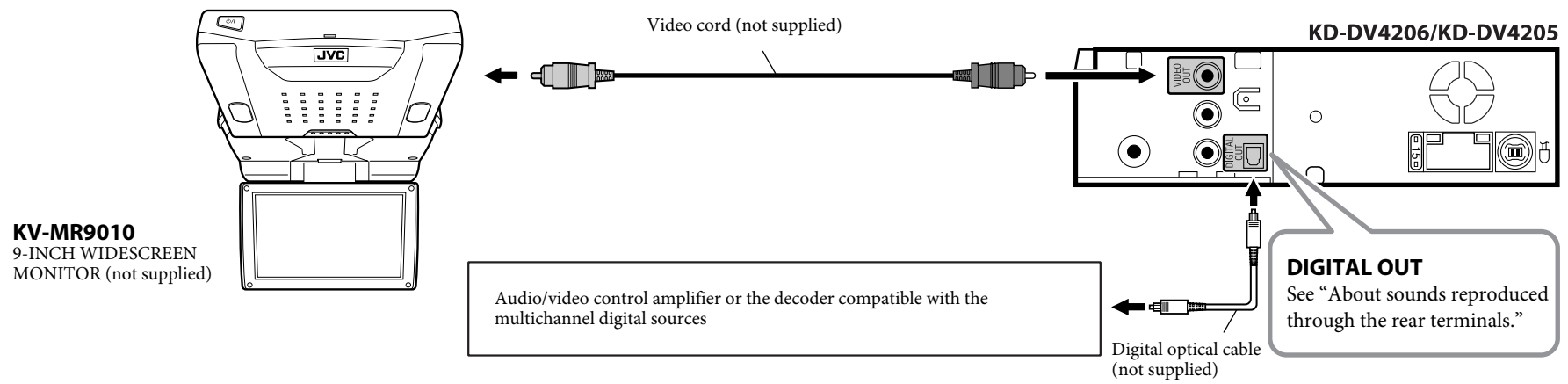
Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.



Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.



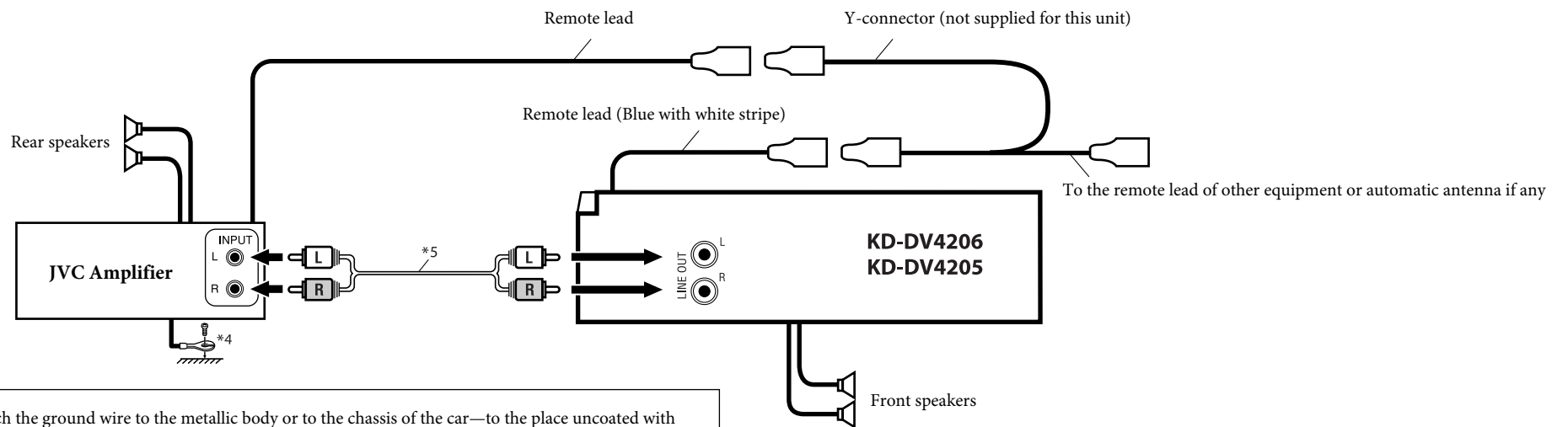
D Required connections for DVD playback



E Connecting the external amplifier

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**



*4 Firmly attach the ground wire to the metallic body or to the chassis of the car—to the place uncoated with paint (if coated with paint, remove the paint before attaching the wire). Failure to do so may cause damage to the unit.

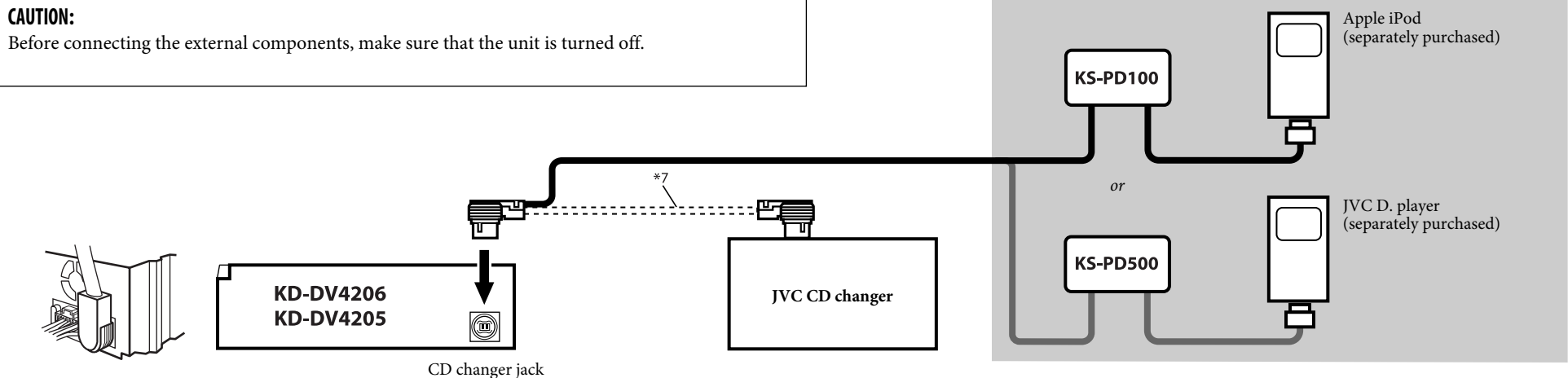
*5 Signal cord (not supplied for this unit)

F Connecting the external components

CD changer, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player

- Set "CHANGER" for the external input setting (See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

You can connect these components as illustrated below. The iPod*6 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

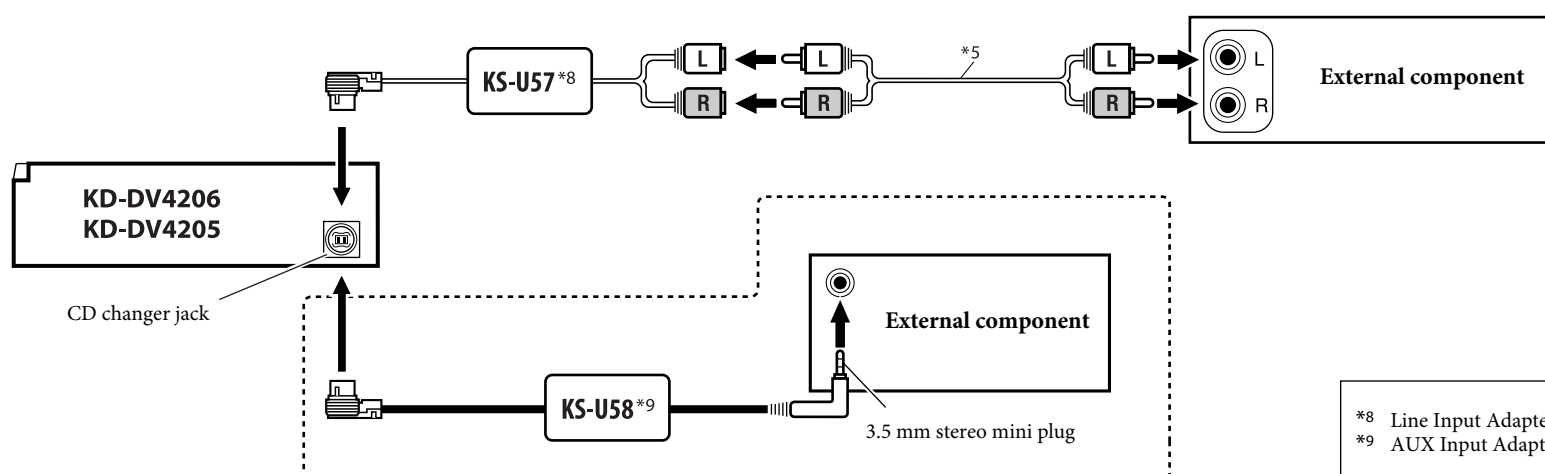


*6 iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.

*7 Connecting cord supplied for your CD changer

Other external component

- Set "EXT IN" for the external input setting (See page 20 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)



*8 Line Input Adapter KS-U57 (not supplied for this unit)

*9 AUX Input Adapter KS-U58 (not supplied for this unit)

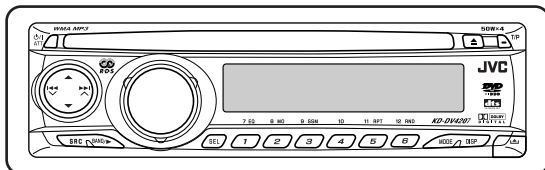
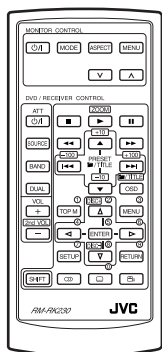
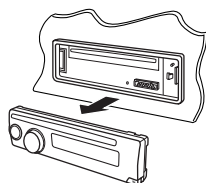
JVC



DVD/CD RECEIVER

ПРИЕМНИК ДЛЯ ВОСПРОИЗВЕДЕНИЯ ДИСКОВ DVD И КОМПАКТ-ДИСКОВ

KD-DV4207



ENGLISH

РУССКИЙ

В соответствии с Законом Российской Федерации "О защите прав потребителей" срок службы (годности) данного товара "по истечении которого он может представлять опасность для жизни, здоровья потребителя, причинять вред его имуществу или окружающей среде" составляет семь (7) лет со дня производства. Этот срок является временем, в течение которого потребитель данного товара может безопасно им пользоваться при условии соблюдения инструкции по эксплуатации данного товара, проводя необходимое обслуживание, включающее замену расходных материалов и/или соответствующее ремонтное обеспечение в специализированном сервисном центре.

Дополнительные косметические материалы к данному товару, поставляемые вместе с ним, могут храниться в течение двух (2) лет со дня его производства.

Срок службы (годности), кроме срока хранения дополнительных косметических материалов, упомянутых в предыдущих двух пунктах, не затрагивает никаких других прав потребителя, в частности, гарантийного свидетельства JVC, которое он может получить в соответствии с законом о правах потребителя или других законов, связанных с ним.

For canceling the display demonstration, see page 5.

Информацию об отмене демонстрации функций дисплея см. на стр. 5.

For installation and connections, refer to the separate manual.

Указания по установке и выполнению соединений приводятся в отдельной инструкции.

INSTRUCTIONS ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ



GET0373-001A
[EE]

Thank you for purchasing a JVC product.

Please read all instructions carefully before operation, to ensure your complete understanding and to obtain the best possible performance from the unit.

IMPORTANT FOR LASER PRODUCTS

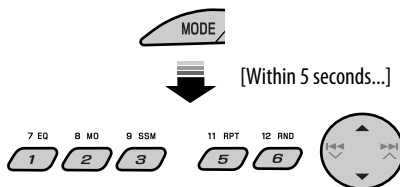
1. CLASS 1 LASER PRODUCT
2. **CAUTION:** Do not open the top cover. There are no user serviceable parts inside the unit; leave all servicing to qualified service personnel.
3. **CAUTION:** Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. Avoid direct exposure to beam.
4. REPRODUCTION OF LABEL: CAUTION LABEL, PLACED OUTSIDE THE UNIT.

CAUTION : Visible and invisible laser radiation when open and interlock failed or defeated. AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM. (e)	ADVARSEL : Synlig og usynlig laserstråling når maskinen er åben eller interlocken fejler. Undgå direkte eksponering til stråling. (d)	VARNING : Synlig och osynlig laserstråling när den öppnas och spärren är urkopplad. Beträkta ej strålen. (s)	VARO : Avattassa ja suojelehdus ohjeisturusta tai valitsena olet alittina näkyvä ja näkymättömälle lasersäteilylle. Vältä säteen kohdistumista suoraan itseesi. (f)
---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

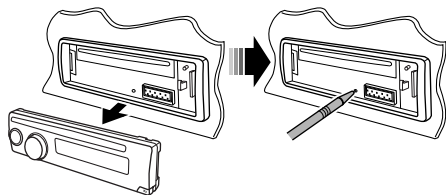
This product incorporates copyright protection technology that is protected by U.S. patents and other intellectual property rights. Use of this copyright protection technology must be authorized by Macrovision, and is intended for home and other limited viewing uses only unless otherwise authorized by Macrovision. Reverse engineering or disassembly is prohibited.

How to use functions mode

If you press MODE, the unit goes into functions mode, then the number buttons and ▲/▼ buttons work as different function buttons.



How to reset your unit



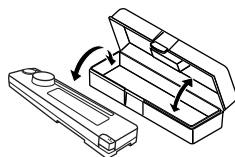
• Your preset adjustments will also be erased.

How to forcibly eject a disc

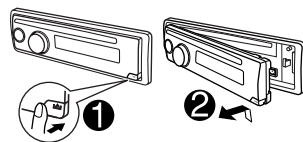


- If this does not work, reset your unit.
- Be careful not to drop the disc when it ejects.

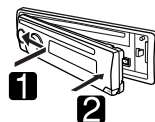
How to detach/attach the control panel



Detaching...



Attaching...



WARNINGS:

To prevent accidents and damage

- **DO NOT** install any unit in locations where;
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT** operate the unit while driving.
- If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.
- The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.
 If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car (refer to the Installation/Connection Manual).

For safety...

- Do not raise the volume level too much, as this will block outside sounds, making driving dangerous.
- Stop the car before performing any complicated operations.






Temperature inside the car...

If you have parked the car for a long time in hot or cold weather, wait until the temperature in the car becomes normal before operating the unit.

CONTENTS

<i>Introduction</i>	4
■ OPERATIONS	
<i>Basic operations</i>	
• <i>Control panel</i>	6
• <i>Remote controller (RM-RK230)</i>	7
<i>Listening to the radio</i>	9
<i>Searching for FM RDS programme</i>	
— <i>PTY search</i>	10
<i>Disc operations</i>	12
■ EXTERNAL DEVICES	
<i>Listening to the CD changer</i>	18
<i>Listening to the DAB tuner</i>	19
<i>Listening to the iPod®/D. player</i>	20
<i>Listening to the other external components</i>	21
■ SETTINGS	
<i>Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ</i>	22
<i>General settings — PSM</i>	23
<i>DVD setup menu</i>	25
<i>Maintenance</i>	28
<i>More about this unit</i>	29
<i>Troubleshooting</i>	31
<i>Specifications</i>	34

Introduction

Disc type	✓ OK Playable	✗ NO Unplayable
	DVD Video, Dual Disc (DVD side only), DVD-R*/-RW, +R/+RW • Recorded in DVD-Video format only and in PAL color system	DVD Audio, Dual Disc (non-DVD side), DVD-RAM, DVD-ROM, DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW • Recorded in DVD-VR format
	Video CD CD-R/-RW	SVCD (Super Video CD)
	DVD-R/-RW, +R/+RW, DVD-ROM • Compliant to UDF bridge format	—
	CD-R/-RW • Compliant to ISO 9660 level 1, ISO 9660 level 2, Romeo, Joliet	—
	Audio CD, CD Text CD-R/-RW • Compliant to CD-DA format	CD-ROM, CD-I (CD-I Ready), Photo CD

- It is possible to play back finalized +R/+RW (Video mode only) discs. However, the use of +R double layer disc on this unit is not recommended.
- * DVD-R recorded in multi-border format is also playable (except for dual layer discs).

Caution for DualDisc playback





The Non-DVD side of a “DualDisc” does not comply with the “Compact Disc Digital Audio” standard. Therefore, the use of Non-DVD side of a DualDisc on this product may not be recommended.

Caution on volume setting

Discs produce very little noise compared with other sources. Lower the volume before playing a disc to avoid damaging the speakers by the sudden increase of the output level.

Note on Region Code:
DVD players and DVD Video discs have their own Region Code numbers. This unit can only play back DVD discs whose Region Code numbers include “5.”

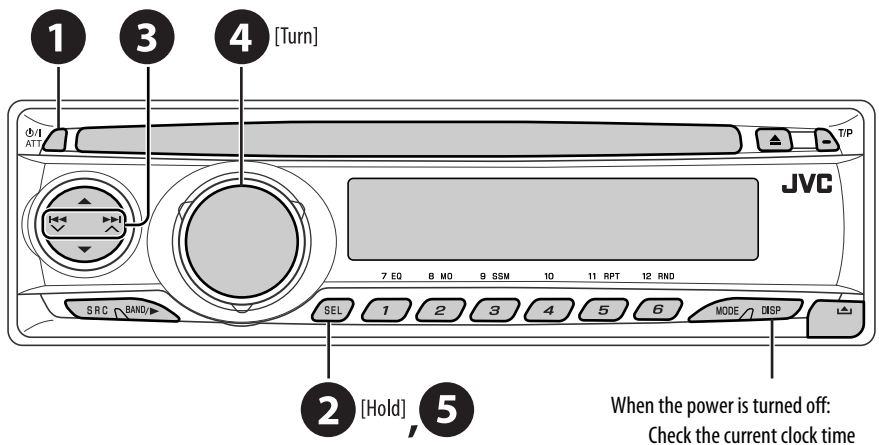
Examples:

If you insert a DVD Video disc of an incorrect Region Code
“REGION CODE ERROR!” appears on the monitor.

Before operating the unit — Cancel the display demonstration and set the clock

• See also page 23.



- 1 Turn on the power.
- 2 Enter the PSM settings.
- 3 ⇒ 4 Cancel the display demonstrations
Select "DEMO," then "DEMO OFF."

Set the clock

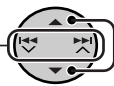
Select "CLOCK H" (hour), then adjust the hour.
 Select "CLOCK M" (minute), then adjust the minute.
 Select "24H/12H," then "24H" (hour) or "12H" (hour).

- 5 Finish the procedure.

When the power is turned off:
 Check the current clock time
 When the power is turned on:
 Change the display information

Basic operations — Control panel

- **FM/AM/DAB:** Search for station/service.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/track.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Select track.

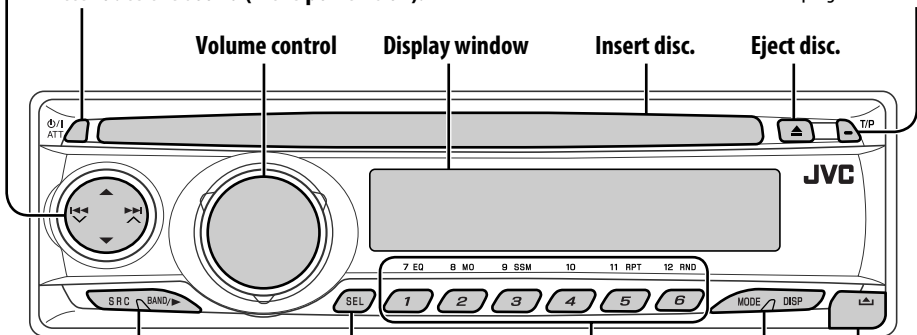


- **DISC:** Select folder.
Also functions as +10/-10 buttons after pressing MODE to skip 10 chapters/tracks at a time.
- **IPOD/D.PLAYER:** Enter the main menu/Pause or stop playback/Confirm selection.
- **DAB:** Select service.

- Turn on the power.
- Turn off the power [Hold].
- Attenuate the sound (if the power is on).

Activate/deactivate TA Standby Reception.

Hold to enter RDS programme search.



Adjust the sound mode.
Hold to enter the PSM settings.

Detach the panel.

- **FM/AM/DAB:** Select preset station/service.
- **DISC:** Select chapter/title/folder/track/disc (for CD changer).



Select the source.

FM/AM → **DAB*** → **DISC*** → **CD-CH*/IPOD*/D.PLAYER*** (or **EXT IN**) → (back to the beginning)
* You cannot select these sources if they are not ready.



- **FM/AM/DAB:** Select the bands.
- **DISC:** Start playback.



Enter functions mode.

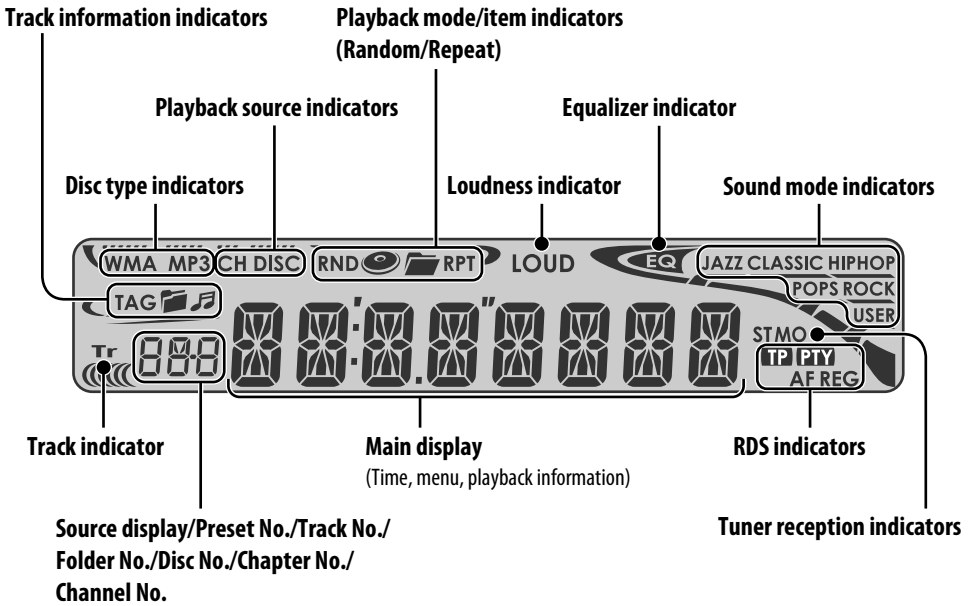
Press MODE, then one of the following buttons (within 5 seconds)...

- EQ:** Select the sound mode.
- MO:** Turn on/off monaural reception.
- SSM:** Automatic station presetting.
- RPT:** Select repeat play.
- RND:** Select random play.



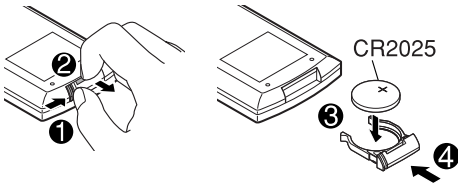
Change the display information.

Display window



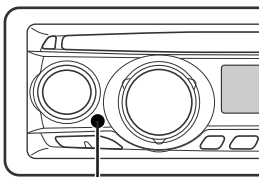
Basic operations — Remote controller (RM-RK230)

Installing the lithium coin battery (CR2025)



Before using the remote controller:

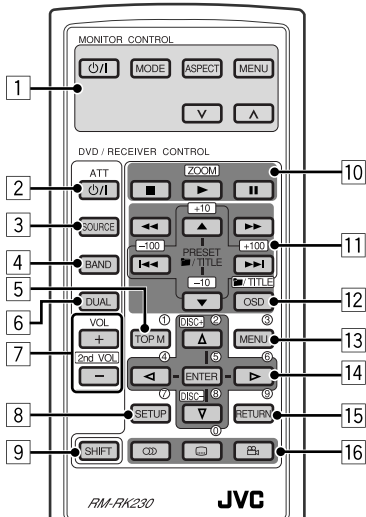
- Aim the remote controller directly at the remote sensor on the unit.
- DO NOT expose the remote sensor to bright light (direct sunlight or artificial lighting).



Warning:
To prevent accidents and damage

- Do not install any battery other than CR2025 or its equivalent.
- Store the battery in a place where children cannot reach.
- Do not recharge, short, disassemble, heat the battery, or dispose of it in a fire.
- Do not leave the battery with other metallic materials.
- Do not poke the battery with tweezers or similar tools.
- Wrap the battery with tape and insulate when throwing away or saving it.

Continued on the next page



MONITOR CONTROL

- 1 Monitor control buttons
 - Used for a JVC monitor—KV-MR9010 or KV-MH6510.

DVD/RECEIVER CONTROL

- 2 Turns on/off the power.
 - Attenuates the sound if the power is on.
- 3 Selects the source.
- 4 Selects the FM/AM/DAB bands.
- 5*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 6 Not applicable for this unit.
- 7 Adjusts the volume level.
 - 2nd VOL: Not applicable for this unit.
- 8*1 Enters DVD setup menu.
- 9 SHIFT button
- 10
 - (stop), ► (play), || (pause)
 - ► (play) also function as ZOOM button when pressed with SHIFT button (see page 14).
 - Not applicable for CD changer/iPod/D. player operations.

11*2 For advanced disc operations:

- /TITLE ▲ / ▼
DVD: Selects the titles.
MP3/WMA: Selects the folders if included.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse skip/forward skip.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶: Reverse search/forward search (not applicable for CD changer operations).

For FM/AM tuner operations:

- PRESET ▲ / ▼
Changes the preset stations.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶
– Searches for the stations if pressed briefly.
– Manual searches if pressed and held.

For DAB tuner operations:

- PRESET ▲ / ▼
Changes the preset services.
- ◀◀ / ▶▶
– Changes the services if pressed briefly.
– Searches the ensembles if pressed and held.

For iPod/D. player operations:

- ▲ / ▼
▼: Pauses/stops or resumes playback.
▲: Enters the main menu.
(Now ▲/▼/◀◀/▶▶ work as the menu selecting buttons.)*3
- ◀◀ / ▶▶ (in menu selecting mode)
– Selects an item if pressed briefly.
(Then, press ▼ to confirm the selection.)
– Skips 10 items at a time if pressed and held.
- 12
 - Shows the on-screen bar.
 - Also function as the /TITLE button when pressed with SHIFT button (see pages 14 and 15).
- 13*1
 - DVD: Shows the DVD disc menu.
 - VCD: Starts PBC playback.
- 14*1
 - Makes selection/settings.
 - DISC +/- buttons: Changes discs when the source is “CD-CH.”
- 15*1 RETURN button
- 16
 - DVD: Selects audio language (◻◻◻), subtitles (◻◻◻), angle (◻◻◻).
 - VCD: Selects audio channel (◻◻◻).

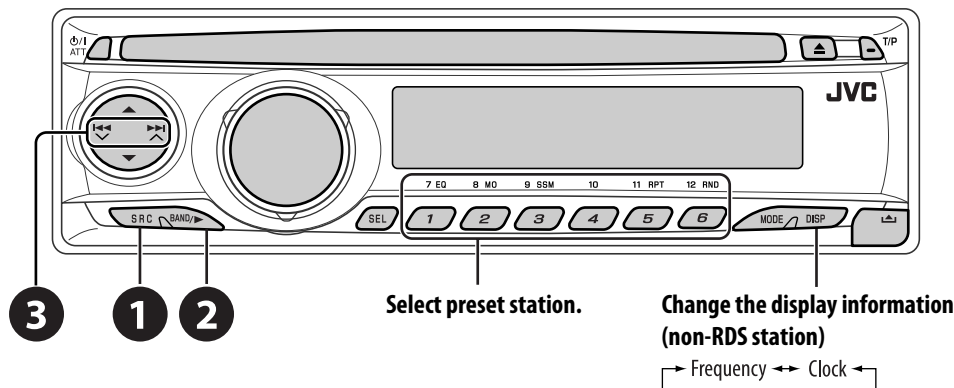
*1 Functions as number buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

– FM/AM/DAB: Selects preset stations/services.
– DISC: Selects chapter/title/folder/track.

*2 Functions as +10/-10/+100/-100 buttons when pressed with SHIFT button.

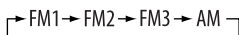
*3 ▲: Returns to the previous menu.
▼: Confirms the selection.

Listening to the radio



1 Select "FM/AM."

2 Select the bands.



3 Search for a station to listen—Auto Search.

- Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.



Lights up when receiving an FM stereo broadcast with sufficient signal strength.

Note:

FM1 and FM2: 87.5 MHz – 108.0 MHz
 FM3: 65.00 MHz – 74.00 MHz

When an FM stereo broadcast is hard to receive

1

2 → MONO → MONO OFF (Canceled)

Reception improves, but stereo effect will be lost.

- MO indicator lights up.

FM station automatic presetting—SSM (Strong-station Sequential Memory)

You can preset six stations for each band.

1 → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM ←

2

3 [Hold]



Local FM stations with the strongest signals are searched and stored automatically in the FM band.

Manual presetting

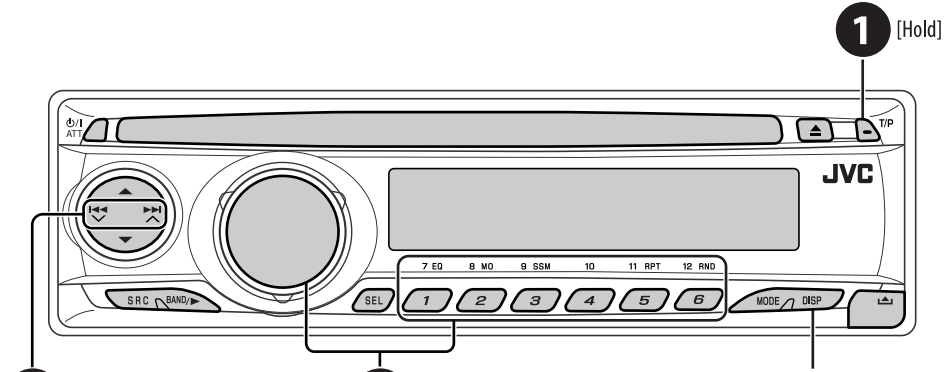
Ex.: Storing FM station of 92.5 MHz into preset number 4 of the FM1 band.

1 → FM1 → FM2 → FM3 → AM ←

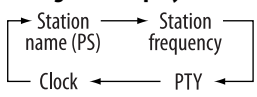
2 92.5

3 [Hold]

Searching for FM RDS programme — PTY search



Change the display information

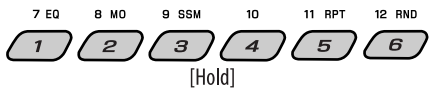


- 1 Activate PTY Search.**
- 2 Select one of the PTY codes (programme types).**
See the following for details.
- 3 Start searching.**
If there is a station broadcasting a programme of the same PTY code as you have selected, that station is tuned in.

Storing your favorite programme types

You can store your favorite PTY codes into the number buttons.

- 1 Select a PTY code (see left column).**
- 2 Select a preset number.**



- 3 Repeat steps 1 and 2 for storing other PTY codes.**



- 4** T/P

Preset PTY codes in the number buttons (1 to 6):

1	2	3	4	5	6
POP M	ROCK M	EASY M	CLASSICS	AFFAIRS	VARIED

PTY codes (available with the control dial):
 NEWS, AFFAIRS, INFO, SPORT, EDUCATE, DRAMA, CULTURE, SCIENCE, VARIED, POP M (music), ROCK M (music), EASY M (music), LIGHT M (music), CLASSICS, OTHER M (music), WEATHER, FINANCE, CHILDREN, SOCIAL, RELIGION, PHONE IN, TRAVEL, LEISURE, JAZZ, COUNTRY, NATION M (music), OLDIES, FOLK M (music), DOCUMENT

Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

TA Standby Reception	Indicator	PTY Standby Reception	Indicator
Press  to activate.	TP	See page 23.	PTY
The unit temporarily will switch to Traffic Announcement (TA), if available, from any source other than AM. The volume changes to the preset TA volume level if the current level is lower than the preset level (see page 23).	Lights up	The unit temporarily will switch to your favorite PTY programme from any source other than AM.	Lights up
Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.	Flashes	Not yet activated. Tune in to another station providing the RDS signals.	Flashes
Press  to deactivate.	Goes off	Select “OFF” for the PTY code (see page 23).	Goes off

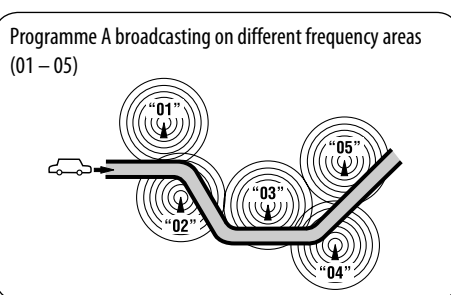
Tracing the same programme—Network-Tracking Reception

When driving in an area where FM reception is not sufficient enough, this unit automatically tunes in to another FM RDS station of the same network, possibly broadcasting the same programme with stronger signals (see the illustration on the right).

When shipped from the factory, Network-Tracking Reception is activated.

To change the Network-Tracking Reception setting, see “AF-REG” on page 23.

- When the DAB tuner is connected, refer to “Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception” on page 19.



Automatic station selection—Programme Search

Usually when you press the number buttons, the preset station is tuned in.

If the signals from the RDS preset station are not sufficient for good reception, this unit, using the AF data, tunes in to another frequency broadcasting the same programme as the original preset station is broadcasting.

- The unit takes some time to tune in to another station using programme search.
- See also page 24.

Disc operations

Before performing any operations...

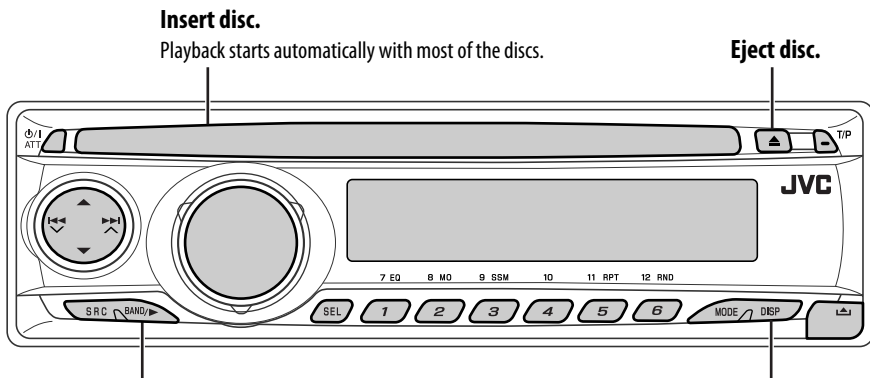
Turn on the monitor for playing a DVD or VCD. If you turn on the monitor, you can also control playback of other discs by referring to the monitor screen. (See pages 15 – 17.)

The disc type is automatically detected, and playback starts automatically (for DVD: automatic start depends on its internal program).

If the current disc does not have any disc menu (when playback stops), all tracks will be played repeatedly until you change the source or eject the disc.

If “⊘” appears on the monitor when pressing a button, the unit cannot accept the operation you have tried to do.

- In some cases, without showing “⊘,” operations will not be accepted.



Insert disc.

Playback starts automatically with most of the discs.

Eject disc.

Start playback if necessary.

Prohibiting disc ejection



To cancel the prohibition, repeat the same procedure.

*1 If the file does not have Tag information or “TAG DISP” is set to “TAG OFF” (see page 24), folder name and file name appear. TAG indicator will not light up.

*2 “NO NAME” appears for an audio CD.

Change the display information



Elapsed playing time → Clock → Current title and chapter number



Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number



Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number

Track title (file name*1) ← Album name/performer (folder name*1)











Elapsed playing time and Current track number → Clock and Current track number


Track title*2 ← Disc title/performer *2








Operations using the control panel

Pressing (or holding) the following buttons allows you to...

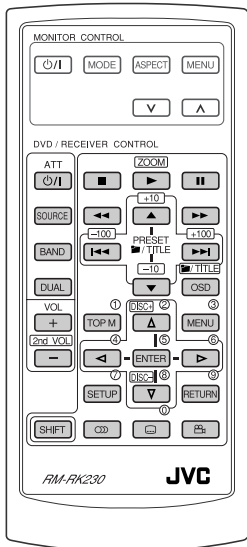
Disc type			  (Number buttons)
 DVD	Press: Select chapter Hold: Reverse /fast-forward chapter*	—	During stop: Locate title During play/pause: Locate chapter
 VCD	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse /fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Select track	Select folder	Locate particular folder directly
 CD	Press: Select track Hold: Reverse /fast-forward track*	—	Locate particular track directly

* Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Leftrightarrow \times 10$ on the monitor.

After pressing , press the following buttons to...

Disc type			
 DVD	Skip 10 chapters (during play or pause)	CHP RPT: Repeat current chapter TIT RPT: Repeat current title	—
 VCD	Skip 10 tracks (PBC not in use)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track (PBC not in use)	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks (PBC not in use)
 MP3/WMA	Skip 10 tracks (within the same folder)	TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: Repeat current folder	FLDR RND: Randomly play all tracks of current folder, then tracks of next folders DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks
 CD	Skip 10 tracks	TRK RPT: Repeat current track	DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select “RPT OFF” or “RND OFF.”



- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play (10-second review if pressed during play.)
- : Reverse/forward chapter search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
- : *Press:* Select chapter (during play or pause)
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward chapter search
- : Select title
- : Select audio language
- : Select subtitle language
- : Select view angle



Using menu driven features...

- 1 TOP M / MENU
- 2 Select an item you want to start play.
- 3 ENTER

While holding ...*3

- ①....⑨ : Select chapter (during play or pause)
- Select title (when stop)
- TITLE, then ①....⑨ :
Select title directly

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding SHIFT, press ZOOM repeatedly.
 ZOOM 1 ... ZOOM 6
 ZOOM OFF
 - 2 Move the enlarged portion.
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."

- : Stop play
- : Pause (Frame by frame playback if pressed during pause.)
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search*1
 - Slow motion during pause. No sound can be heard.*2
 - Reverse slow motion does not work.
- : *Press:* Select track
Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search
- : Select audio channel (ST: stereo, L: left, R: Right)

While holding ...*3

- ①....⑨ : Select track (For VCD with PBC, a list of items is shown on the disc menu.)
 - To return to the previous menus, press RETURN.

Canceling the PBC playback...

- 1
- 2 While holding SHIFT, press ①....⑨ *3 to start the desired track.
• To resume PBC, press TOP M / MENU.

To enlarge the view (Zoom in)...

- 1 While holding SHIFT, press ZOOM repeatedly.
 ZOOM 1 ... ZOOM 6
 ZOOM OFF
 - 2 Move the enlarged portion.
- To cancel zoom, select "ZOOM OFF."



MP3/WMA

- : Stop play
- : Pause
- : Start play (Playback starts from the beginning of the track.)
- : Select tracks
- : Select folder

While holding ...*3

- : Select track (within the same folder)
- , then : Select folder directly*4

CD

- : Stop play
- : Pause
- : Start play
- : Reverse/forward track search
- : Press: Select tracks
- : Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track search

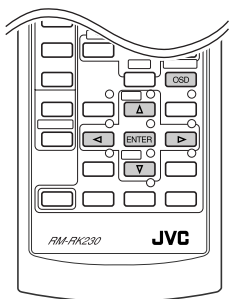
While holding ...*3

- : Select track directly

*1 Search speed changes to $\times 2 \Rightarrow \times 5 \Rightarrow \times 10 \Rightarrow \times 20 \Rightarrow \times 60$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.
 *2 Slow motion speed changes to $\text{▶}1/32 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/16 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/8 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/4 \Rightarrow \text{▶}1/2$ on the monitor if pressed repeatedly.
 *3 For selecting numbers greater than 9 or 99, press +10 or +100 , then follow by $\text{①} \dots \text{⑨}$.
 *4 To use direct folder access on MP3/WMA discs, it is required that folders are assigned with 2-digit numbers at the beginning of their folder names—01, 02, 03, and so on.

Operations using the on-screen bar

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Show the on-screen bar (see page 16).
 (once) for MP3/WMA/CD
 (twice) for DVD/VCD

2 Select an item.

3 Make a selection.

If pop-up menu appears...

- For entering time/numbers, see the following.

4 Remove the on-screen bar.

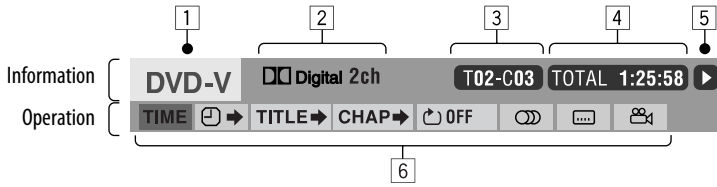
Entering time/numbers

- To select numbers 0 – 9:
While holding , press .
- To select numbers greater than 9:
While holding , press +10 . Then, press .
- After entering the numbers, press .
- To reduce numbers, use −10 .
- To correct a misentry, use ◀ .

- Ex.: Time search
- DVD: $\text{_}:\text{_}:\text{_}$
To enter 1 (hours): 02 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 1, 0, 2, 0, then 0.
 - VCD (PBC not in use): $\text{_}:\text{_}:\text{_}$
To enter 64 (minutes): 00 (seconds), press 6, 4, 0, then 0.

Continued on the next page

On-screen bar



- 1 Disc type
- 2 DVD/DTS audio CD: Audio signal format type
VCD: PBC
- 3 Playback information
T02-C03 Current title/chapter
TRACK 01 Current track
- 4 Time indication
TOTAL Elapsed playing time of the disc (For DVD, elapsed playing time of the current title.)
T. REM DVD: Remaining title time
 VCD: Remaining disc time
TIME Elapsed playing time of the current chapter/track
REM Remaining time of the current chapter/track
- 5 Playback status
 Play
 Forward/reverse search
 Forward/reverse slow-motion
 Pause
 Stop
- 6 Operation icons
TIME Change the time indication (see 4)
 Time Search (Enter the elapsed playing time of the current title or of the disc.)
TITLE Title Search (by its number)
CHAP Chapter Search (by its number)
TRACK Track Search (by its number)
 Change the audio language or audio channel
 Change the subtitle language
 Change the view angle
 DVD: Repeat play
REPEAT VCD/MP3/WMA/CD: Repeat play
INTRO Intro play
RANDOM Random play



Repeat play*1 :



(PBC not in use)

Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :



Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

Intro play*2 :



Repeat play*1 :

Random play*1 :

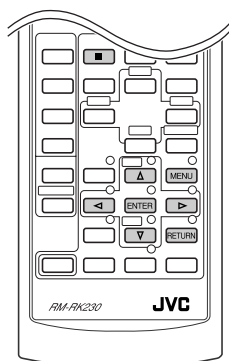
Intro play*2 :

*1 For repeat play/random play, see also page 13.

*2 Plays the beginning 15 seconds of...

INTRO TRACK (INTRO): All tracks of the current disc.

INTRO FOLDER: First tracks of all folders of the current disc.



These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.

- Folder selection/information is only for MP3/WMA discs.

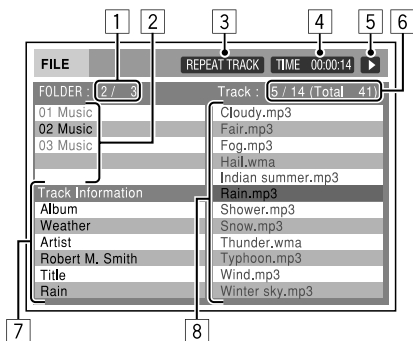
Control screen

The control screen automatically appears when you insert a disc.

- Select "Folder" column or "Track" column on the control screen.



- Select a folder or track to start playing.



Ex.: MP3/WMA disc

- Current folder number/total folder number
- Folder list with the current folder selected
- Selected playback mode
- Elapsed playing time of the current track
- Operation mode icon (▶, ■, II, ►►, ◀◀)
- Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder (total number of tracks on the disc)
- Track information
- Track list with the current track selected

Folder/track list screen

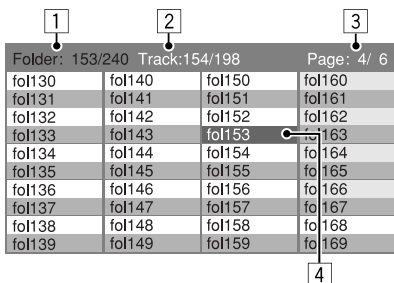
Before playing, you can display the folder list/track list to confirm the contents and start playing a track.

- Display the folder/track list while stop.



- Select an item from the list.

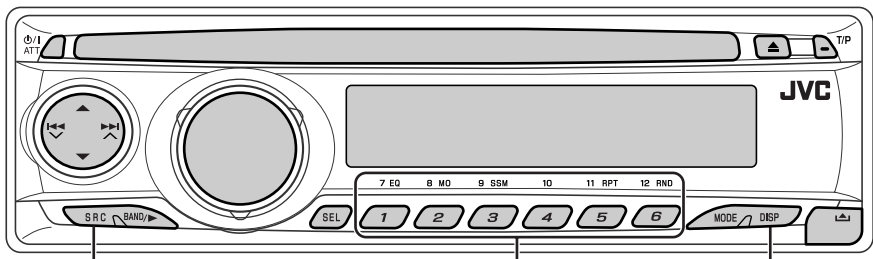
- MP3/WMA: Track list of the selected folder appears.
- To go back to the previous screen, press RETURN.



Ex.: Folder list

- Current folder number/total folder number
- Current track number/total number of tracks in the current folder or in disc (CD)
- Current page/total number of the pages included in the list
- Current folder/track (highlighted bar)

Listening to the CD changer



1

2

Change the display information
(see page 12)

It is recommended to use a JVC MP3-compatible CD changer with your unit.

- You can only play conventional CD (including CD Text) and MP3 discs.

1 Select "CD-CH."

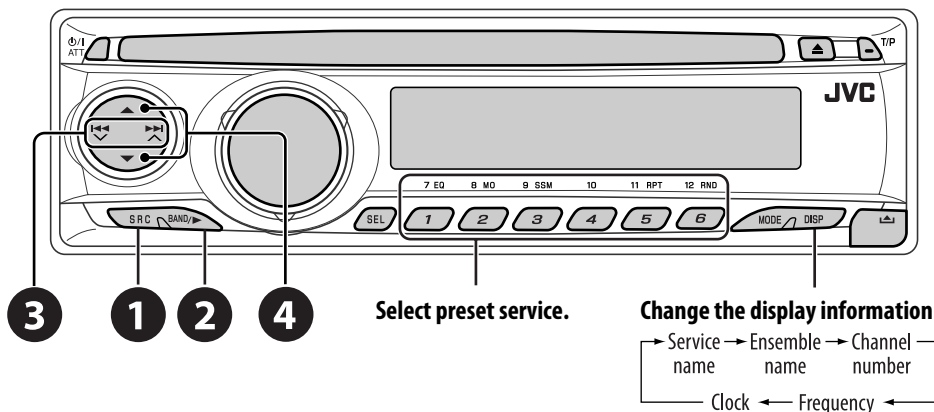
2 Select a disc to start playing.

Press: For selecting disc number 1 – 6.
Hold: For selecting disc number 7 – 12.

	<p>Press: Select track Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track</p>	<p>After pressing , press the following buttons to...</p>
	<p>MP3: Select folders</p>	
		<p>Skip 10 tracks (MP3: within the same folder)</p> <p>TRK RPT: Repeat current track FLDR RPT: MP3: Repeat all tracks of current folder DISC RPT: Repeat all tracks of the current disc</p>
		<p>FLDR RND: MP3: Randomly play all tracks of the current folder, then tracks of the next folder DISC RND: Randomly play all tracks of current disc MAG RND: Randomly play all tracks of the inserted discs</p>

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

Listening to the DAB tuner



1 Select "DAB."

2 Select the bands.



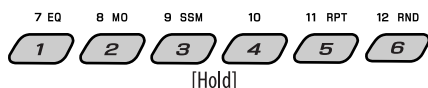
3 Searching for an ensemble.

- Manual Search: Hold either one of the buttons until "M" flashes on the display, then press it repeatedly.

4 Select a service (either primary or secondary) to listen to.

Storing DAB services in memory

While listening to a DAB service...



Activating/deactivating TA/PTY Standby Reception

- Operations are exactly the same as explained on page 11 for FM RDS stations.
- You cannot store PTY codes separately for the DAB tuner and for the FM tuner.

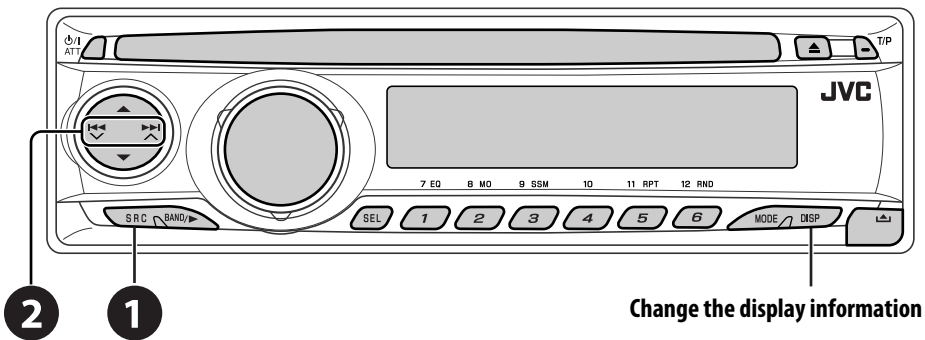
Tracing the same programme—Alternative Frequency Reception

- **While receiving a DAB service:**
When driving in an area where a service cannot be received, this unit automatically tunes in to another ensemble or FM RDS station, broadcasting the same programme.
- **While receiving an FM RDS station:**
When driving in an area where a DAB service is broadcasting the same programme as the FM RDS station is broadcasting, this unit automatically tunes in to the DAB service.

When shipped from the factory, Alternative Frequency Reception is activated.

To deactivate the Alternative Frequency Reception, see page 24.

Listening to the iPod®/D. player



Before operating, connect the interface adapter (KS-PD100 or KS-PD500) to the CD changer jack of this unit.

Preparations:

Make sure "CHANGER" is selected for the external input setting, see page 24.

- 1 Select "IPOD" or "D. PLAYER."
- 2 Select a song to start playing.

Selecting a track from the menu

- 1 Enter the main menu.
 - This mode will be canceled if no operations are done for about 5 seconds.



- 2 Select the desired menu.



For iPod:
 PLAYLIST ↔ ARTISTS ↔ ALBUMS ↔ SONGS
 ↔ GENRES ↔ COMPOSER ↔ (back to the beginning)

For D. player:
 PLAYLIST ↔ ARTIST ↔ ALBUM ↔
 GENRE ↔ TRACK ↔ (back to the beginning)

- 3 Confirm the selection.
 - To move back to the previous menu, press ▲.



Change the display information

- If a track is selected, playback starts automatically.
- Holding ▼|◀◀/▶▶|▲ can skip 10 items at a time.

	Pause/stop playback • To resume playback, press it again.
	Press: Select tracks Hold: Reverse/fast-forward track

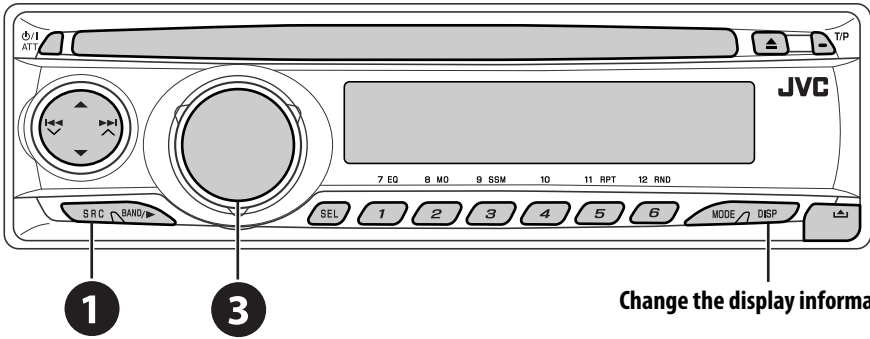
After pressing , press the following buttons to...

11 RPT 	ONE RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat One" or "Repeat Mode → One." ALL RPT: Functions the same as "Repeat All" or "Repeat Mode → All."
12 RND 	ALBM RND*: Functions the same as "Shuffle Albums" of the iPod. SONG RND/RND ON: Functions the same as "Shuffle Songs" or "Random Play → On."

- To cancel repeat play or random play, select "RPT OFF" or "RND OFF."

* iPod: Only if you select "ALL" in "ALBUMS" of the main "MENU."

Listening to the other external components



You can connect an external component to the CD changer jack on the rear using the Line Input Adapter—KS-U57 (not supplied) or AUX Input Adapter—KS-U58 (not supplied).

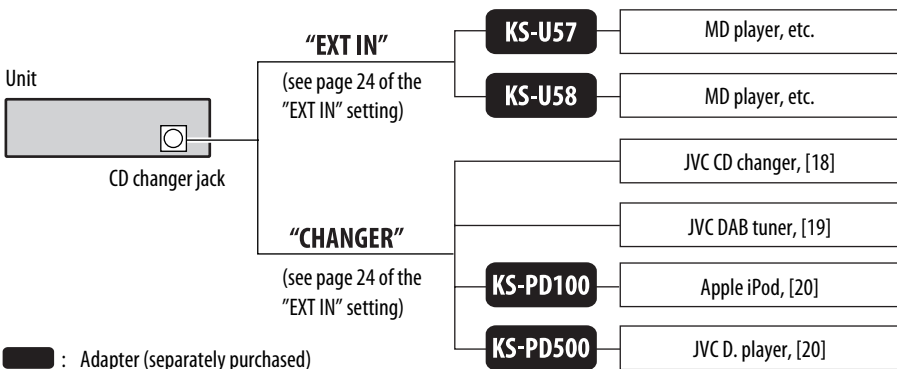
Preparations:

Make sure “EXT IN” is selected for the external input setting, see page 24.

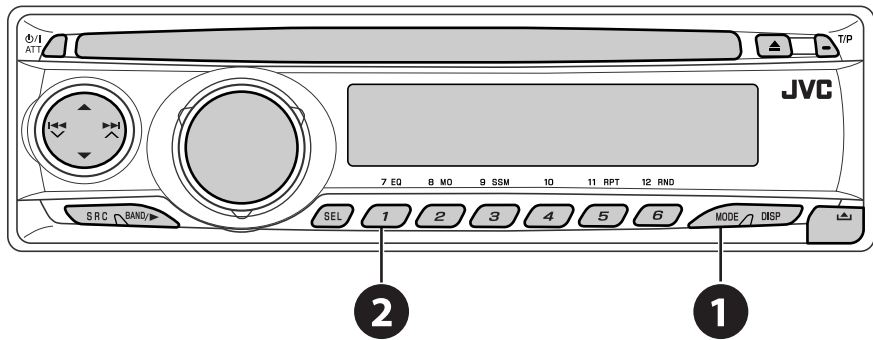
- 1 Select “EXT IN.”
- 2 Turn on the connected component and start playing the source.
- 3 Adjust the volume.
- 4 Adjust the sound as you want (see page 22).

Concept diagram of the external device connection

• For connection, see Installation/Connection manual (separate volume).



Selecting a preset sound mode — C-EQ



- 1 Enter functions mode.
- 2 Select a preset sound mode.



Indication (For)	BAS (bass)	TRE (treble)	LOUD (loudness)
USER (Flat sound)	00	00	OFF
ROCK (Rock or disco music)	+03	+01	ON
CLASSIC (Classical music)	+01	-02	OFF
POPS (Light music)	+04	+01	OFF
HIP HOP (Funk or rap music)	+02	00	ON
JAZZ (Jazz music)	+02	+03	OFF

Adjusting the sound



- 2 Adjust the level.



BAS *1 (bass) Adjust the bass.	-06 to +06
TRE *1 (treble) Adjust the treble.	-06 to +06
FAD *2 (fader) Adjust the front and rear speaker balance.	R06 to F06
BAL (balance) Adjust the left and right speaker balance.	L06 to R06
LOUD *1 (loudness) Boost low and high frequencies to produce a well-balanced sound at low volume level.	LOUD ON or LOUD OFF
VOL.A *3 (volume adjust) Adjust and store auto-adjustment volume level for each source, comparing to the FM volume level.	-05 to +05
VOL (volume) Adjust the volume.	00 to 30 (or 50)*4

*1 When you adjust the bass, treble, or loudness, the adjustment you have made is stored for the currently selected sound mode (C-EQ) including "USER."

*2 If you are using a two-speaker system, set the fader level to "00."

*3 You cannot make an adjustment for FM. "FIX" appears.

*4 Depending on the amplifier gain control setting. (See page 24 for details.)

General settings — PSM

You can change PSM (Preferred Setting Mode) items listed in the table that follows.

1 Enter the PSM settings.



2 Select a PSM item.



3 Select or adjust the selected PSM item.



4 Repeat steps 2 and 3 to adjust other PSM items if necessary.

5 Finish the procedure.



Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
DEMO Display demonstration	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DEMO ON [Initial] • DEMO OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Display demonstration will be activated automatically if no operation is done for about 20 seconds, [5]. : Cancels.
CLOCK H Hour adjustment	0 – 23 (1 – 12) [Initial: 0 (0:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLOCK M Minute adjustment	00 – 59 [Initial: 00 (0:00)]	: See also page 5 for setting.
24H/12H Time display mode	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 12H • 24H [Initial] 	: See also page 5 for setting.
CLK ADJ Clock adjustment	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO [Initial] • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : The built-in clock is automatically adjusted using the CT (clock time) data in the RDS signal. : Cancels.
AF-REG*1 Alternative frequency/ regionalization reception	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AF [Initial] • AF REG • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station or service (the programme may differ from the one currently received), [11, 19]. : When the currently received signals become weak, the unit switches to another station broadcasting the same programme. : Cancels (not selectable when “DAB AF” is set to “AF ON”).
PTY-STBY PTY standby	OFF [Initial], PTY codes (see page 10)	: Activates PTY Standby Reception with one of the PTY codes, [11, 19].
TA VOL Traffic announcement volume	VOL 15 [Initial]	: VOL 00 – VOL 30 or 50*2, [11].

Continued on the next page

Indication	Item	Setting, [reference page]
P-SEARCH * ¹ Programme search	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Activates Programme Search, [11]. : Cancels.
DAB AF * ³ Alternative frequency reception	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AF ON [Initial] • AF OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Traces the programme among DAB services and FM RDS stations, [19]. : Cancels.
DIMMER	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ON • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Dims the display illumination. : Cancels.
TEL Telephone muting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • MUTING 1/ MUTING 2 • OFF [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Select either one which mutes the playback sounds while using a cellular phone. : Cancels.
SCROLL * ⁴	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • ONCE [Initial] • AUTO • OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Scrolls the track information once. : Repeats scrolling (5-second intervals). : Cancels. (Holding DISP can scroll the display regardless of the setting.)
EXT IN * ⁵ External input	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • CHANGER [Initial] • EXT IN 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : To use a JVC CD changer, [18], JVC DAB tuner, [19], or an Apple iPod/a JVC D. player, [20]. : To use any other external component than the above, [21].
TAG DISP Tag display	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • TAG ON [Initial] • TAG OFF 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Shows the tag while playing MP3/WMA tracks. : Cancels.
AMP GAIN Amplifier gain control	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • LOW PWR • HIGH PWR [Initial] 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : VOL 00 – VOL 30 (Select if the maximum power of each speaker is less than 50 W to prevent the speaker from being damaged.) : VOL 00 – VOL 50
IF BAND Intermediate frequency filter	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO [Initial] • WIDE 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> : Increases the tuner selectivity to reduce interference noises between adjacent stations. (Stereo effect may be lost.) : Subject to interference noises from adjacent stations, but sound quality will not be degraded and the stereo effect will remain.

*¹ Only for RDS FM preset stations.

*² Depending on the “AMP GAIN” setting.

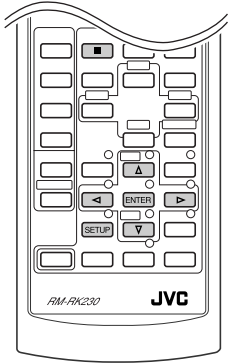
*³ Displayed only when DAB tuner is connected.

*⁴ Some characters or symbols will not be shown correctly (or will be blanked) on the display.

*⁵ Displayed only when one of the following sources is selected—FM, AM, or DISC.

DVD setup menu

These operations are possible on the monitor using the remote controller.



1 Enter the DVD setup menu while stop.



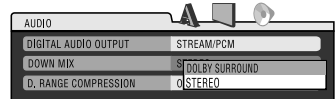
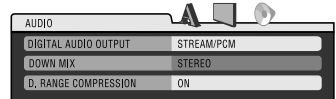
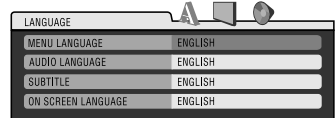
2 Select a menu.



3 Select an item you want to set up.



4 Select an option.



To return to normal screen



Menu	Item	Setting
LANGUAGE	MENU LANGUAGE	Select the initial disc menu language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 27.
	AUDIO LANGUAGE	Select the initial audio language. Refer also to "Language codes" on page 27.
	SUBTITLE	Select the initial subtitle language or remove the subtitle (OFF). Refer also to "Language codes" on page 27.
	ON SCREEN LANGUAGE	Select the language for the on screen display.
PICTURE	MONITOR TYPE	Select the monitor type to watch a wide screen picture on your monitor. <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around; align-items: flex-start;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>16:9</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>4:3 LETTER BOX</p> </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>4:3 PAN SCAN</p> </div> </div>
	OSD POSITION	Select the on-screen bar position on the monitor. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Higher position • 2: Lower position (Guidance below the DVD setup menu will disappear.)

Continued on the next page

Menu	Item	Setting
AUDIO	DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	<p>Select the signal format to be emitted through the DIGITAL OUT (Optical) terminal.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • PCM ONLY: Select for an amplifier or a decoder incompatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio, or connecting to a recording device. • DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital. • STREAM/PCM: Select for an amplifier or a decoder compatible with Dolby Digital, DTS, and MPEG Audio.
	DOWN MIX	<p>When playing back a multi-channel disc, this setting affects the signals reproduced through the LINE OUT jacks (and through the DIGITAL OUT terminal when "PCM ONLY" is selected for "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT").</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • DOLBY SURROUND: Select to enjoy multi-channel surround audio by connecting an amplifier compatible with Dolby Surround. • STEREO: Normally select this.
	D. RANGE COMPRESSION	<p>You can enjoy a powerful sound at low or middle volume levels while playing a Dolby Digital software.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • AUTO: Select to apply the effect to multi-channel encoded software (excluding 1-channel and 2-channel software). • ON: Select to always use this function.

Output signals through the DIGITAL OUT terminal

Output signals are different depending on the "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" setting on the setup menu (see above).

DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT	Output Signals			
	STREAM/PCM	DOLBY DIGITAL/PCM	PCM ONLY	
DVD	48 kHz, 16/20/24 bits Linear PCM	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
	96 kHz, Linear PCM			
	with DTS	DTS bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM	
	with Dolby Digital	Dolby Digital bitstream		48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM
with MPEG Audio	MPEG bitstream	48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM		
Audio CD, Video CD	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM/48 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM			
Audio CD with DTS	DTS bitstream	44.1 kHz, 16 bits stereo Linear PCM		
MP3/WMA	32/44.1/48 kHz, 16 bits Linear PCM			

Language codes

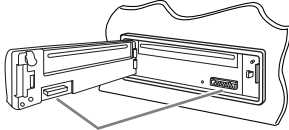
Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language	Code	Language
AA	Afar	GL	Galician	MK	Macedonian	SO	Somali
AB	Abkhazian	GN	Guarani	ML	Malayalam	SQ	Albanian
AF	Afrikaans	GU	Gujarati	MN	Mongolian	SR	Serbian
AM	Ameharic	HA	Hausa	MO	Moldavian	SS	Siswati
AR	Arabic	HI	Hindi	MR	Marathi	ST	Sesotho
AS	Assamese	HR	Croatian	MS	Malay (MAY)	SU	Sundanese
AY	Aymara	HU	Hungarian	MT	Maltese	SW	Swahili
AZ	Azerbaijani	HY	Armenian	MY	Burmese	TA	Tamil
BA	Bashkir	IA	Interlingua	NA	Nauru	TE	Telugu
BE	Byelorussian	IE	Interlingue	NE	Nepali	TG	Tajik
BG	Bulgarian	IK	Inupiak	NO	Norwegian	TH	Thai
BH	Bihari	IN	Indonesian	OC	Occitan	TI	Tigrinya
BI	Bislama	IS	Icelandic	OM	(Afan) Oromo	TK	Turkmen
BN	Bengali, Bangla	IW	Hebrew	OR	Oriya	TL	Tagalog
BO	Tibetan	JI	Yiddish	PA	Panjabi	TN	Setswana
BR	Breton	JW	Javanese	PL	Polish	TO	Tonga
CA	Catalan	KA	Georgian	PS	Pashto, Pushto	TR	Turkish
CO	Corsican	KK	Kazakh	PT	Portuguese	TS	Tsonga
CS	Czech	KL	Greenlandic	QU	Quechua	TT	Tatar
CY	Welsh	KM	Cambodian	RM	Rhaeto-Romance	TW	Twi
DZ	Bhutani	KN	Kannada	RN	Kirundi	UK	Ukrainian
EL	Greek	KO	Korean (KOR)	RO	Rumanian	UR	Urdu
EO	Esperanto	KS	Kashmiri	RW	Kinyarwanda	UZ	Uzbek
ET	Estonian	KU	Kurdish	SA	Sanskrit	VI	Vietnamese
EU	Basque	KY	Kirghiz	SD	Sindhi	VO	Volapuk
FA	Persian	LA	Latin	SG	Sangho	WO	Wolof
FI	Finnish	LN	Lingala	SH	Serbo-Croatian	XH	Xhosa
FJ	Fiji	LO	Laothian	SI	Singhalese	YO	Yoruba
FO	Faroese	LT	Lithuanian	SK	Slovak	ZU	Zulu
FY	Frisian	LV	Latvian, Lettish	SL	Slovenian		
GA	Irish	MG	Malagasy	SM	Samoan		
GD	Scots Gaelic	MI	Maori	SN	Shona		

Maintenance

How to clean the connectors

Frequent detachment will deteriorate the connectors.

To minimize this possibility, periodically wipe the connectors with a cotton swab or cloth moistened with alcohol, being careful not to damage the connectors.



Connector

Moisture condensation

Moisture may condense on the lens inside the DVD/CD player in the following cases:

- After starting the heater in the car.
 - If it becomes very humid inside the car.
- Should this occur, the DVD/CD player may malfunction. In this case, eject the disc and leave the unit turned on for a few hours until the moisture evaporates.

How to handle discs

When removing a disc from its case, press down the center holder of the case and lift the disc out, holding it by the edges.

Center holder



- Always hold the disc by the edges. Do not touch its recording surface.

When storing a disc into its case, gently insert the disc around the center holder (with the printed surface facing up).

- Make sure to store discs into the cases after use.

To keep discs clean

A dirty disc may not play correctly. If a disc does become dirty, wipe it with a soft cloth in a straight line from center to edge.



- Do not use any solvent (for example, conventional record cleaner, spray, thinner, benzene, etc.) to clean discs.

To play new discs

New discs may have some rough spots around the inner and outer edges. If such a disc is used, this unit may reject the disc.



To remove these rough spots, rub the edges with a pencil or ball-point pen, etc.

Do not use the following discs:

Warped disc



Sticker



Sticker residue



Stick-on label

Available characters on the display

■ Available characters

□ Display indications

А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М
А	Б	В	Г	Д	Е	Ж	З	И	Й	К	Л	М

Н	О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ
Н	О	П	Р	С	Т	У	Ф	Х	Ц	Ч	Ш	Щ

Ъ	Ы	Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	А	В	С	Д	Е	Ф
Ъ	Ы	Ь	Э	Ю	Я	Ё	А	В	С	Д	Е	Ф

G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S
G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S

T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1	2	3	4	5
T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	0	1	2	3	4	5

6	7	8	9	-	/	<	>	space
6	7	8	9	-	/	<	>	

More about this unit

General

Turning on the power

- By pressing SRC on the unit, you can also turn on the power. If the source is ready, playback starts.

Turning off the power

- If you turn off the power while listening to a disc, disc play will start automatically, next time you turn on the power.

FM/AM/RDS

Storing stations in memory

- During SSM search...
 - Received stations are preset in No. 1 (lowest frequency) to No. 6 (highest frequency).
 - When SSM is over, the station stored in No. 1 will be automatically tuned in.
- When storing stations, the previously preset stations are erased and stations are stored newly.

FM RDS operations

- Network-Tracking Reception requires two types of RDS signals—PI (Programme Identification) and AF (Alternative Frequency) to work correctly. Without receiving these data correctly, Network-Tracking Reception will not operate correctly.
- If a Traffic Announcement is received by TA Standby Reception, the volume level automatically changes to the preset level (TA VOL) if the current level is lower than the preset level.
- TA Standby Reception and PTY Standby Reception will be temporarily canceled while listening to an AM station.
- When Alternative Frequency Reception is activated (with AF selected), Network-Tracking Reception is also activated automatically. On the other hand, Network-Tracking Reception cannot be deactivated without deactivating Alternative Frequency Reception. (See page 24.)

- If you want to know more about RDS, visit <http://www.rds.org.uk>.

Disc

General

- In this manual, words “track” and “file” are interchangeably used when referring to MP3/WMA files and their file names.
- This unit can also playback 8 cm discs.
- This unit can only playback audio CD (CD-DA) files if different type of files are recorded in the same disc.

Inserting a disc

- When a disc is inserted upside down, the disc automatically ejects.

Ejecting a disc

- If the ejected disc is not removed within 15 seconds, the disc is automatically inserted again into the loading slot to protect it from dust. (Disc will not play this time.)

Playing a Recordable/Rewritable disc

- This unit can recognize a total of 3 500 files (250 folder per disc; 999 files per folder).
- Use only “finalized” discs.
- This unit can play back multi-session discs; however, unclosed sessions will be skipped while playing.
- This unit can show the names of albums, artists (performer), and Tag (Version 1.0, 1.1, 2.2, 2.3, or 2.4) for the files.
- This unit may be unable to play back some discs or files due to their characteristics or recording conditions.
- Rewritable discs may require a longer readout time.

Continued on the next page

Playing an MP3/WMA disc

- The maximum number of characters for folder and file names is 25 characters; 64 characters for MP3/WMA tag information.
- This unit can play back files with the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> (regardless of the letter case—upper/lower).
- This unit can display only one-byte characters. No other characters can be correctly displayed.
- This unit can play back files recorded in VBR (variable bit rate).
Files recorded in VBR have a discrepancy in elapsed time indication.
- This unit cannot play back the following files:
 - MP3 files encoded with MP3i and MP3 PRO format.
 - MP3 files encoded with Layer 1/2.
 - WMA files encoded with lossless, professional, and voice format.
 - WMA files which are not based upon Windows Media® Audio.
 - WMA files copy-protected with DRM.
 - Files which have the data such as WAVE, ATRAC3, etc.

Changing the source

- If you change the source, playback also stops (without ejecting the disc).
Next time you select “DISC” for the playback source, disc play starts from where it has been stopped previously.
For MP3/WMA disc, playback starts from the beginning of the last playing track.

DAB

- Only the primary DAB service can be preset even when you store a secondary service.
- A previously preset DAB service is erased when a new DAB service is stored in the same preset number.

iPod® or D. player

- When you turn on this unit, the iPod or D. player is charged through this unit.
- While the iPod or D. player is connected, all operations from the iPod or D. player are disabled. Perform all operations from this unit.

- The text information may not be displayed correctly.
- If the text information includes more than 8 characters, it scrolls on the display (see also page 24). This unit can display up to 40 characters.

Notice:

When operating an iPod or a D. player, some operations may not be performed correctly or as intended. In this case, visit the following JVC web site:

For iPod users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd100/index.html>>

For D. player users: <<http://www.jvc.co.jp/english/car/support/ks-pd500/index.html>>

General settings—PSM

- If you change the “AMP GAIN” setting from “HIGH PWR” to “LOW PWR” while the volume level is set higher than “VOL 30,” the unit automatically changes the volume level to “VOL 30.”










DVD setup menu

- When the language you have selected is not recorded on a disc, the original language is automatically used as the initial language. In addition, for some discs, the initial languages settings will not work as you set due to their internal disc programming.
- When you select “16:9” for a picture whose aspect ratio is 4:3, the picture slightly changes due to the process for converting the picture width.
- Even if “4:3 PAN SCAN” is selected, the screen size may become “4:3 LETTER BOX” for some DVDs.

On-screen guide icons

During playback, the following guide icons may appear for a while on the monitor.

DVD: Appears at the beginning of a scene containing:

-  : Multi-subtitle languages
-  : Multi-audio languages
-  : Multi-angle views
-  : Playback
-  : Pause
-  : DVD/VCD: Forward slow motion
-  : DVD: Reverse slow motion
-  : Forward search
-  : Reverse search

About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):** 2-channel signal is emitted. When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 26.)
- **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):** Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital, DTS, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 26.)
To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set “DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT” correctly. (See page 26.)

Troubleshooting

What appears to be trouble is not always serious. Check the following points before calling a service center.

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
General	• Sound cannot be heard from the speakers.	• Adjust the volume to the optimum level. • Check the cords and connections.
	• The unit does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
FM/AM/RDS	• SSM automatic presetting does not work.	Store stations manually.
	• Static noise while listening to the radio.	Connect the aerial firmly.

Continued on the next page

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
Disc playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Disc can be neither played back nor ejected.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Unlock the disc (see page 12). • Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be played back. • Tracks on the Recordable/Rewritable discs cannot be skipped. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Insert a finalized disc. • Finalize the discs with the component which you used for recording.
	• Disc cannot be recognized.	Eject the disc forcibly (see page 2).
	• "NO DISC" appears on the display.	Insert the disc correctly.
	• Sound and pictures are sometimes interrupted or distorted.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Stop playback while driving on rough roads. • Change the disc. • Check the cords and connections.
	• No playback picture (DVD/VCD) appears on the monitor.	Parking brake wire is not connected properly. (See Installation/Connection Manual.)
	• No picture appears on the monitor at all.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Connect the video cord correctly. • Select a correct input on the monitor.
• The left and right edges of the picture are missing on the monitor.	Select "4:3 LETTER BOX" (see page 25).	
MP3/WMA playback	• Disc cannot be played back.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Change the disc. • Record tracks using a compliant application in the appropriate discs (see page 4). • Add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to the file names.
	• Noise is generated.	Skip to another track or change the disc. (Do not add the extension code <.mp3> or <.wma> to non-MP3/WMA tracks.)
	• Longer readout time is required.	Readout time varies due to the complexity of the folder/file configuration. Do not use too many hierarchies and folders.
	• Tracks cannot playback as you have intended them to play.	Playback order is determined when files are recorded.
	• Elapsed playing time is not correct.	This sometimes occurs during playback. This is caused by how the tracks are recorded.
	• "NO FILES" appears on the display.	Insert a disc that contains tracks of appropriate formats.
	• Correct characters are not displayed (e.g. album name).	This unit can only display letters (upper case), cyrillic alphabets, numbers, and a limited number of symbols (see page 28).

	Symptom	Remedy/Cause
CD changer	• “NO DISC” appears on the display.	Insert a disc into the magazine.
	• “NO MAG” appears on the display.	Insert the magazine.
	• “RESET 8” appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the CD changer correctly and press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• “RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display.	Press the reset button of the CD changer.
	• The CD changer does not work at all.	Reset the unit (see page 2).
DAB	• “NO DAB” appears on the display.	Move to an area with stronger signals.
	• “RESET 08” appears on the display.	Connect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly and reset the unit (see page 2).
	• The DAB tuner does not work at all.	Reconnect this unit and the DAB tuner correctly. Then, reset the unit (see page 2).
	• “ANT NG” appears on the display.	Check the cords and connections.
iPod/D. player playback	• The iPod or D. player does not turn on or does not work.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Check the connecting cable and its connection. • Change the battery. • Update the firmware version.
	• Buttons do not work as intended.	The functions of the buttons have been changed. Press MODE before performing the operation.
	• The sound is distorted.	Deactivate the equalizer either on the unit or the iPod/ D. player.
	• “NO IPOD” or “NO DP” appears on the display.	Check the connecting cable and its connection.
	• Playback stops.	The headphones are disconnected during playback. Restart the playback operation (see page 20).
	• No sound can be heard when connecting an iPod nano.	Disconnect the headphones from the iPod nano.
	• No sound can be heard.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• “ERROR 01” appears on the display when connecting a D. player.	Disconnect the adapter from the D. player. Then, connect it again.
	• “NO FILES” or “NO TRACK” appears on the display.	No tracks are stored. Import tracks to the iPod or D. player.
	• “RESET 1” – “RESET 7” appears on the display.	Disconnect the adapter from both the unit and iPod/ D. player. Then, connect it again.
• “RESET 8” appears on the display.	Check the connection between the adapter and this unit.	
	• The iPod’s or D. player’s controls do not work after disconnecting from this unit.	Reset the iPod or D. player.

Specifications

AUDIO AMPLIFIER SECTION	Maximum Power Output:	Front/Rear:	50 W per channel
	Continuous Power Output (RMS):	Front/Rear:	19 W per channel into 4 Ω, 40 Hz to 20 000 Hz at no more than 0.8% total harmonic distortion
	Load Impedance:		4 Ω (4 Ω to 8 Ω allowance)
	Tone Control Range:	Bass/Treble:	±10 dB at 100 Hz/±10 dB at 10 kHz
	Frequency Response:		40 Hz to 20 000 Hz
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:		70 dB
	Audio Output Level:	Digital (DIGITAL OUT: Optical):	Signal wave length: 660 nm Output level: -21 dBm to -15 dBm
		Line-Out Level/Impedance:	2.0 V/20 kΩ load (full scale)
		Output Impedance:	1 kΩ
	Color System:		PAL
	Video Output (composite):		1 V _{p-p} /75 Ω
Other Terminals:		CD changer	

TUNER SECTION	Frequency Range:	FM1 /FM2:	87.5 MHz to 108.0 MHz
		FM3:	65.00 MHz to 74.00 MHz
		AM:	(MW) 522 kHz to 1 620 kHz (LW) 144 kHz to 279 kHz
	FM Tuner	Usable Sensitivity:	11.3 dBf (1.0 μV/75 Ω)
		50 dB Quieting Sensitivity:	16.3 dBf (1.8 μV/75 Ω)
		Alternate Channel Selectivity (400 kHz):	65 dB
		Frequency Response:	40 Hz to 15 000 Hz
		Stereo Separation:	30 dB
	MW Tuner	Sensitivity/Selectivity:	20 μV/35 dB
	LW Tuner	Sensitivity:	50 μV

DVD/CD PLAYER SECTION	Signal Detection System:	Non-contact optical pickup (semiconductor laser)		
	Number of Channels:	2 channels (stereo)		
	Frequency Response:	DVD, $f_s=48$ kHz:	16 Hz to 22 000 Hz	
		DVD, $f_s=96$ kHz:	16 Hz to 44 000 Hz	
		VCD/CD/MP3/WMA:	16 Hz to 20 000 Hz	
	Dynamic Range:	96 dB		
	Signal-to-Noise Ratio:	98 dB		
	Wow and Flutter:	Less than measurable limit		
	MP3:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 320 kbps	
		Sampling Frequency:	48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 32 kHz	
WMA:	Bit Rate:	32 kbps – 192 kbps		
	Sampling Frequency:	MPEG-1: 48 kHz, 44.1 kHz, 33 kHz		
		MPEG-2: 24 kHz, 22.05 kHz, 16 kHz		

GENERAL	Power Requirement:	Operating Voltage:	DC 14.4 V (11 V to 16 V allowance)	
	Grounding System:	Negative ground		
	Allowable Operating Temperature:	0°C to +40°C		
	Dimensions (W × H × D):	Installation Size (approx.):	182 mm × 52 mm × 158 mm	
		Panel Size (approx.):	188 mm × 58 mm × 11 mm	
	Mass (approx.):	1.6 kg (excluding accessories)		

Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.

- Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.
- “DTS” and “DTS 2.0 + Digital Out” are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.
- “DVD Logo” is a trademark of DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation registered in the US, Japan and other countries.
- Microsoft and Windows Media are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.
- iPod is a trademark of Apple Computer, Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.



**Having TROUBLE with operation?
Please reset your unit**

Refer to page of How to reset your unit

**Затруднения при эксплуатации?
Пожалуйста, перезагрузите Ваше устройство**

Для получения информации о перезагрузке Вашего устройства
обратитесь на соответствующую страницу

JVC



EN, RU

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

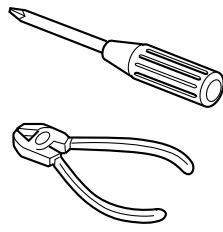
1205DTSMDTJEIN

JVC KD-DV4207

Installation/Connection Manual

Руководство по установке/подключению

GET0373-002A
[EE]



1205DTSMDTJEIN
EN, EE

© 2005 Victor Company of Japan, Limited

ENGLISH

This unit is designed to operate on **12 V DC, NEGATIVE ground electrical systems**. If your vehicle does not have this system, a voltage inverter is required, which can be purchased at JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealers.

WARNINGS

To prevent accidents and damage:

- **DO NOT install any unit in locations where:**
 - it may obstruct the steering wheel and gearshift lever operations.
 - it may obstruct the operation of safety devices such as air bags.
 - it may obstruct visibility.
- **DO NOT operate the unit while driving.**
- **If you need to operate the unit while driving, be sure to look ahead carefully.**
- **The driver must not watch the monitor while driving.**
- **If the parking brake is not engaged, "DRIVER MUST NOT WATCH THE MONITOR WHILE DRIVING." appears on the monitor, and no playback picture will be shown.**
 - This warning appears only when the parking brake wire is connected to the parking brake system built in the car.

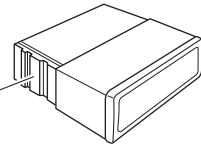
To prevent short circuits, we recommend that you disconnect the battery's negative terminal and make all electrical connections before installing the unit.

- **Be sure to ground this unit to the car's chassis again after installation.**

Notes:

- Replace the fuse with one of the specified rating. If the fuse blows frequently, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer.
- It is recommended to connect to the speakers with maximum power of more than 50 W (both at the rear and at the front, with an impedance of **4 Ω to 8 Ω**). If the maximum power is less than 50 W, change "AMP GAIN" setting to prevent the speakers from being damaged (see page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS).
- To prevent short-circuit, cover the terminals of the UNUSED leads with insulating tape.
- The heat sink becomes very hot after use. Be careful not to touch it when removing this unit.

Heat sink
Радиатор



РУССКИЙ

Это устройство разработано для эксплуатации на **12 В постоянного напряжения с минусом на массе**. Если Ваш автомобиль не имеет этой системы, требуется инвертор напряжения, который может быть приобретен у дилера автомобильного специалиста JVC.

ПРЕДУПРЕЖДЕНИЯ

Предотвращение несчастных случаев и повреждений:

- **НЕ устанавливайте устройство в местах, где:**
 - оно может помешать рулевому управлению и переключению передач.
 - оно может помешать функционированию средств безопасности, например, пневмоподушкам.
 - может ухудшиться обзор.
- **НЕ управляйте устройством во время вождения автомобиля.**
- **При необходимости управления устройством во время вождения автомобиля внимательно следите за дорогой.**
- **Водителю не следует смотреть на монитор во время вождения.**
- **Если стояночный тормоз не включен, на мониторе появляется сообщение "ВОДИТЕЛЬ НЕ ДОЛЖЕН СМОТРЕТЬ НА МОНИТОР ВО ВРЕМЯ ВОЖДЕНИЯ." и изображение воспроизведения отображаться не будет.**
 - Это предупреждение появляется только в том случае, если провод стояночного тормоза подключен к стояночной тормозной системе автомобиля.

Для предотвращения коротких замыканий мы рекомендуем Вам отсоединить отрицательный разъем аккумулятора и осуществить все подключения перед установкой устройства.

- **После установки обязательно заземлите данное устройство на шасси автомобиля.**

Примечания:

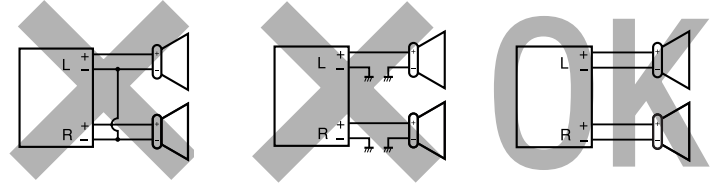
- Заменяйте предохранитель другим предохранителем указанного класса. Если предохранитель сгорает слишком часто, обратитесь к дилеру автомобильного специалиста JVC.
- Рекомендуется подключать динамики с максимальной мощностью более 50 Вт (к задней и передней панели устройства, с полным сопротивлением от **4 Ω до 8 Ω**). Если максимальная мощность динамиков менее 50 Вт, перейдите в режим "AMP GAIN", чтобы предотвратить их повреждение (см. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 24).
- Для предотвращения короткого замыкания заклейте НЕИСПОЛЬЗУЕМЫЕ концы изолирующей лентой.
- Радиатор во время использования сильно нагревается. Старайтесь его не трогать во время удаления устройства.

PRECAUTIONS on power supply and speaker connections:

- **DO NOT connect the speaker leads of the power cord to the car battery; otherwise, the unit will be seriously damaged.**
- BEFORE connecting the speaker leads of the power cord to the speakers, check the speaker wiring in your car.

ПРЕДОСТЕРЕЖЕНИЯ по питанию и подключению громкоговорителей:

- **НЕ подключайте провода громкоговорителей к аккумулятору автомобиля, иначе устройство будет повреждено.**
- ПЕРЕД подключением проводов громкоговорителей к кабелю питания громкоговорителя проверьте схему соединений громкоговорителей в Вашем автомобиле.



About sounds reproduced through the rear terminals

- **Through the analog terminals (Speaker out/LINE OUT):**
2-channel signal is emitted.
When playing a multi-channel encoded disc, multi-channel signals are downmixed. (AUDIO—DOWN MIX: see page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)
- **Through DIGITAL OUT (optical):**
Digital signals (Linear PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio) are emitted through this terminal. (For more details, see page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)
To reproduce multi-channel sounds such as Dolby Digital and DTS, connect an amplifier or a decoder compatible with these multi-channel sources to this terminal, and set "DIGITAL AUDIO OUTPUT" correctly. (See page 26 of the INSTRUCTIONS.)

*1 Manufactured under license from Dolby Laboratories. Dolby and the double-D symbol are trademarks of Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" and "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" are trademarks of Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

О звуках, воспроизводимых через задние терминалы

- **Через аналоговые терминалы (выход для динамиков/LINE OUT):**
Передается двухканальный сигнал.
При воспроизведении диска с многоканальным кодированием выполняется преобразование многоканальных сигналов. (АУДИО—СМЕШЕНИЕ: см. стр. 26 ИНСТРУКЦИЙ.)
- **Через терминал DIGITAL OUT (оптический):**
Через данный терминал передаются цифровые сигналы (линейный PCM, Dolby Digital*1, DTS*2, MPEG Audio). (Более подробную информацию см. на стр. 26 ИНСТРУКЦИЙ.)
Для воспроизведения многоканального звука Dolby Digital и DTS подключите к данному терминалу усилитель или декодер, совместимый с этими многоканальными источниками и установите правильное значение для параметра "ЦИФРОВОЙ АУДИО ВЫХОД". (См. стр. 26 ИНСТРУКЦИЙ.)

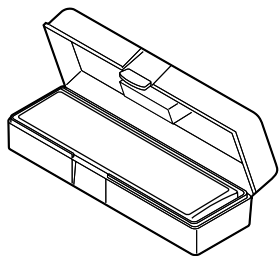
*1 Изготовлено по лицензии компании Dolby Laboratories. Долби и знак в виде двойной буквы D являются товарными знаками компании Dolby Laboratories.

*2 "DTS" и "DTS 2.0 + Digital Out" являются торговыми марками Digital Theater Systems, Inc.

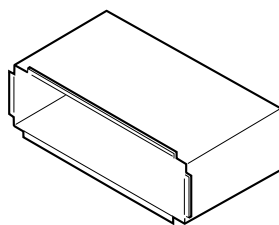
Parts list for installation and connection

If any item is missing, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer immediately.

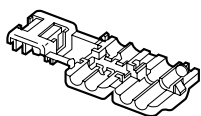
(A) / (B)
Hard case/Control panel
Жесткий футляр/панель управления



(C)
Sleeve
Муфта



(F)
Crimp connector
Обжимной соединитель



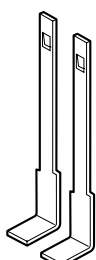
(G)
Washer (ø5)
Шайба (№5)



(J)
Rubber cushion
Резиновый чехол



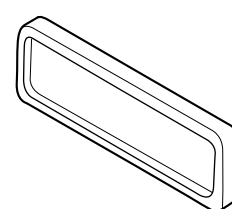
(K)
Handles
Рычаги



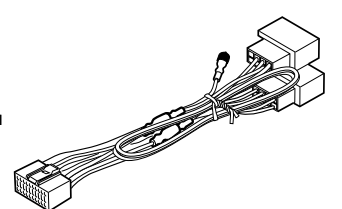
Список деталей для установки и подключения

При отсутствии какого-либо элемента немедленно свяжитесь с дилером автомобильных аудиоустройств JVC.

(D)
Trim plate
Декоративную панель



(E)
Power cord
Кабель питания



(H)
Lock nut (M5)
Фиксирующая гайка (M5)

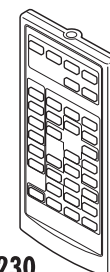


(I)
Mounting bolt (M5 × 20 mm)
Крепежный болт (M5 × 20 mm)



(L)
Remote controller
дистанционного управления

RM-RK230



(M)
Battery
Батарейка

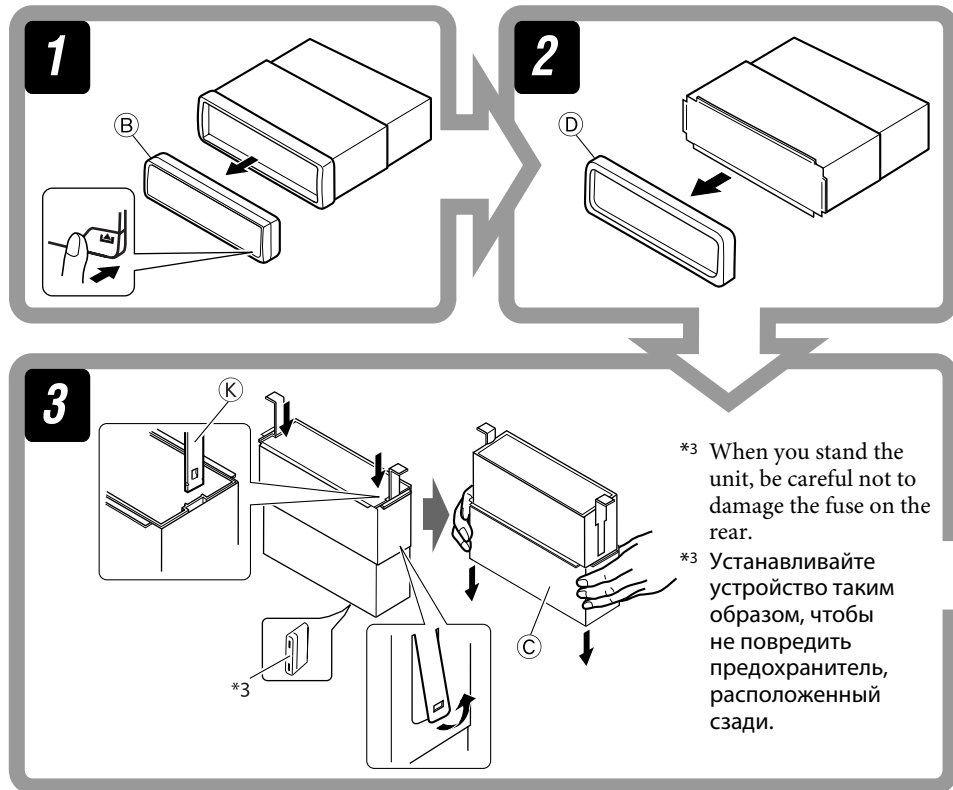


CR2025

INSTALLATION (IN-DASH MOUNTING)

The following illustration shows a typical installation. If you have any questions or require information regarding installation kits, consult your JVC IN-CAR ENTERTAINMENT dealer or a company supplying kits.

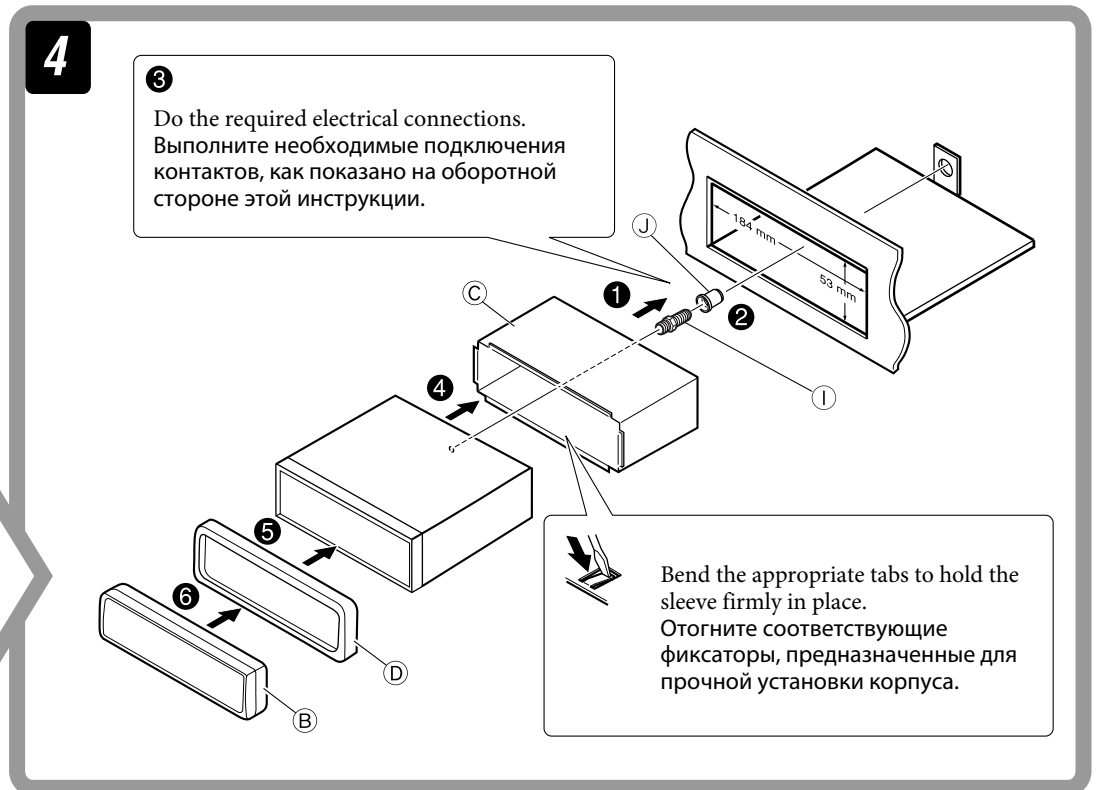
- If you are not sure how to install this unit correctly, have it installed by a qualified technician.



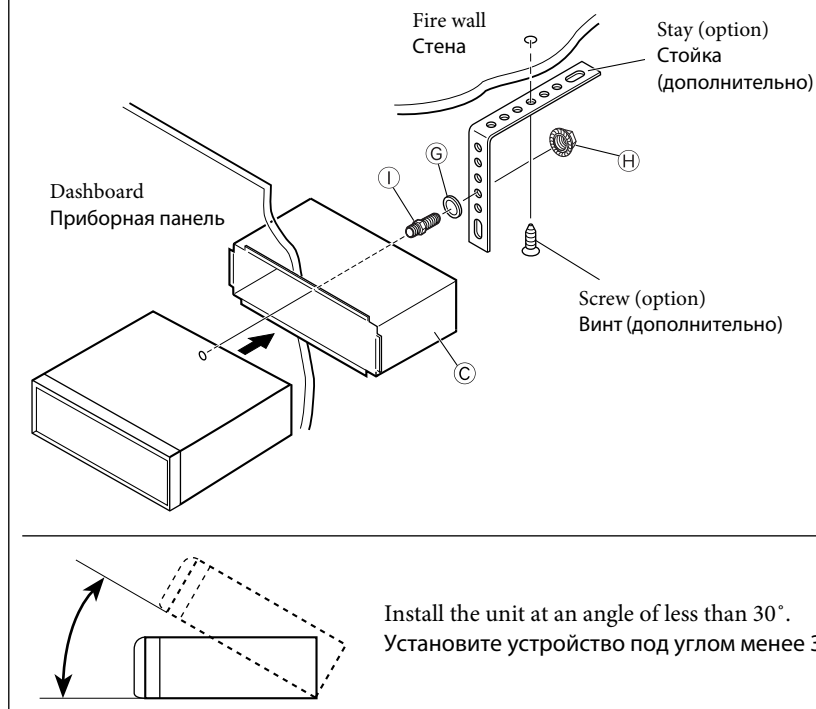
УСТАНОВКА (УСТАНОВКА В ПРИБОРНУЮ ПАНЕЛЬ)

На следующих иллюстрациях показана типовая установка. Если у Вас есть какие-либо вопросы, касающиеся установки, обратитесь к Вашему дилеру автомобильного специалиста JVC или в компанию, поставляющую соответствующие принадлежности.

- Если Вы не знаете точно, как следует устанавливать это устройство, обратитесь к квалифицированному специалисту.



When using the optional stay / При использовании дополнительной стойки

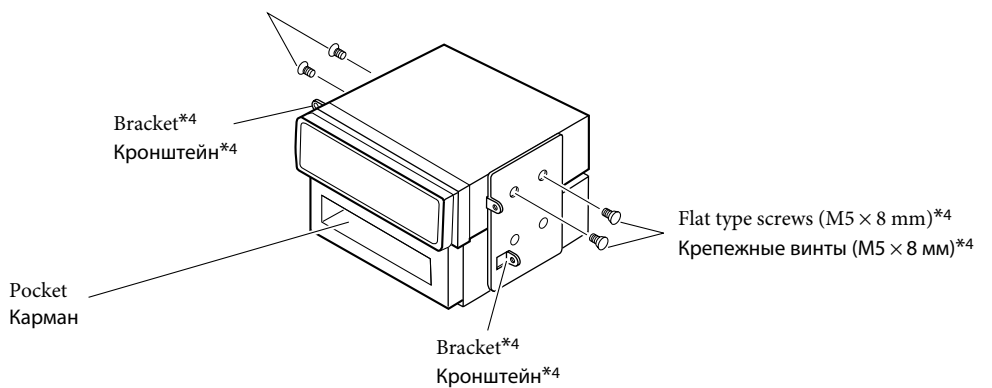


When installing the unit without using the sleeve / При установке устройства без использования муфты

In a Toyota car for example, first remove the car radio and install the unit in its place. В автомобилях "Toyota", например, сначала удалите автомобильную магнитолу, затем установите на ее место это устройство.

Flat type screws (M5 × 8 mm)*4
Крепежные винты (M5 × 8 мм)*4

*4 Not supplied for this unit.
*4 Не входит в комплект поставки.

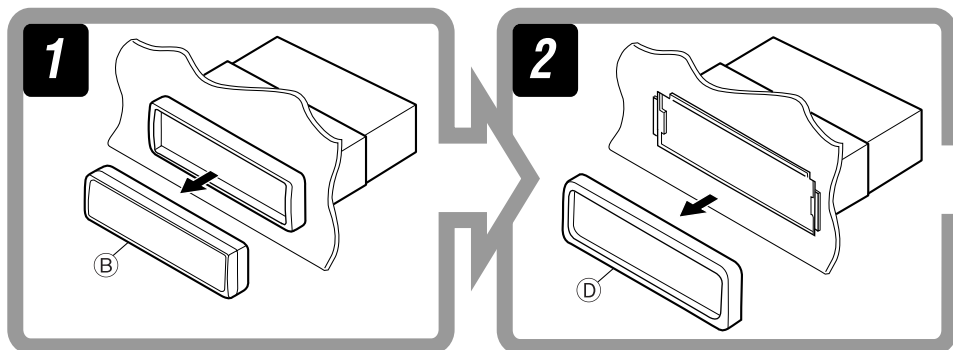


Note

- When installing the unit on the mounting bracket, make sure to use the 8 mm-long screws. If longer screws are used, they could damage the unit.
- При установке устройства на крепежный кронштейн, используйте только винты длиной 8 мм. При использовании более длинных винтов можно повредить устройство.

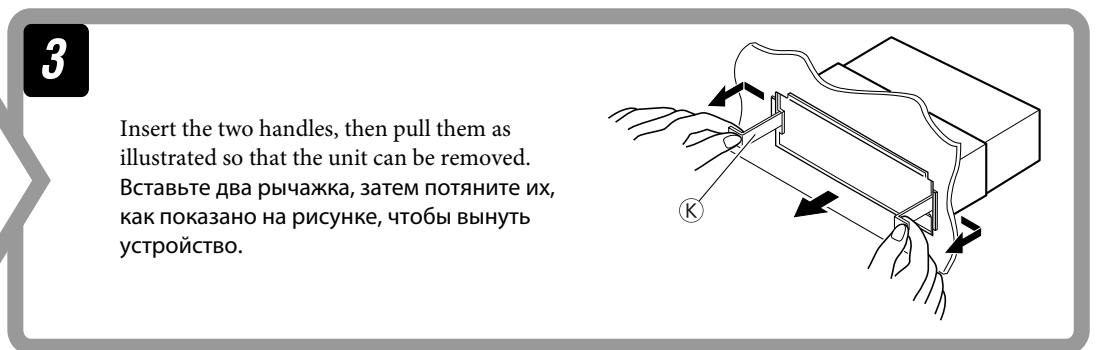
Removing the unit

Before removing the unit, release the rear section.



Удаление устройства

Перед удалением устройства освободите заднюю часть.



TROUBLESHOOTING

• The fuse blows.

- * Are the red and black leads connected correctly?

• Power cannot be turned on.

- * Is the yellow lead connected?

• No sound from the speakers.

- * Is the speaker output lead short-circuited?

• Sound is distorted.

- * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
- * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• Noise interfere with sounds.

- * Is the rear ground terminal connected to the car's chassis using shorter and thicker cords?

• Unit becomes hot.

- * Is the speaker output lead grounded?
- * Are the "-" terminals of L and R speakers grounded in common?

• This unit does not work at all.

- * Have you reset your unit?

ВЫЯВЛЕНИЕ НЕИСПРАВНОСТЕЙ

• Сработал предохранитель.

- * Правильно ли подключены черный и красный провода?

• Питание не включается.

- * Подключен ли желтый провод?

• Звук не выводится через громкоговорители.

- * Нет ли короткого замыкания на кабеле выхода громкоговорителей?

• Звук искажен.

- * Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
- * Заземлены ли разъемы "-" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?

• Шум мешает звучанию.

- * Соединен ли находящийся сзади зажим заземления с шасси автомобиля с помощью более короткого и тонкого шнура?

• Устройство нагревается.

- * Заземлен ли провод выхода громкоговорителей?
- * Заземлены ли разъемы "-" правого (R) и левого (L) громкоговорителей?

• Приемник не работает.

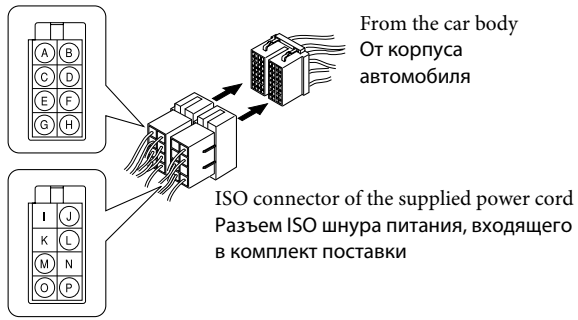
- * Выполнена ли перенастройка приемника?

ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

ЭЛЕКТРИЧЕСКИЕ ПОДКЛЮЧЕНИЯ

A If your car is equipped with the ISO connector / Если автомобиль оснащен разъемом ISO

- Connect the ISO connectors as illustrated.
- Подключите разъемы ISO, как показано на рисунке.



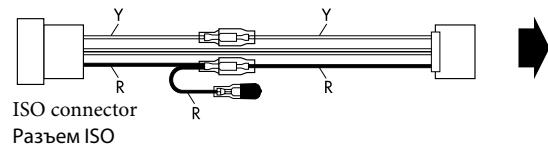
View from the lead side
Вид со стороны выводов

For some VW/Audi or Opel (Vauxhall) automobile / Для некоторых автомобилей VW/Audi или Opel (Vauxhall)

You may need to modify the wiring of the supplied power cord as illustrated.

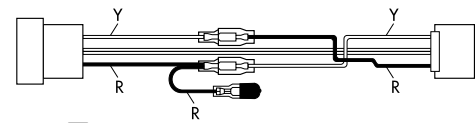
- Contact your authorized car dealer before installing this unit.
- Возможно, потребуется изменить схему соединений для прилагаемого шнура питания, как показано на рисунке.
- Перед установкой приемника обратитесь к авторизованному агенту по продажам автомобильных систем.

Original wiring / Исходная схема соединений



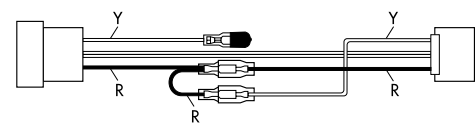
Y: Yellow / Желтый
R: Red / Красный

Modified wiring 1 / Преобразованная схема соединений 1



Use modified wiring 2 if the unit does not turn on.
Если приемник не включается, используйте преобразованную схему соединений 2.

Modified wiring 2 / Преобразованная схема соединений 2



B Connections without using the ISO connectors / Подключение без использования разъемов ISO

Before connecting: Check the wiring in the vehicle carefully. Incorrect connection may cause serious damage to this unit.

The leads of the power cord and those of the connector from the car body may be different in color.

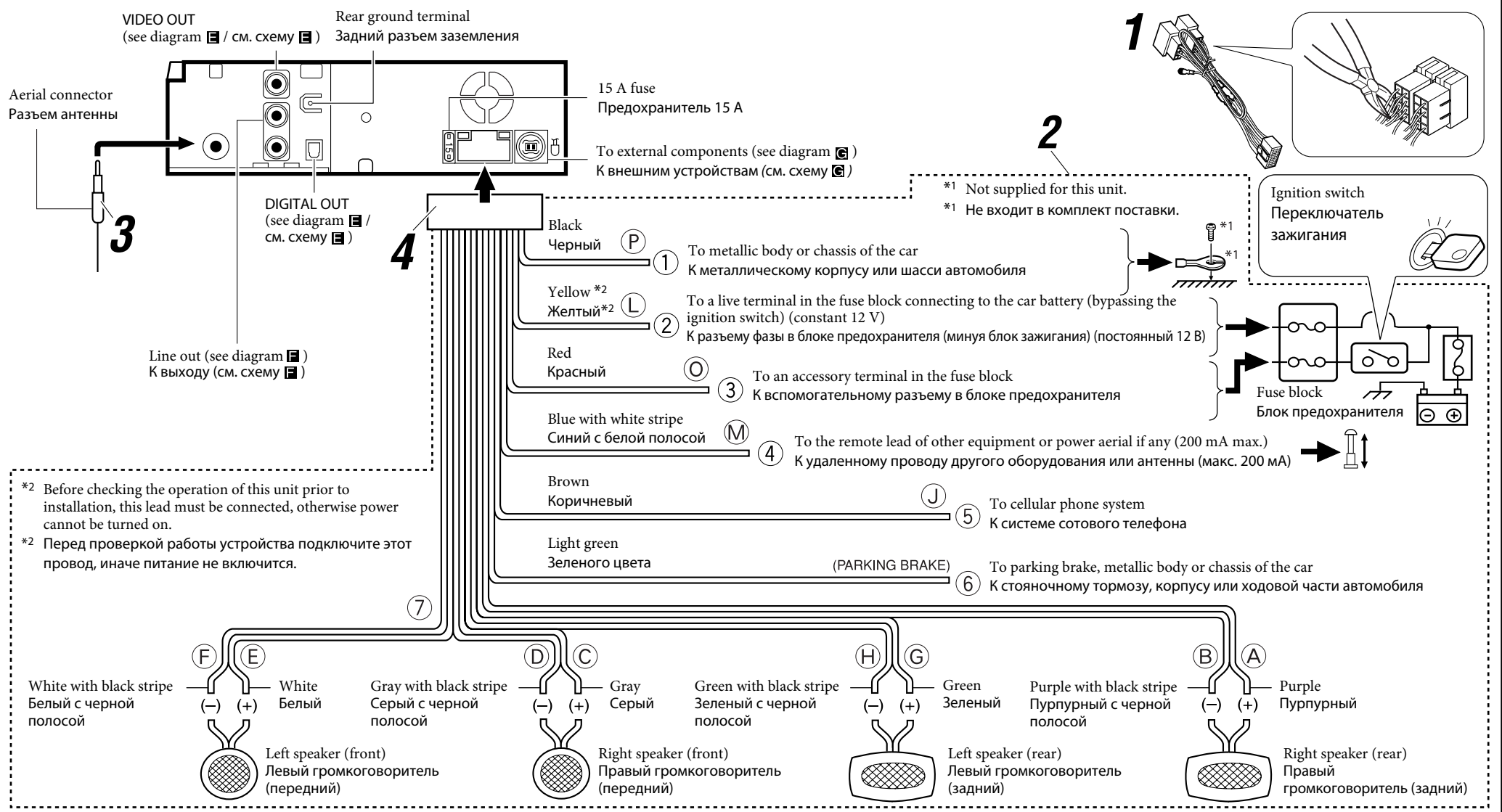
- 1 Cut the ISO connector.
- 2 Connect the colored leads of the power cord in the order specified in the illustration below.
- 3 Connect the aerial cord.
- 4 Finally connect the wiring harness to the unit.

Перед началом подключений: Тщательно проверьте проводку в автомобиле.

Неправильное подключение может привести к серьезному повреждению устройства.

Жилы силового кабеля и жилы соединителя от кузова автомобиля могут быть разного цвета.

- 1 Обрежьте разъем ISO.
- 2 Подсоедините цветные провода шнура питания в указанном ниже порядке.
- 3 Подключите кабель антенны.
- 4 В последнюю очередь подключите электропроводку к устройству.

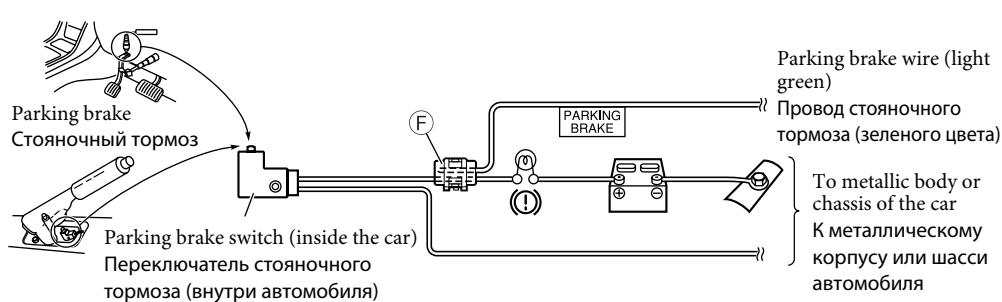


*2 Before checking the operation of this unit prior to installation, this lead must be connected, otherwise power cannot be turned on.
*2 Перед проверкой работы устройства подключите этот провод, иначе питание не включится.

*1 Not supplied for this unit.
*1 Не входит в комплект поставки.

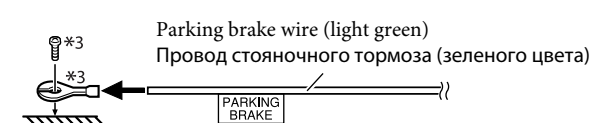
C Connecting the parking brake wire / Подключение провода стояночного тормоза

When installing the monitor in a location where it can be seen by the driver
При установке монитора в месте, видимом водителю



When installing the monitor in a location where it cannot be seen by the driver
При установке монитора в месте, не видимом водителем

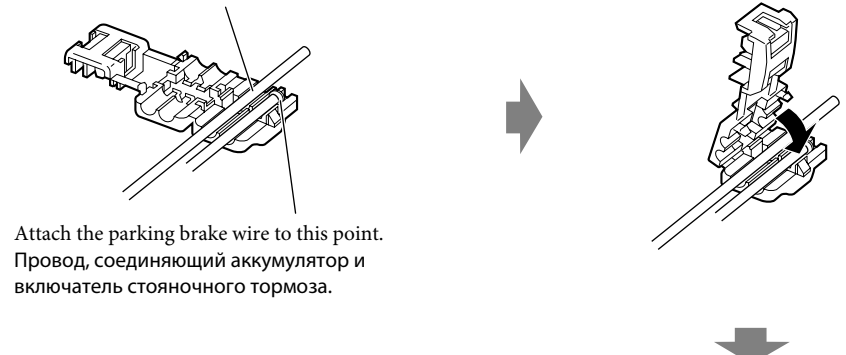
Connect the parking brake wire to metallic body or chassis of the car.
Подключить провод стояночного тормоза к металлу корпуса или ходовой части автомобиля.



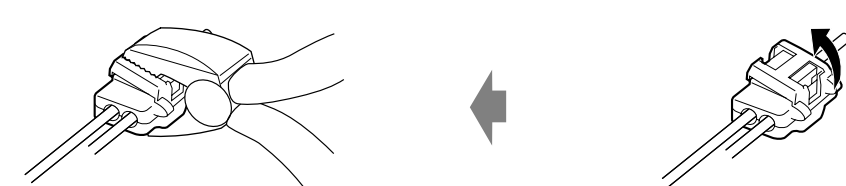
*3 Not supplied for this unit.
*3 Не входит в комплект поставки.

D Connecting the crimp connector / Подключение обжимного разъема

Wire connecting the battery and the parking brake switch.
Подключить провод стояночного тормоза к этой точке.



Attach the parking brake wire to this point.
Провод, соединяющий аккумулятор и включатель стояночного тормоза.

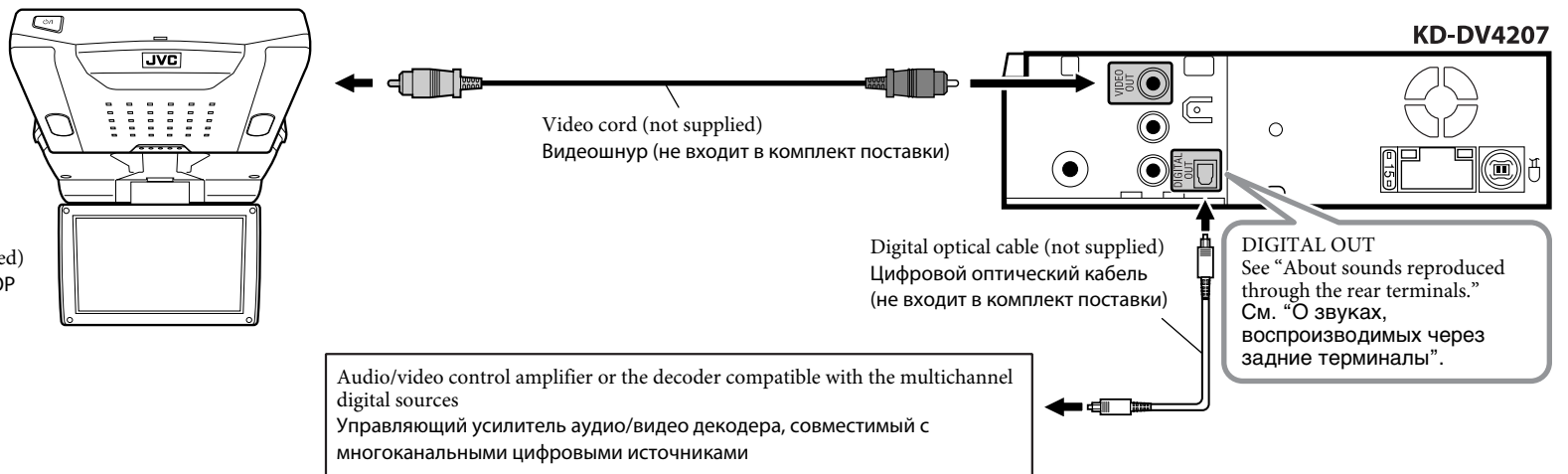


Pinch the crimp firmly.
Плотно обожмите соединитель.

Contact the metallic part of the crimp to the wires inside.
Присоедините металлическую часть обжимного соединителя к находящимся внутри проводам.

E Required connections for DVD playback / Необходимые подключения для воспроизведения DVD

KV-MR9010
9-INCH WIDESCREEN MONITOR (not supplied)
9-ДЮЙМОВЫЙ ШИРОКОЭКРАННЫЙ МОНИТОР
(не входит в комплект поставки)



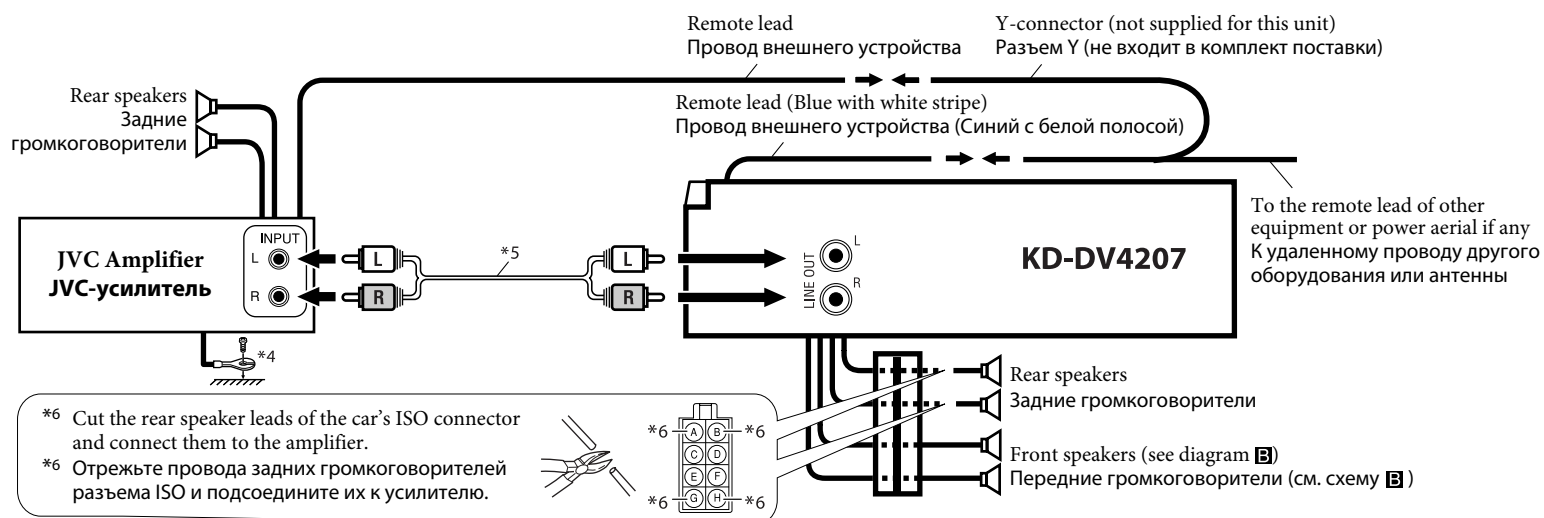
F Connecting the external amplifier / Подключение внешних усилителей

You can connect an amplifier to upgrade your car stereo system.

- Connect the remote lead (blue with white stripe) to the remote lead of the other equipment so that it can be controlled through this unit.
- **Disconnect the speakers from this unit, connect them to the amplifier. Leave the speaker leads of this unit unused.**

Можно подключить усилители для обновления автомобильной стереосистемы.

- Подсоедините провод внешнего устройства (синий с белой полосой) к проводу внешнего устройства другого оборудования так, чтобы им можно было управлять с этого устройства.
- **Отсоедините громкоговорители от данного устройства, подключите их к усилителю. Оставьте провода громкоговорителей данного устройства неиспользованными.**



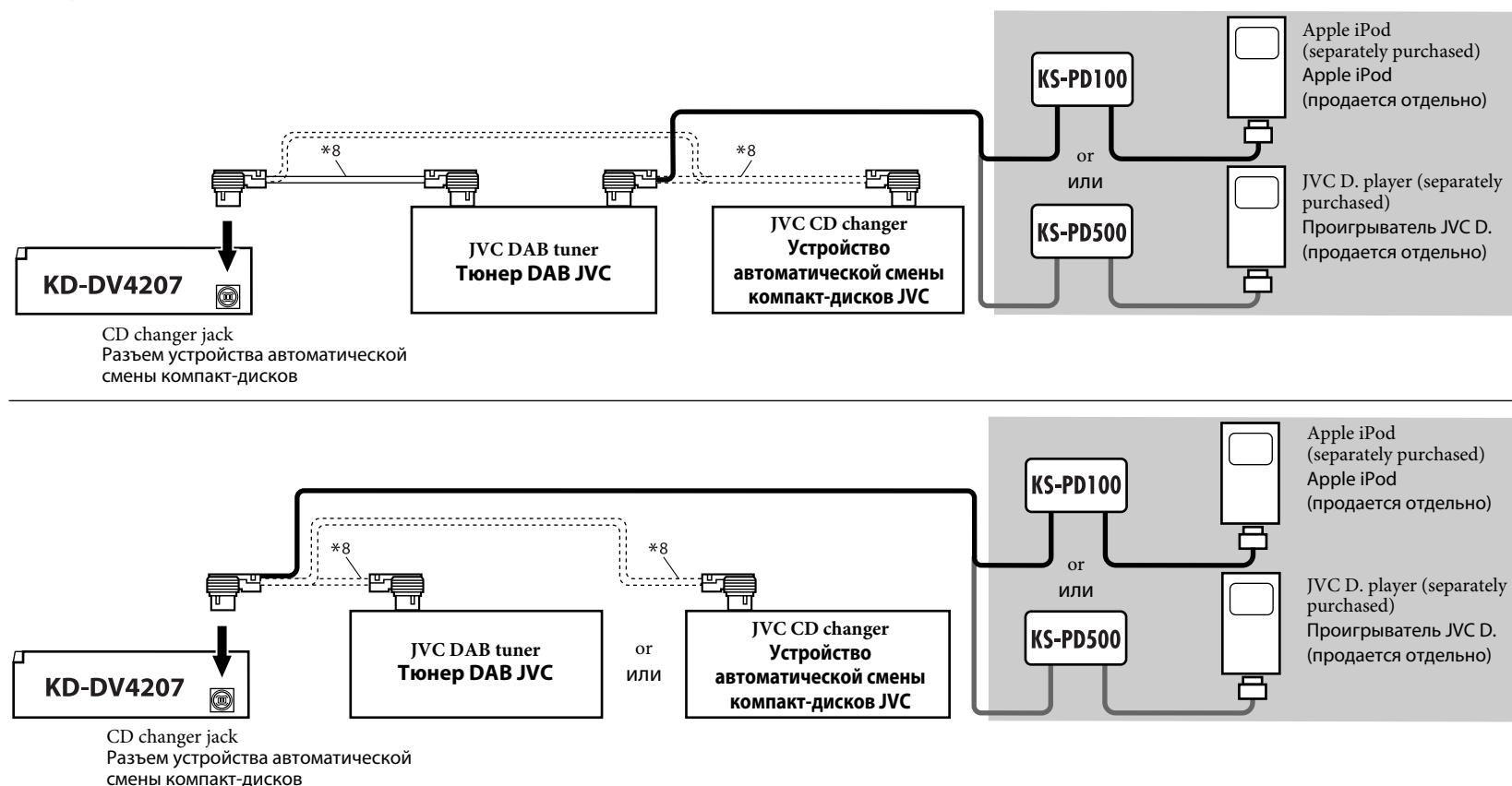
G Connecting other external components / Подключение внешних устройств

CD changer, DAB tuner, Apple iPod®, or JVC D. player / Устройство автоматической смены компакт-дисков, тюнер DAB, Apple iPod® или проигрыватель JVC D.

- Set "CHANGER" for the external input setting (See page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Установите для внешнего входа значение "CHANGER" (См. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 24.)

You can connect these components in series as illustrated below. The iPod*7 or D. player can be connected using an interface adapter (not supplied)—KS-PD100 (for iPod) or KS-PD500 (for D. player).

Эти внешние устройства можно подключать параллельно, как показано на рисунке. Проигрыватель iPod*7 или D. можно подключить с помощью интерфейсного адаптера (не входит в комплект поставки)—KS-PD100 (для iPod) или KS-PD500 (для проигрывателя D.).



Other external component / Подключение внешних устройств

- Set "EXT IN" for the external input setting (See page 24 of the INSTRUCTIONS.) / Установите для внешнего входа значение "EXT IN" (См. ИНСТРУКЦИИ ПО ЭКСПЛУАТАЦИИ на стр. 24.)

